

Accidence

1858

Am.

Librarian
Uttarpara Chaitryshna Public Library

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. THE French Alphabet contains twenty-five letters, namely—

*A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M,
N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.*

The *W* is only used in words borrowed from other languages.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*.

The six vowels express only five sounds, *i* and *y* (after *nant*) being pronounced alike, but as the French has several other sounds, the deficiency of letters them is partly supplied by marks called *accents*, & combinations.

ON ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS.

The orthographical signs used in the French language are the *accents*, the *apostrophe*, the *hyphen*, the *cæsa*, the *diæresis*, or *tréma*, the *parenthesis*, and the different marks of punctuation.

§ 2. Accents are marks placed over vowels either to determine their pronunciation or to indicate the different meaning of words spelt similarly.

In the French language there are three accents—the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

The **acute** accent (') is used only over the vowel *e*, as: *éléphant*, elephant, *été*, summer.

But we write *religion* and *irreligion*, *religieux* and *irreligieux*, *réformé*, to form anew, and *réformer*, to retrench, to reform, etc.

The **grave** accent (`) is placed over the vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *Jèvre*, lip; *frère*, brother; *thème*, exercise; *déjà*, already. This accent is also placed over—

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| où, where | } to distinguish them from | ou, or |
| dès, from | | des, of, from the, some |
| à, to, at | | a, has |
| là, there | | la, the. |

The **circumflex** accent (^) can be used over all the vowels for the purpose of lengthening the sound, as: *tête*, head; *fenêtres*, windows; *château*, castle; *épître*, epistle; *âme*, soul. This accent indicates the suppression of a letter; *tête* was formerly written *teste*; *château*, *chasteau*, etc. It is also used in many words derived from the Latin, where one or more letters are cut off, as: *dpre* (*asper*), sharp; *goût* (*gustus*), taste; *hôte* (*hospitem*), guest. It is also placed over—

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| je crois, I grow | } to distinguish them from | je crois, I believe |
| je crus, I grew | | je crus, I believed |
| tâcher, to strive | | tacher, to stain |
| pêcher, to fish | | pêcher, to sin |
| tû, kept secret | | tu, thou |
| dû, due | | du, of, from the, some |
| sûr, sure | | sur, upon |
| mûr, ripe | | mur, wall. |

§ 3. The **apostrophe** (') denotes the suppression of a final vowel in the following words: *je*, I; *me*, me; *te*, thee; *se*, one's self; *le*, the, him, it; *la*, the, her, it; *de*, of, from; *ce*, that; *ne*, not; and *que*, that, whenever the following word commences with a vowel or with an *h* mute, as: *l'ami* for *le ami*, the friend; *l'horreur* for *la horreur*, horror; *l'héroïne* for *la héroïne*, the heroine; *l'aurore* for *la aurore*, the dawn. The *i* is suppressed in *si*, if, only before *il*, he, it, *ils*, they, as: *s'il*, if he, *s'ils*, if they.

But the final vowel is not suppressed of *ce*, *de*, *le*, *la*, *que*, before *onze*, eleven; *oui*, yes; *ouate*, wadding; *huit*, eight. Neither is it suppressed when *je*, *ce*, *le*, and *la* (pronouns) come after a verb, as: *ai-je aimé?* have I loved? In a few cases the final *e* is not suppressed in the words *entre*, between; *presque*, almost; *puisque*, since; *quoique*, though; *lorsque*, when; and *quelque*, however.

The **cedilla** (,) is a mark placed under *c* when this letter takes the pronunciation of *s* before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, as: *façade*, front; *maçon*, mason; *conçu*, conceived.

The **diæresis** (¨) is used to indicate that the vowel over which it may be placed must be pronounced separately from that which precedes or follows it as: *Moïse*,^o *ciguë*, hemlock.

The **hyphen** (-) connects (1) compound words, as: *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow; (2) verbs followed by a personal pronoun only, or by *ce*, as: *parlez-lui*, speak to him; (3) *très* and the following word, as: *très-bon*, very good; (4) *même* and the preceding pronoun; *ci* and *là* and the word preceding or following them, as: *toi-même*, thyself; *cet enfant-ci*, that child; *là-bas*, yonder; (5) the numerals from *dix-sept*, seventeen, to *quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, ninety-nine, except when *et*, and, is placed between the numbers, as: *trente et un*, thirty one, etc. (For the RULES ON PRONUNCIATION, see the APPENDIX).

ACCIDENCE.

§ 4. IN French, as in English, there are nine different kinds of words called parts of speech, five of which—namely, the article, the substantive or noun, the adjective, the pronoun, and the verb—are liable to change their termination.

The adverb, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection, never change their terminations.

Some grammarians mention ten parts of speech in French, and consider then the participle as one.

CHAPTER II.

THE ARTICLE.

§ 5. All articles must always agree, in French, in gender and number with the noun to which they relate.

There are three articles—namely, the definite, the indefinite, and the partitive.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

§ 6. The definite article is declined as follows:—

| SINGULAR. | |
|---|---|
| MASCUL. | FEMIN. |
| Before a noun beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated. | Before a noun beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated. |
| Nom. <i>le</i> ,* the | <i>la</i> , the |
| Gen. <i>du</i> (for <i>de le</i>), of or from the | <i>de la</i> , of or from the |
| Dat. <i>au</i> (for <i>à le</i>), to or at the | <i>à la</i> , to or at the |
| Acc. <i>le</i> , the | <i>la</i> , the |

* *Le* and *la* are formed from the Latin pronouns *ille, illa*, by taking away the first syllable, *il*. In old French the article was often contracted with other words, as *nel* for *ne le*, *jel* for *je le*, *mes* for *me les*, *es* for *en les*; hence the expressions used at present—*docteur, bachelier es lettres*, doctor, bachelor of arts.

SING. MASC. AND FEM.

Before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Nom. *l'* the

Gen. *de l'* of or from the

Dat. *à l'* to or at the

Acc. *l'* the.

PLURAL FOR ALL.

les, the

des (for *de les*), of or from the

aux (for *à les*), to or at the

les, the.

As the article is chiefly used in French to denote whether the noun be singular or plural, it must be distinctly pronounced in speaking. Observe also that *du*, of the (mas. sing.), is a contraction of *de le*; *au*, to the (mas. sing.), is a contraction of *à le*; *des*, of the (plur.), is a contraction of *de les*; and *aux*, to the (plur.), a contraction for *à les*. *À* means to or at, and *de*, of or from. No contraction takes place before a vowel or *h* mute, but we use *l'*, *de l'*, *à l'*.

§ 7. In French, the English possessive or genitive case, expressed by *'s*, must be rendered in an inverted manner, as: the son's pen, which has to be translated: the pen of the son, *la plume du fils*.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

§ 8. The indefinite article is *un*, a or an, for the masculine singular, and *une*, for the feminine singular, and it is thus declined:—

| | MAS. | FEM. |
|------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>un</i> | <i>une</i> , a, or an |
| Gen. | <i>d'un</i> | <i>d'une</i> , of, or from a, or an |
| Dat. | <i>à un</i> | <i>à une</i> , to, or at a, or an. |

THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

§ 9. *Du* for the masculine singular, *de la*, for the feminine singular, *de l'* before a noun, masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, *des* for the plural of all, answer to the English partitive word *some* or *any*; but the partitive article, frequently understood in English, must always be expressed in French and be repeated before every noun, as:—

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>envoyez-moi de la viande et</i> | send me some meat and |
| <i>du vin,</i> | some wine |
| <i>donnez-moi des plumes,</i> | give me pens (<i>some</i> under- |
| | stood) |
| <i>avez-vous de la monnaie?</i> | have you any change? |

§ 10. When a substantive, taken in a partitive sense, is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used instead of the partitive article *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, as:—

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>de bon pain,</i> | some good bread, not <i>du bon pain</i> |
| <i>de bonne viande,</i> | some good meat, not <i>de la bonne viande</i> |
| <i>de bons fruits,</i> | some good fruits, not <i>des bons fruits.</i> |

CHAPTER III.

THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 11. A **NOÛN** is the name of anything we can perceive by means of the senses or of the understanding.

In French, as in English, there are two kinds of nouns, common and proper.

§ 12. There is some difficulty about the turning into French of Greek and Roman proper names—a difficulty increased by the arbitrary changes these names sometimes undergo in English; the following rules may be useful:—

1. Proper nouns ending in *ander* change into *andre*, as *Alexander*, *Alexandre*; *Lysander*, *Lysandre*; *Scamander*, *Scamandre*.

2. Proper nouns in *o* change into *on*, as: *Cato*, *Caton*; *Juno*, *Junon*; *Plato*, *Platon*: except *Calypso*, *Carbo*, *Clio*, *Echo*, *Érato*, *Labéo*, and *Sappho*, which are alike in French and English.

3. Proper nouns of two syllables only, ending in *us* or *ius*, are alike in both languages, as: *Brutus*, *Cyrus*: except *Marcus*, *Paulus*, *Pius*, and *Plautus*, which change into *Marc*, *Paul*, *Pie*, and *Plaute*.

4. Most proper nouns of more than two syllables ending in *us*, or *ius*, change these terminations into *e* mute, as: *Tacitus*, *Tacite*; *Tiberius*, *Tibère*; *Virgilius*, *Virgile*: except *Darius*, *Antiochus*, *Fulvius*, *Marius*, *Proculus*, *Virginus*, and *Cassius*, which remain unaltered. *Titus Livius*, changed in English into *Livy*, becomes in French *Tite Live*.

5. Proper names in *es* change this into *e* mute, as: *Apelles*, *Apelle*; *Socrates*, *Socrate*; *Aristides*, *Aristide*: except *Artaxerxes*, *Chosroès*, and *Periès*, which take only the grave accent on the last *e*. This happens also to every proper noun of two syllables ending in *es*, as: *Xerxes*, *Cerès*.

6. Nearly all Latin and Hebrew names in *as* remain unaltered, as: *Ananias*, *Leonidas*, *Joas*, *Pallas*: except *Eneas*, *Anaxagoras*, *Mecenas*, and *Pythagoras*, which change into *Énée*, *Anaxagore*, *Mécène*, and *Pythagore*.

7. Greek and Roman proper names of men in *a*, and of men and

women in *al* or *is*, do not change, as *Catilina*, *Sylla*, *Annibal*, *Eucharis*; except *Seneca*, which changes into *Sénèque*.

8. A great many names of women and goddesses change *a* into *e* mute, as: *Diana*, *Diane*; *Julia*, *Julie*; *Livia*, *Livie*.

§ 13. The French language has only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*, but no neuter gender. It is only by practice that a knowledge of the gender of substantives can be acquired. (For the RULES on the GENDER, see the APPENDIX.)*

§ 14. Nouns in French have two numbers, the *singular*, denoting one object, as: *la femme*, the woman; and the *plural*, which denotes more than one, as: *les femmes*, the women.

§ 15. There are no cases in French, and consequently no declensions. It is only by prepositions, especially *d* or *de*, that the different so-called cases are formed, but there is no change of termination as in the Greek and Latin.

THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL IN NOUNS.

§ 16. The plural of substantives is formed by adding *an s* to the singular, as:—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>le livre</i> , the book | <i>les livres</i> , the books. |
| <i>la femme</i> , the woman | <i>les femmes</i> , the women. |

§ 17. Substantives ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, do not vary in the plural, as:—

* French nouns derived from Latin mostly take their original gender; the masculine in French usually combines the Latin masculine and neuter, the feminine agreeing with its original. Latin terminations in *as*, *er*, *ra*, *us*, *ut*, mostly follow this rule, as: *vanitas*, *vanité*; *liber*, *livre*, book; *libra*, *livre*, pound; *jocus*, *jeu*, game; *caput*, *chef*, head, etc. Exceptions are, *dens*, *dent*, tooth; *fontis*, *fontaine*, fountain, which are feminine in French, although masculine in Latin; but on the contrary, *ungula*, *ongle*, nail; *navis*, *navire*, vessel, are masculine in French but feminine in Latin; *mare*, *la mer*, the sea, is neuter in Latin and feminine in French, though it is more than doubtful if *la mer* is derived from the Latin. The names of fruits, which are neuter in Latin, are for the most part feminine in French, as: *pomum*, *la pomme*, the apple; and the names of trees, which are feminine in Latin, are masculine in French, as: *arbor*, *un arbre*, a tree.

SINGULAR.

le fils, the son*le choix*, the choice*le nez*, the nose

PLURAL.

les fils, the sons*les choix*, the choices*les nez*, the noses.

§ 18. Nouns ending in *au*, and *eu*, take *x* in the plural, as :—

SINGULAR.

un marteau, the hammer*le bateau*, the boat*le feu*, the fire

PLURAL.

des marteaux, hammers*les bateaux*, the boats*les feux*, the fires.

Except: *bleu*, blue, and *landau*, a kind of carriage, which take *s* in the plural.

§ 19. Nouns which end in *ou*, ordinarily follow the rule given in § 16, viz., take *s* in the plural, as: *le clou*, the nail, *les clous*, the nails; *le trou*, the hole, *les trous*, the holes; **except** some which take *x*, as :—

SINGULAR.

le bijou, the jewel*le caillou*, the flint*le chou*, the cabbage*le genou*, the knee*le hibou*, the owl*le joujou*, the toy*le pou*, the louse

PLURAL.

les bijoux, the jewels*les cailloux*, the flints*les choux*, the cabbages*les genoux*, the knees*les hiboux*, the owls*les joujoux*, the toys*les poux*, lice.

§ 20. Nouns ending in *al*, or *ail*, form their plural by changing these terminations into *aux*, as :—

SINGULAR.

le canal, the canal*un hôpital*, a hospital*un travail*, a labour, a work

PLURAL.

les canaux, the canals*des hôpitaux*, hospitals*des travaux*, labours.

Except the following, which take an *s* in the plural: *bal*; *carnaval*; *nopal*, a kind of cactus; *régal*, treat; *chacal*, jackal; *serval*, a tiger-cat; *attirail*, implements, train; *détail*; *épouvantail*, scarecrow; *éventail*, fan; *gouvernail*, rudder; *poitrail*, horse-breast; *portail*, church-porch; *sérail*, seraglio, etc.

§ 21. The following nouns form their plural irregularly :

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>aïeul</i> , ancestor | <i>aïeuls</i> , paternal and maternal grand-fathers |
| <i>ail</i> , garlic | <i>aïeux</i> , ancestors <i>aïlx</i> , or <i>des gousses d'ail</i> , cloves of garlic |
| <i>bétail</i> , cattle | <i>bestiaux</i> , cattle |
| <i>ciel</i> , heaven | <i>cieux</i> , heavens <i>ciels</i> , skies in painting, or when speaking of climate; <i>ciels-de-lit</i> , bed-testers; <i>ciels de carrière</i> , ceilings of stone quarries |
| <i>œil</i> , eye | <i>yeux</i> , eyes, when speaking of the organs of sight, or when it can be used without giving rise to a misunderstanding, as: <i>des yeux de fromage</i> , <i>de bouillon</i> , eyes in the cheese, on the beef-tea <i>œils</i> , when used by analogy, as: <i>des œils de chat</i> , cat's eyes; <i>des œils de serpent</i> , serpent's eyes (precious stones); <i>des œils-de-bœuf</i> , oval windows, etc.; <i>œils</i> is also used in terms of art, printing, or gardening. |
| <i>travail</i> , labour | <i>travaux</i> , labours <i>travails</i> , official reports, also wooden frames to confine horses while the smith is shoeing them. |

§ 22. Several nouns have no singular, as: *les ancêtres*, the ancestors; *les annales*, the annals; *les mœurs*, morals, manners; *les vitraux*, stained glass windows; *les ténèbres*, darkness, and many others. Adjectives used substantively are always, and names of virtues, vices, and metals, are nearly always, used in the singular.

§ 23. The generality of abstract nouns have no plural, as: *valeur*, valour; *jeunesse*, youth. Proper names when denoting a family, clan, or class, may become plural, as: *les Guises*; *les Capets*; *les Tudors*; *les Fraizers*.

§ 24. All uninflected words used substantively, remain unaltered, as : *les quand, les qui, les que, pleuvent de tous côtés*, the whens, the whos, the whats, are heard on all sides.

§ 25. There are some nouns which differ in meaning according as they are used in the singular or plural. Such words exist in all languages; as in English : troop, troops; pain, pains; custom, customs; and in Latin : *auxilium, auxilia*; *finis, fines*; *comitium, comitia*; *litera, literæ*; *pars, partes*, etc.

In French these words are the following :—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|--|
| <i>aboi</i> (m.), the barking | (aux) <i>abois</i> , at bay |
| <i>aide</i> , (f.), aid, help | <i>aides</i> , a kind of tax (generally used in the plural) |
| <i>arme</i> (f.), weapon | <i>armes</i> , troops, hatchment, arms |
| <i>arrêt</i> (m.), sentence, judgment | <i>arrêts</i> , arrest |
| <i>assise</i> (f.), layer, stratum | <i>assises</i> , assizes |
| <i>chausse</i> (f.), hose | <i>chausses</i> , hose, stockings |
| <i>ciseau</i> (m.), chisel | <i>ciseaux</i> , scissors |
| <i>commune</i> (f.), parish | <i>communes</i> , the Commons |
| <i>croche</i> (f.), quaver | <i>croches</i> , beakers, tongs for smiths |
| <i>dague</i> (f.), dirk | <i>dagues</i> , dags of boars, deer, etc. |
| <i>eau</i> (f.), water | <i>eaux</i> , watering-place, water-works |
| <i>échee</i> (m.), cheek, repulse | <i>échecs</i> , chess, chess-men |
| X <i>effet</i> (m.), effect | <i>effets</i> , property, goods |
| <i>entrave</i> (f.), clog | <i>entraves</i> , fetters, hinderance |
| <i>épingle</i> (f.), pin | <i>épingles</i> , pin-money |
| <i>état</i> (m.), state | <i>états</i> , States-general |
| <i>être</i> (m.), being | <i>êtres</i> , the different parts, the nooks and corners of a house |
| <i>faste</i> (m.), pomp | <i>fastes</i> , records, annals |
| X <i>fer</i> (m.), iron | <i>fers</i> , chains |
| X <i>force</i> (f.), strength | <i>forces</i> , troops |
| <i>foulure</i> (f.), sprain | <i>foulures</i> , foiling (a hunting term) |
| <i>franchise</i> (f.), frankness | <i>franchises</i> , franchise (generally pl.) |
| <i>gage</i> (m.), pledge | <i>gages</i> , wages, hire |
| <i>harde</i> (f.), herd, leash of dogs | <i>hardes</i> , wearing apparel |
| <i>heure</i> (f.), hour | <i>heures</i> , primer (prayer-book) |
| X <i>lettre</i> (f.), letter | <i>lettres</i> , literature |
| <i>liberté</i> (f.), freedom | <i>libertés</i> , franchise (generally pl.) |
| <i>limbe</i> (m.), lamina, border of leaves | <i>limbes</i> , limbo |
| <i>lumière</i> (f.), light | <i>lumières</i> , knowledge |
| <i>lunette</i> (f.), telescope | <i>lunettes</i> , spectacles |

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|--|
| <i>manière</i> (f.), way, kind | <i>manières</i> , deportment, manners |
| <i>menotte</i> (f.), little hand | <i>menottes</i> , handcuffs (generally pl.) |
| <i>mouchette</i> (f.), & metal curtain rod | <i>mouchettes</i> , snuffers |
| <i>ouïe</i> (f.), hearing | <i>ouïes</i> , gills of a fish |
| <i>peuple</i> (m.), people | <i>peuples</i> , nations, tribes |
| <i>recuite</i> (f.), reheating | <i>recuites</i> , annealing (of cheese) |
| <i>tablette</i> (f.), shelf | <i>tablettes</i> , memorandum book |
| <i>troupe</i> (f.), troop, band | <i>troupes</i> , troops, soldiery |
| <i>trousse</i> (f.), bundle, truss, case of surgical instruments, pillion | (<i>être aux</i>) <i>trousses</i> (<i>de quelqu'un</i>), to be in pursuit of any one |
| <i>usage</i> (m.), use, usage | <i>usages</i> , religious books (rather antiquated), customs, habits |
| <i>vacance</i> (f.), vacancy | <i>vacances</i> , holidays |
| <i>vente</i> (f.), sale | <i>ventes</i> , money paid for a fief to a superior lord in acknowledgment of his right. |

But observe that though these nouns, given above, have a different meaning in the plural, they may also be used in their literal meaning in the plural, for example: *les épingles* may mean pins and pin-money; *les lettres*, the letters, and literature, etc.

ON THE PLURAL OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 26. (1.) These remain generally unchanged in the plural, as *Ave Maria*, *credo*, *maximum*, *minimum*, *compendium*, *dictamen*, *specimen*, *fac-simile*, *post-scriptum*, *alleluia*, *adagio*, *andante*, etc., except *sénatus-consulte*, which takes an *s*.

(2.) But if these foreign nouns are naturalised they take a plural, as: *des opéras*, *des agendas*, *des visas*, *des alinéas*, *des erratas*, *des factums*, *des ultimatums*, *des quiproquos*, *des oratorios*, *des tríos*, *des finales*, *des numéros*, *des embargos*, *des verdicts*, *des budgets*, *des toasts*, *des camarillas*, *des stathouders*, etc.

(3.) Some form their plural according to the language from which they are taken, as: *quintetto*, *carbonaro*, *condottiere*, *dilettante*, *lazarone*, which, as in Italian, form their plural in *i*.

ON THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 27. (1.) When a compound substantive is formed of two substantives, or of a substantive and adjective, both take the sign of the plural.

as : *un chien-loup*, a wolf dog, *des chiens-loups* ; *un chef-lieu*, a large place, *des chefs-lieux* ; *un cerf-volant*, a kite, *des cerfs-volants* ; **except** : *chèvre-feuille*, honey-suckle, *chèvre-feuilles* ; *chèvre-pied*, satyr, *chèvre-pieds* ; *cheval-leger*, light cavalry, *cheval-legers* ; *terre-plein*, platform of earth (fortif), *terre-pleins* ; *havre-sac*, knapsack, *havre-sacs* ; *grand-messe*,* high mass, *grand-messes* ; *trou-madame*, pigeon-hole (a game), *trous-madame* ; *grand-mère*, grandmother, *grand-mères* ; *appui-main*, maulstick, *appuis-main* ; *bain-marie*, hot-water bath, *bains-marie* ; *hôtel-Dieu*, hospital in Paris, *hôtels-Dieu* ; *haute-contre*, counter-tenor, *hautes-contre*.

§ 28. (2.) When a noun is compounded of two others, joined by a preposition, the first only takes the plural, as : *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow, *arcs-en-ciel* ; *eau-de-vie*, brandy, *eaux-de-vie* ; **except** :

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>cog-à-l'âne</i> , cock and bull story | <i>doit-et-avoir</i> , debtor and creditor |
| <i>pied-à-terre</i> , temporary lodgings | account |
| <i>tête-à-tête</i> , private interview | <i>tout-ou-rien</i> , all or nothing |
| <i>pot-au-feu</i> , soup and stewed meat | <i>haut-le-pied</i> , vagabond, wanderer |
| <i>vis-à-vis</i> , a kind of carriage | |

which remain unaltered in the plural.

§ 29. (3.) When a substantive is compounded of a noun and a verb, preposition, or adverb, the substantive alone takes the mark of the plural, as : *co-propriétaire*, co-proprietor, *co-propriétaires* ; *vice-roi*, viceroy, *vice-rois* ; **except** : *cure-dents*, tooth-pick, and *contre-poison*, antidote, which do not change.

• But if the first part of the compound noun is a verb, the substantive, or substantives remain unaltered, as : *abat-jour*, skylight, *des abat-jour* ; *un boute-feu*, a mischievous person, *des boute-feu* ; *un hausse-col*, a gorget, *des hausse-col*, etc.

§ 30. (4.) Substantives compounded of verbs, and uninflected words, remain unaltered, as : *un passe-partout*, a master key, *des passe-partout* ; *un oui-dire*, hear say, *des oui-dire*, etc.

§ 31. (5.) Substantives compounded with *garde* present a peculiar difficulty. When *garde* relates to animate objects it is a substantive, and takes the plural form, as : *garde-côte*, coast-guard, *des gardes-côtes* ; but when it relates to inanimate objects it is a verb, and therefore cannot take the mark of the plural, as : *des garde-cendres*, fenders ; *des garde-feu*, fire-screens.

* Adjectives derived from the Latin, and which had only one form for the masculine and feminine in that language, had also in old French only one form for both genders. This is the reason why *grand* is still written *grand*, in the here-mentioned words. For this same cause we say *lettres royales* for orders formerly promulgated by the King in Council, because *regalis* had only one termination in Latin for the masculine and feminine.

CHAPTER IV.

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 32. An Adjective is a word which expresses the quality of a substantive.

Adjectives are divided into five classes: *qualificative*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *indefinite*, and *numeral*.

§ 33. In French, adjectives and past participles used adjectively agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they relate, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>un homme poli</i> , a polite man | <i>des hommes polis</i> , polite men |
| <i>une femme polie</i> , a polite woman | <i>des femmes polies</i> , polite women. |

QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 34. These adjectives are made feminine by adding an *e* mute to the masculine gender, as:—

| MASC. | FEM. |
|--|---|
| <i>un garçon prudent</i> , a prudent boy | <i>une fille prudente</i> , a prudent girl |
| <i>un père savant</i> , a learned father | <i>une mère savante</i> , a learned mother. |

Except: (1) Adjectives in *er* take a grave accent over the last *e* but one, as: *amer*, bitter, *amère*.* (2) Adjectives ending in *gu* take a diæresis over the last *e*, as: *contigu*, contiguous, *contiguë*.

* Some nouns follow the same rule, as: *aventurier*, adventurer, *aventurière*; *berger*, shepherd, *bergère*; *boucher*, butcher, *bouchère*; *boulangier*, baker, *boulangère*; *cuisinier*, cook, *cuisinière*; *écolier*, school-boy, *écolière*; *fruitier*, fruiterer, *fruitière*; *fermier*, farmer, *fermière*; *jardinier*, gardener, *jardinière*; *tueur*, murderer, *meurtrière*; and *ouvrier*, workman, *ouvrière*.

§ 35. Adjectives ending in *e* mute in the masculine singular do not change for the feminine, as:—

mon fils est jeune et aimable, my son is young and amiable.
ma fille est jeune et aimable, my daughter is young and amiable.

§ 36. Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*, *on*, *et*, and *s*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant and adding an *e* mute, as :

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>habituel</i> , habitual, <i>habituelle</i> | <i>bon</i> , good, <i>bonne</i> |
| <i>vermeil</i> , beautiful red, <i>vermeille</i> | <i>muet</i> , dumb, <i>muette</i> . |
| <i>chrétien</i> , christian, <i>chrétienne</i> | <i>las</i> , tired, <i>lasse</i> |

Except (1.) The following ending in *t*, do not double the *na* consonant, but add *e* mute to it, and take the grave accent on the penultimate *e*, as : *complet*, complete, *complète* ; *concret*, concrete, *concrète* ; *discret*, discreet, *discrète* ; *inquiet*, uneasy, *inquiète* ; *replet*, replete, *replète* ; *secret*, secret, *secrète*.

(2.) The following in *s* only take an *e* mute : *clos*, shut ; *gris*, grey ; *mauvais*, bad ; *niais*, silly ; *perclus*, impotent ; *ras*, close-shaven. National adjectives ending in *s* take in the feminine also only an *e* mute, as : *anglais*, *anglaise*, English ; *français*, *française*, French.

(3.) *Exprès*, express, makes *expresse* ; *profès*, professed, *professe* ; *prêt*, ready, *prête*.

§ 37. Adjectives which terminate in *f* change this letter into *ve*, as:—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>actif</i> , active, <i>active</i> | <i>neuf</i> , new, <i>neuve</i> |
| <i>naïf</i> , ingenuous, <i>naïve</i> | <i>vif</i> , lively, <i>vive</i> |

§ 38. Adjectives which terminate in *x*, change this letter into *se*, as :

| MAS. | FEM. | MAS. | FEM. |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>heureux</i> , happy, | <i>heureuse</i> , | <i>dangereux</i> , dangerous, | <i>dangereuse</i> |
| <i>jaloux</i> , jealous, | <i>jalouse</i> , | <i> paresseux</i> , idle, | <i> paresseuse</i> |
| <i>gracieux</i> , graceful, | <i>gracieuse</i> , | <i>nombreux</i> , numerous, | <i>nombreuse</i> . |

Except : *doux*, sweet, which makes *douce* ; *faux*, false, makes *fausse* ; *roux*, reddish, makes *rousse* ; and *préfix*, *préfixe*.

§ 39. Adjectives which terminate in *eur*, and are formed from a present participle in *ant*, change *eur* into *euse*, as:—

Uttara Para Jai Krishna Public Library

| MAS. | FEM. | MAS. | FEM. |
|-----------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>menteur</i> , liar, | <i>menteuse</i> | <i>danseur</i> , dancer, | <i>danseuse</i> . |
| <i>trompeur</i> , deceiver, | <i>trompeuse</i> | <i>flatteur</i> , flatterer, | <i>flatteuse</i> |

Except: *exécuteur*, which forms *exécutrice*; *inventeur*, *inventrice*; *persécuteur*, *persécutrice*; *inspecteur*, *inspectrice*, and *gouverneur*, which changes into *gouvernante*.

Some adjectives terminating in *eur*, though formed from a present participle, change into *eresse*, as:—

| MAS. | FEM. |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>baillieur</i> , lessor, | <i>bailleresse</i> |
| <i>défendeur</i> , defendant, | <i>défenderesse</i> |
| <i>enchanteur</i> , enchant, | <i>enchanteresse</i> |
| <i>pêcheur</i> , sinner, | <i>pêcheresse</i> |
| <i>vengeur</i> , avenging, | <i>vengeresse</i> . |

Adjectives terminating in *érieur*, express a comparative idea, and follow the general rule by taking *e* mute in the feminine, as: *extérieur*, exterior; *intérieur*, inferior; *ultérieur*, ulterior, etc. Add to these *majeur*, greater; *mineur*, minor, less; and *meilleur*, better, which make *majeure*, *mineure*, *meilleure*.

§ 40. Many adjectives terminating in *teur*, change this into *trice* in the feminine, when derived from verbs, although not from the present participle, as:—

| MAS. | FEM. |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>accusateur</i> , accuser, | <i>accusatrice</i> |
| <i>consolateur</i> , consoler, | <i>consolatrice</i> |
| <i>créateur</i> , creator, | <i>créatrice</i> |
| <i>protecteur</i> , protector, | <i>protectrice</i> |
| <i>calomniateur</i> , slanderer, | <i>calomniatrice</i> .* |

Acteur, actor, and *ambassadeur*, ambassador, though not formed from verbs, make in the feminine, *actrice* and *ambassadrice*.

§ 41. The following adjectives cannot be reduced to any of the preceding rules, and form their feminine irregularly:—

| MAS. | FEM. |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>absous</i> , absolved, | <i>absoute</i> |
| <i>ammoniac</i> , ammoniacal, | <i>ammoniaque</i> |

* The majority of words terminating in *teur* and *trice* are derived from Latin words in *tor* and *triz*.

| MAS. | FEM. |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>beau</i> , handsome, | <i>belle</i> |
| <i>bellot</i> , fine (of children), | <i>bellotte</i> |
| <i>bénin</i> , benign, | <i>bénigne</i> |
| <i>blanc</i> , white, | <i>blanche</i> |
| <i>caduc</i> , decrepit, | <i>caduque</i> |
| <i>coi</i> , snug, | <i>coite</i> |
| <i>dissous</i> , dissolved, | <i>dissoute</i> |
| <i>favori</i> , favorite, | <i>favorite</i> |
| <i>fou</i> , foolish, | <i>folle</i> |
| <i>frais</i> , fresh, | <i>fraîche</i> . |
| <i>franc</i> , frank, | <i>franche</i> |
| <i>gentil</i> , pretty, | <i>gentille</i> |
| <i>grec</i> , Greek, | <i>grecque</i> |
| <i>hébreu</i> , Hebrew, | <i>hébraïque</i> |
| <i>jumeau</i> , twin, | <i>jumelle</i> |
| <i>long</i> , long, | <i>longue</i> |
| <i>malin</i> , malicious, | <i>maligne</i> |
| <i>mat</i> , unpolished (of glass), | <i>matte</i> |
| <i>mou</i> , soft, | <i>molle</i> |
| <i>nouveau</i> , new, | <i>nouvelle</i> . |
| <i>nul</i> , none, no, | <i>nulle</i> |
| <i>paysan</i> , countryman, | <i>paysanne</i> |
| <i>public</i> , public, | <i>publique</i> |
| <i>sec</i> , dry, | <i>sèche</i> |
| <i>sot</i> , foolish, | <i>sotte</i> |
| <i>tiers</i> , third, tertian, | <i>tierce</i> |
| <i>turc</i> , Turk, | <i>turque</i> |
| <i>vieillot</i> , oldish, | <i>vieillotte</i> |
| <i>vieux</i> , old, | <i>vieille</i> . |

§ 42. When placed before nouns beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, *beau*, *nouveau*, *fou*, *mou*, *vieux*, make in the masculine *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, *vieil*; *vieil* is also used in Scripture, as: *le vieil homme*, the old man.

† 43. Some words used as adjectives have two feminines, as:—

baron, *baron*, *baronne* ; *baronnesse* (antiquated)
chanteur, singer, *chanteuse* ; *cantatrice* (elevated style)
chasseur, hunter, *chasseuse* ; *chasseresse* (elevated style)
débiteur, { retailer, } *débiteuse*
 { debtor, } *débitrice*
demandeur, { he who asks, } *demandeuse*
 { plaintiff, } *demanderesse*
vendeur, seller, *vendeuse* ; *venderesse* (law).

Devineur, 'guesser, makes *devineuse* ; and *devin*, conjurer, *devineresse* ; *amateur* generally forms *amatrice*.

§ 44. The following words, sometimes used as 'adjectives, cannot be brought under any rule :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>carme</i> , carmelite friar, <i>carmélite</i> | <i>empereur</i> , emperor, <i>impératrice</i> |
| <i>compagnon</i> , companion, <i>compagne</i> | <i>roi</i> , king, <i>reine</i> . |
| <i>diel.</i> , god, <i>déesse</i> | <i>serviteur</i> , servant, <i>servante</i> |

§ 45. The ensuing words are either substantives or adjectives used substantively, and change their termination into *esse* :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>abbé</i> , abbot, <i>abbesse</i> | <i>maitre</i> , master, <i>maitresse</i> |
| <i>âne</i> , ass, <i>ânesse</i> | <i>mulâtre</i> ,* mulatto, <i>mulâtresse</i> |
| <i>borgne</i> ,* one-eyed, <i>borgnesse</i> | <i>négre</i> ,* negro, <i>négresse</i> |
| <i>chanoine</i> . canon, <i>chanoinesse</i> | <i>ogre</i> , ogre, <i>ogresse</i> |
| <i>comte</i> , count, <i>comt-esse</i> | <i>pair</i> , pcer, <i>pairresse</i> |
| <i>diable</i> , demon, <i>diablesse</i> | <i>pauvre</i> ,* a poor man, <i>pauvresse</i> |
| <i>drôle</i> ,* scoundrel, <i>drôlesse</i> | <i>prêtre</i> , priest, <i>prêtresse</i> |
| <i>druide</i> , druid, <i>druidesse</i> | <i>prince</i> , prince, <i>princesse</i> |
| <i>duc</i> , duke, <i>duchesse</i> | <i>prophète</i> ,* prophet, <i>prophétesse</i> |
| <i>hôte</i> , landlord, <i>hôtesse</i> | <i>sauvage</i> ,* savage, <i>sauvagesse</i> |
| <i>ivrogne</i> ,* drunkard, <i>ivrognesse</i> | <i>suisse</i> ,* Swiss, <i>suiessesse</i> |
| <i>larron</i> , thief, <i>larronesse</i> | <i>traître</i> , traitor, <i>traïtresse</i> |

Observe : that words marked above thus * change only when substantives ; they never vary as adjectives, as : *une bonne suisse*, a female Swiss servant ; *une pauvre femme*, a poor woman, &c.

* § 46. The adjectives *aquilin*, *aquiline* ; *bot*, club (in *pied-bot*, club-foot) ; *châtain* nut-brown ; *dispos*, active, nimble ; *fat*, dandy ; *résous*, changed into ; *pâillet*, pale ; *partisan*, partisan ; *témoin*, witness ; *velin*, vellum ; *grognon*, grumbler, etc., have no feminine. The words *artisan*, *imposteur*, *écrivain*, *poète*, *peintre*, *auteur*, *graveur*, *sculpteur*, *imprim.-ur*, *docteur*, and generally those expressing a trade or profession, usually carried on by men, have no feminine, even when referring to females.

§ 47. The following adjectives are only used in the feminine : *blette*, as in *poire blette*, sleepy pear ; *crasse*, as in *ignorance crasse*, dense ignorance ; *cursive*, as in *écriture cursive*, running hand ; *franque*, as in *la langue franque*, lingua Franca, the language spoken in the Levant ; *jardinée*, as in *pierres jardinées*, stones covered with grass ; *occasse*, as in *amplitude occasse*, occasive amplitude (astronomical term) ; *océane*, as in *mer océane*, ocean ; *pertuse*, as in *feuille pertuse*, speckled leaf ; *plénière*, as in *indulgence plénière*, plenary indulgence ; *ranine*, as in *veine ranine*, a ranular vein ; *romane*, as in *langue romane*, the Romance language.

THE PLACE AND THE PLURAL OF QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 48. Qualificative adjectives are, in French, generally placed after the substantive to which they relate, as :

un élève studieux, a studious pupil

une maison obscure, a dark house.

The following usually precede the noun : *beau*, fine ; *bon*, good ; *cher*, darling ; *digne*, worthy ; *grand*, great ; *jeune*, young ; *joli*, pretty ; *mauvais*, bad ; *méchant*, wicked ; *meilleur*, better ; *moindre*, less ; *petit*, little ; *saint*, holy ; *tel*, such ; *tout*, all ; *vieux*, old ; *vilain*, ugly.

§ 49. The plural is formed by adding *s* to the singular masculine or feminine, as : *des hommes savants*, learned men ; *des femmes savantes*, learned women ; but adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change, as : *gras*, fat ; *gros*, big ; *heureux*, happy, etc.

§ 50. Adjectives ending in *au* take *x*, as : *nouveau*, *nouveaux*, new ; *beau*, *beaux*, handsome.

§ 51. Adjectives ending in *al* form their plural in *aux*, as : *numéral*, *numéraux* ; *moral*, *moraux*, etc. Some follow the general rule and take an *s*, as : *amical* ; *colossal* ; *médial* ; *virginal* ; *filial* ; *fatal* ; *bancal*, bandy-legged ; *frugal* ; *fatal* ; *jovial* ; *natâl* ; *nasal* ; *matinal*, early ; *pénal* ; *initial* ; *théâtral*, theatrical ; *glacial*, icy ; *pascal*, paschal, etc. Several others have no plural masculine, as : *adverbial*, *automnal*, *boréal*, *lustral*, *naval*, etc.

Mode of Forming the Feminine and Plural of Compound Adjectives.

§ 52. When compounded of two adjectives they take the sign of both gender and number after each, as. *des roses fraîches-cueillies*, fresh gathered roses; but if one of these adjectives modifies the other they both remain unchanged, as. *une robe bleu-clair*, a light-blue dress.

§ 53. When an adverb, preposition, or participle, are parts of the compound adjective, the sign of number and gender is affixed to the adjective only, as.

avant-dernier, last but one, *les avant-derniers*

bien-aimé, well-beloved, *des bien-aimés*

contre-révolutionnaire, anti-révolutionary, *des contre-révolutionnaires*

mal-avisé, ill-advised, *des mal-avisés*.

Soi-disant, would-be, self-styled, is invariable, as: *de soi-disant nobles*, self-styled noblemen.

§ 54. When two adjectives form the compound, the first capable of being used adverbially, the second only is made to agree in gender and number with the substantive, as: *un cheval court-jointé*, a short-jointed horse; *des animaux long-jointés*, long-jointed animals, *de l'avoine clair-semée*, broad-cast oats; *une femme court-vêtue*, a short-skirted woman; *une fille nouveau-née*, a new-born girl; these being used instead of *longument-jointés*, *clairement semée*, etc. It is to be observed that the following is thus changed. masc. *tout-puissant*, *tout-puissants*, almighty, fem. *toute-puissante*, *toutes-puissantes*.

ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

§ 55. There are, in French, three degrees of comparison—the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

§ 56. The *Positive* is the adjective itself, as:—

Un génie puissant et élevé, a powerful and lofty genius.

§ 57. The *Comparative* is the adjective preceded by one of the words, *plus*, more, *moins*, less; and *aussi*, as; so that there are three sorts of comparatives—namely, a comparative of *superiority*, *equality*, and *inferiority*.

1. The comparative of *superiority* is formed* by placing *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it, as:—

Un génie plus puissant et plus élevé que Louis.

* A genius more powerful and more lofty than Lewis

2. The *comparative of equality* is formed by placing *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it, as:—

Un génie aussi puissant et aussi élevé que Louis.

A genius as powerful and as lofty as Lewis.

But in *negative sentences* *si* is generally used, as:—

Il n'a pas un génie si puissant et si élevé que Louis.

He has not a genius so powerful nor so lofty as Lewis.

3. The *comparative of inferiority* is formed by placing *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it, as:—

Un génie moins puissant et moins élevé que Louis.

A genius less powerful and less lofty than Lewis.

§ 58. There are two kinds of *Superlative* in French—the *superlative absolute* and the *superlative relative*.

1. The *superlative absolute* expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree, but without mentioning the objects with which it is compared. It is formed by putting *fort*, much; *très*, *bien*, very, or any other similar adverb before the adjective, as:—

C'est un homme très-malheureux.

He is a very unfortunate man.

2. The *superlative relative* implies a comparison; it is formed by prefixing *le*, *là*, *les*, or the possessive adjectives *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, etc., before the comparative of inferiority or superiority, as:—

le plus grand des écoliers, the tallest of the scholars

les hommes les plus sages, the wisest men

mon plus cher ami, my dearest friend

le meilleur enfant, the best child.

§ 59. *Le plus*, *le mieux*, *le moins*, placed before an adjective without implying comparison or having reference to a verb or adverb, remain invariable, as:—

Elle est le plus affligée et cependant elle me plaît le moins.

She is the most sad and yet she pleases me the least.

§ 60. The adjectives *bon*, *mauvais*, *petit*, and the adverbs *bien*, *mal*, *peu*, form their degrees of comparison in the following manner, as :—

Adjectives.

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>bon</i> , good | <i>meilleur</i> ,* better | <i>le meilleur</i> , the best. |
| <i>mauvais</i> , bad | <i>pire</i> ,* worse | <i>le pire</i> , the worst. |
| <i>petit</i> , little | <i>moindre</i> ,* less | <i>le moindre</i> , the least. |

Adverbs.

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>bien</i> , well | <i>mieux</i> , better | <i>le mieux</i> , the best. |
| <i>mal</i> , badly | <i>pis</i> , worse | <i>le pis</i> , the worst. |
| <i>peu</i> , little | <i>moins</i> , less | <i>le moins</i> , the least. |

Plus mal, *plus mauvais*, and *plus petit*, with regard to size, are likewise used ; but never *plus bien*, *plus bon*, or *plus peu*.

§ 61. The following table of the *Degrees of Comparison* may be found useful :—

| 1 | 2 | | | 3 | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|--|---|---|
| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | | | SUPERLATIVE. | | |
| | <i>superiority</i> | <i>equality</i> | <i>inferiority</i> | <i>absolute</i> | <i>relative</i> <i>superiority</i> | <i>inferiority</i> |
| The adjective itself. | <i>plus—que</i> more than | <i>aussi—que</i> as as | <i>moins—que</i> less than | <i>le</i> <i>ds</i> , very <i>beaucoup</i> , much <i>fort</i> , much <i>extrêmement</i> , etc. <i>extrême</i> ly | <i>le plus</i> } <i>la plus</i> } <i>les plus</i> } the most | <i>le moins</i> } <i>la moins</i> } <i>les moins</i> } the least |

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 62. The possessive adjectives are :—

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL FOR BOTH | |
|---------------------------|-------------|--|------------|
| MAS. | FEM. | GENDERS. | |
| <i>mon</i> , | <i>ma</i> , | <i>my</i> , | <i>mes</i> |
| <i>ton</i> , | <i>ta</i> , | <i>thy</i> , | <i>tes</i> |
| <i>son</i> , | <i>sa</i> , | <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> , | <i>ses</i> |
| } relating to one person. | | | |

* *Meilleur*, *pire*, and *moindre*, are formed from the Latin, *melior*, *pejor*, *minor*.

SINGULAR FOR
BOTH GENDERS.PLURAL FOR
BOTH GENDERS.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------|---------------|--|
| <i>notre,</i> | our, | <i>nos</i> | } relating to more than one person. |
| <i>votre,</i> | your, | <i>vos</i> | |
| <i>leur,</i> | their, | <i>leurs*</i> | |

§ 63. Possessive Adjectives are repeated in French before every noun which they specify, and they agree with it in gender and number, as:—

Mon oncle, ma tante, et mes cousins sont à Paris..

My uncle, my aunt, and my cousins are in Paris.

§ 64. The possessive adjective always agrees in French with the thing *possessed*, and not, as in English, with its possessor, as: *il aime sa femme*, he loves his wife; *elle aime son mari*, she loves her husband.

His and *her* are, in English, properly speaking, not possessive adjectives but the possessive case of the third personal pronoun. ,

§ 65. *Mon, ton, son*, are used instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, in order to avoid the hiatus caused by the meeting of two vowels, as: *mon âme*, my soul; *ton humeur*, thy temper.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 66. The Demonstrative Adjectives serve to denote and point out objects, and to distinguish them from one another. They are:—

MAS. SING.

FEM. SING.

ce, before a consonant or *h* aspir. ;

cette, this or that ;

cet, before a vowel or *h* mute.†

PLUR: BOTH GENDERS.

ces, these or those.

Examples.

SING.

PLUR.

ce tableau, this picture ; *ces tableaux*

ce monde, this world ; *ces mondes*

* From the Latin *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, illorum*.

† From the Latin, *ecce—hoc*.

SING.

PLUR.

cette femme, this woman; *ces femmes*

cette école, this school; *ces écoles*

ce héros, this hero; *ces héros*.

§ 67. *Ci* and *là*, here and there, are often added to point out persons or things more particularly, as:—

Cet homme-ci est moins estimable que cet homme-là.

This man is worthy of less esteem than that one.

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

§ 68. These adjectives present the nouns in an indefinite and general manner. They are:

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| <i>aucun</i> , | none, no one, not any |
| <i>autre</i> , | other, another |
| <i>certain</i> , | certain, some, some one |
| <i>chaque</i> , | each, every |
| <i>maint</i> , | many |
| <i>même</i> , | same, like, self |
| <i>nul</i> , | no one, none, no, not one |
| <i>plusieurs</i> , | several, many |
| <i>pas un</i> , | none, not one |
| <i>quel</i> , | which, what |
| <i>quelque</i> , | some, some other |
| <i>quelconque</i> , | whatever, whatsoever |
| <i>quelque—que</i> , | } whatever, how great or little soever |
| <i>quel que</i> | |
| <i>tel</i> , | such |
| <i>tout</i> , | any, every, anyone.* |

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 69. Adjectives of number are separated into *Cardinal Numbers* and *Ordinal Numbers*.

| | |
|---|---|
| * <i>Aucun</i> from the Latin <i>aliquis unus</i> | <i>quel</i> from the Latin <i>qualis</i> |
| <i>autre</i> " <i>alter</i> | <i>quelque</i> " <i>qualisquam, qualis-</i> |
| <i>certain</i> " <i>certus</i> | <i>qualis</i> |
| <i>chaque</i> " <i>quisque unus</i> | <i>quelconque</i> " <i>qualiscumque</i> • |
| <i>même</i> " <i>semotipsissimum</i> | <i>tel</i> " <i>talis</i> |
| <i>nul</i> " <i>nullus</i> | <i>tout</i> " <i>totus.</i> |
| <i>plusieurs</i> " <i>plus</i> | |

Cardinal Numbers are made use of to indicate or count the number of persons or things.

Ordinal Numbers indicate the rank or order that persons or things stand in with respect to each other.

The numeral adjectives are of both genders excepting *un*, *premier*, *second*, which add *e* at the end in the feminine.

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Un, one
Deux, two
Trois, three
Quatre, four
Cinq, five
Six, six
Sept, seven
Huit, eight
Neuf, nine
Dix, ten
Onze, eleven
Douze, twelve
Treize, thirteen
Quatorze, fourteen
Quinze, fifteen
Seize, sixteen
Dix-sept, seventeen
Dix-huit, eighteen
Dix-neuf, nineteen
Vingt, twenty
Vingt-et-un, twenty-one
Vingt-deux, twenty-two
Vingt-trois, twenty-three
Vingt-quatre, twenty-four
Vingt-cinq, twenty-five
Vingt-six, twenty-six
Vingt-sept, twenty-seven
Vingt-huit, twenty-eight
Vingt-neuf, twenty-nine
Trente, thirty
Trente-et-un, thirty-one
Quarante, forty

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Premier, first
Second, or *deuxième*, second
Troisième, third
Quatrième, fourth
Cinquième, fifth
Sixième, sixth
Septième, seventh
Huitième, eighth
Neuvième, ninth
Dixième, tenth
Onzième, eleventh
Douzième, twelfth
Treizième, thirteenth
Quatorzième, fourteenth
Quinzième, fifteenth
Seizième, sixteenth
Dix-septième, seventeenth
Dix-huitième, eighteenth
Dix-neuvième, nineteenth
Vingtième, twentieth
Vingt-et-unième, twenty-first
Vingt-deuxième, twenty-second
Vingt-troisième, twenty-third
Vingt-quatrième, twenty-fourth
Vingt-cinquième, twenty-fifth
Vingt-sixième, twenty-sixth
Vingt-septième, twenty-seventh
Vingt-huitième, twenty-eighth
Vingt-neuvième, twenty-ninth
Trentième, thirtieth
Trente-et-unième, thirty-first
Quarantième, fortieth

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Quarante-et-un, forty-one
Cinquante, fifty
Cinquante-et-un, fifty-one
Soixante, sixty
Soixante-et-un,* sixty-one
Soixante-et-dix, seventy
Soixante-et-onze, seventy-one
Soixante-douze, seventy-two
Soixante-treize, seventy-three
Soixante-quatorze, seventy-four
Soixante-quinze, seventy-five
Soixante-seize, seventy-six
Soixante-dix-sept, seventy-seven
Soixante-dix-huit, seventy-eight
Soixante-dix-neuf, seventy-nine
Quatre-vingts, eighty
Quatre-vingt-un, eighty-one
Quatre-vingt-deux, ninety
Quatre-vingt-onze, ninety-one
Quatre-vingt-douze, ninety-two
Quatre-vingt-treize, ninety-three
Quatre-vingt-quatorze, ninety-four

Quatre-vingt-quinze, ninety-five
Quatre-vingt-seize, ninety-six
Quatre-vingt-dix-sept, ninety-seven

Quatre-vingt-dix-huit, ninety-eight

Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf, ninety-nine

Cent, hundred
Cent un, hundred and one
Cent deux, hundred and two
Deux cents, two hundred
Mille, thousand
Dix mille, ten thousand
Million, million

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Quarante-et-unième, forty-first
Cinquantième, fiftieth
Cinquante-et-unième, fifty-first
Soixantième, sixtieth
Soixante-et-unième, sixty-first
Soixante-et-dixième, seventieth
Soixante-et-onzième, seventy-first
Soixante-et-douzième, seventy-second
Soixante-treizième, seventy-third
Soixante-quatorzième, seventy-fourth
Soixante-quinzième, seventy-fifth
Soixante-seizième, seventy-sixth
Soixante-dix-septième, seventy-seventh
Soixante-dix-huitième, seventy-eighth
Soixante-dix-neuvième, seventy-ninth
Quatre-vingtième, eightieth
Quatre-vingt-unième, eighty-first
Quatre-vingt-dixième, ninetieth
Quatre-vingt-onzième, ninety-first
Quatre-vingt-douzième, ninety-second
Quatre-vingt-treizième, ninety-third
Quatre-vingt-quatorzième, ninety-fourth
Quatre-vingt-quinzième, ninety-fifth
Quatre-vingt-seizième, ninety-sixth
Quatre-vingt-dix-septième, ninety-seventh
Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième, ninety-eighth
Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième, ninety-ninth

Centième, hundredth
Cent-unième, hundred and first
Cent-deuxième, hundred and second
Deux centième, two hundredth
Millième, thousandth
Dix millièmè, ten thousandth
Millionième, millionth.

* *Soixante-un*, *Soixante-dix*, can also be said, but for the sake of euphony it is rarely used.

Observe that the last letter of *cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix*, is pronounced before a vowel or *h* mute, as: *cinq enfants*, five children, but is silent before a consonant or *h* aspirated, as: *dix brebis*, ten sheep. The English word *and* after hundred, is not expressed in French, neither is *one* before hundred or thousand, as: *mille quatre cent soixante quatre paires*, one thousand four hundred and sixty-four pears.

• § 70. *Vingt* and *cent* are the only cardinal numbers which take an *s* in the plural, when they are preceded by another number. But when they are followed by another number, or used for the date of the year, they do not take an *s*, as:—

quatre-vingts chevaux, eighty horses
quatre-vingt-dix chevaux, ninety horses
deux cents moutons, two hundred sheep
deux cent-trente moutons, two hundred and thirty sheep
L'an mil cinq cent, in the year fifteen hundred.

We use *les Septante* in speaking of the seventy translators of the Bible (*Septuaginta*). For Charles the fifth (of Spain) and Sixtus the fifth, we say in French *Charles Quint* and *Sixte Quint*.

§ 71. *Mille*, a thousand, is invariable; but *mille*, a mile, takes an *s*; therefore *cinq mille* is five thousand, *cinq milles* five miles. In speaking of years of the Christian era, *mille* is abridged into *mil*, as:—

Le prince mourut en mil huit cent soixante-deux.
 The prince died in eighteen hundred and sixty-two.

§ 72. All the ordinals can take the mark of the plural, as: *les cinq dixièmes*, five-tenths. The cardinals instead of the ordinals must be used in French: (1) to denote the days of the months as dates (except *premier*); (2) to denote sovereigns of the same name (except *premier*), the remaining untranslated, as: *Charles trois*, Charles the third; *le cinq Avril*, the fifth of April.

§ 73. There are three sorts of numbers, viz. the *Collective*, the *Proportional*, and the *Fractional*.

1. The *collective* are:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>une douzaine</i> , a dozen | <i>une cinquantaine</i> , a number of 50 |
| <i>une demi-douzaine</i> , half a dozen | <i>une soixantaine</i> „ 60 |
| <i>une quinzaine</i> , a number of 15 | <i>une centaine</i> „ 100 |
| <i>une vingtaine</i> „ 20 | <i>un millier</i> „ 1000 |

These can all take the sign of the plural. *Trentaine*, *quarantaine*, *cinquantaine*, *soixantaine*, *centaine*, are used absolutely to indicate age, as: *il a passé la trentaine*, he is more than thirty years old.

Une quinzaine is in general employed to indicate a fortnight. *Quarantaine* is quarantine. *Neuvaine*, as a noun, indicates nine days of prayer. A few collectives end in *ain*, as: *quatrain*, *sixain*, *huitain*, *dixain*, a couplet of four, six, eight, ten lines.

The following are also made use of to indicate a person of a particular age, viz. :—

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>quadragénaire</i> , forty years old | <i>octogénaire</i> , eighty years old |
| <i>quinquagénaire</i> , fifty „ | <i>nonagénaire</i> , ninety „ |
| <i>sexagénaire</i> , sixty „ | <i>centénaire</i> , a hundred „ |
| <i>septuagénaire</i> , seventy „ | |

2. The *proportional* are:—

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <i>Double</i> , twofold | <i>Quintuple</i> , fivefold |
| <i>Triple</i> , threefold | <i>Décuple</i> , tenfold |
| <i>Quadruple</i> , fourfold | <i>Centuple</i> , etc., hundredfold, etc. |

3. The *fractional* are those which express fractional parts by means of ordinal numbers preceded by the article, as: *le cinquième*, the fifth; except *la moitié*, *le demi*, the half; *le tiers*, the third; *le quart*, the fourth. *Le demi*, denotes the mathematical fraction $\frac{1}{2}$; *la demie* is used substantively to indicate the half of anything.

CHAPTER V.

THE PRONOUN.

§ 74. PRONOUNS are words which are used instead of nouns.

There are five sorts of pronouns, *Personal*, *Possessive*, *Demonstrative*, *Relative*, and *Indefinite*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are divided into two classes, called *Conjunctive* and *Disjunctive*.

CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 75. Conjunctive personal pronouns are always united to a verb, and are thus declined :—

| SUBJ. OF THE VERB, OR NOM. | INDIRECT OBJECT OF THE VERB, OR DATIVE. |
|---|---|
| <i>je</i> , I, <i>je donne</i> , I give | <i>me</i> , to me, <i>il me donne</i> , he gives me |
| <i>tu</i> , thou, <i>ris-tu?</i> do you laugh? | <i>te</i> , to thee, <i>il te conseille</i> , he advises thee |
| <i>il</i> , he, or it, <i>il chante</i> , he sings | <i>lui</i> , to him, her, it, <i>elle lui écrit</i> , she writes to him |
| <i>elle</i> , she, or it, <i>elle reçoit</i> , she receives | |
| <i>nous</i> , we, <i>nous dansons</i> , we dance | <i>nous</i> , to us, <i>il nous parle</i> , he speaks to us |
| <i>vous</i> , you, <i>finissez-vous?</i> do you finish? | <i>vous</i> , to you, <i>je vous écris</i> , I write to you |
| <i>ils</i> , they (m.), <i>ils vendent</i> , they sell | <i>leur</i> , to them, <i>nous leur donnons</i> , we give to them. |
| <i>elles</i> , they (f.), <i>elles parlent</i> , they speak | |

• From the Latin *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, *illa*, *nos*, *vos*, *illi*, *illæ*.

DIRECT OBJECT OF THE VERB, OR ACCUSATIVE.

me, me, *il me frappe*, he strikes me
te, thee, *vous te voyons*, we see you
le, him, it, *je le loue*, I praise him
la, her, it, *je la loue*, I praise her
nous, us, *il nous étonne*, he astonishes us
vous, you, *je vous punis*, I punish you
les, them (both genders), *nous les rencontrons*, we meet them.

The following Table of the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns may be found useful :—

| NOMINATIVE. | | GENITIVE. | |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>je</i> , | I | <i>en</i> , | of me |
| <i>tu</i> , | thou | <i>en</i> , | of thee |
| <i>il, elle</i> , | he, she, it | <i>en</i> , | of him, her, it |
| <i>nous</i> , | we | <i>en</i> , | of us |
| <i>vous</i> , | you or ye | <i>en</i> , | of you, ye |
| <i>ils, elles</i> , | they | <i>en</i> , | of them. |
| DATIVE. | | ACCUSATIVE. | |
| <i>me</i> , | to me | <i>me</i> , | me |
| <i>te</i> , | to thee | <i>te</i> , | thee |
| <i>lui</i> , | to him, her | <i>le, la</i> , | him, her, it |
| <i>nous</i> , | to us | <i>nous</i> , | us |
| <i>vous</i> , | to you | <i>vous</i> , | you |
| <i>leur</i> , | to them. | <i>les</i> , | them. |

§ 76. The genitive of all the conjunctive personal pronouns is *en*,* which means *of*, or *from* him, her, it, them, any, etc., and refers to any person or thing immediately preceding, as :—

Ce livre vous amuse ; vous en parlez souvent This book amuses you ; you often speak of it.

§ 77. *Y*,† means *to* or *at* him, her, them, it, in them, therein, etc. It is sometimes employed with reference to persons, but generally when speaking of things, as :—

Il aime l'étude, et s'y livre entièrement He loves study and devotes himself entirely to it.

* From the Latin *inde*.

† From the Latin *ibi*.

§ 78. Conjunctive personal pronouns always precede the verb, except in the imperative affirmatively, and in interrogations. In a compound tense they are placed before the auxiliary, as:—

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Je vous vois</i> , I see you | <i>Ne le donnons pas</i> , let us not |
| <i>Je vous ai vu</i> , I have seen you | give it. |
| <i>Donnons le</i> , let us give it | <i>Agit-il</i> , does he act? |

Observe that the third person singular and plural of the imperative belong properly to the present subjunctive, and therefore the pronoun, in these persons, always precedes the verb.

Je, me, te, le, and la, suppress the vowel when the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute. (See § 3).

§ 79. *Me* and *te* are changed into *moi* and *toi*, when coming after the verb, except when they are followed by the pronoun *en*, in which case they remain unaltered, as:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Ecrivez-moi</i> , write to me | <i>Ecrivez m'en</i> , write to me |
| | about it. |

DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 80. Disjunctive personal pronouns are put in the same place in French as in English. They are:—

| NOM. AND ACC. | NOM. AND ACC. |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>moi</i> , I, me | <i>nous</i> , we, us |
| <i>toi</i> , thou, thee | <i>vous</i> , you |
| <i>lui</i> (m.), he, him | <i>eux</i> (m.), they, them |
| <i>elle</i> (f.), she, her | <i>elles</i> (f.), they, them. |
| <i>soi</i> , oneself. | |

§ 81. These pronouns are used: 1st, for the sake of emphasis; 2nd, after *c'est*, or *ce sont*, expressed or understood; after *que*, than; *ou*, or; *comme*, as; and *ni*, nor; 3rd, when the verb has several pronouns as subjects or objects; 4th, they form their genitive and dative cases with the help of the prepositions *d* or *de*, but they can also be governed by other prepositions, as:—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>Moi, je suis Français</i> | I am a Frenchman |
| 2. <i>C'est lui</i> | It is he |
| 3. <i>Vous parlez plus qu'eux</i> | You speak more than they |
| 3. <i>Lui et moi nous dansons</i> | He and I dance |
| 4. <i>Il parle de moi</i> | He speaks of me |
| 4. <i>Je pense à toi</i> | I think of thee |
| 4. <i>Venez avec lui</i> | Come with him. |

§ 82. There is also a reflective pronoun, so called, because it represents the subject of the verb in any case but the nominative. It is :—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>me</i> , myself | <i>nous</i> , ourselves |
| <i>te</i> , thyself | <i>vous</i> , yourselves |
| <i>se</i> , himself, herself, itself | <i>se</i> , themselves. |

§ 83. *Me* and *te*, reflective, change into *moi* and *toi* when after a verb. (See § 79).

Se changes into *soi* when joined to a preposition, as: *On doit parler rarement de soi*, One should seldom speak of oneself.

Soi is never used but in reference to an indefinite subject.

§ 84. In order to give greater emphasis, the adjectives *même* or *seul* are sometimes added to the disjunctive pronouns, as: *Il l'a fait lui-même*, He himself has done it.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 85. The possessive pronouns indicate the possession of a thing, and are used in the place of repeating a substantive previously mentioned. They are :—

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------|
| MAS. | FEM. | MAS. | FEM. |
| <i>le mien</i> , | <i>la mienne</i> , | <i>mine</i> | |
| <i>le tien</i> , | <i>la tienne</i> , | <i>thine</i> | |
| <i>le sien</i> , | <i>la sienne</i> , | <i>his, hers, its</i> | |
| <i>le nôtre</i> , | <i>le nôtre</i> , | <i>ours</i> | |
| <i>le vôtre</i> , | <i>la vôtre</i> , | <i>yours</i> | |
| <i>le leur</i> , | <i>la leur</i> , | <i>theirs</i> | |

The *le*, *la*, *les*, preceding these pronouns, when it is accompanied by *de*, or *d'*, is changed into *du*, *de la*, *des*, of, or from

the; and into *au, à la, aux*, to, or at the; but the *the*, expressed in French, is not translated into English, as:—

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|------|---------|------|
| MAS. | FEM. | MAS. | FEM. |
| <i>du mien, de la mienne, des miens, des miennes</i> , of mine. | | | |
| <i>au mien, à la mienne, aux miens, aux miennes</i> , to mine. | | | |

§ 86. These pronouns always agree in gender and number with the object *possessed*, and not, as in English, with the possessor, as:—

Mon frère et le sien, my brother and his or hers.

Votre sœur et la mienne, your sister and mine.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 87 These pronouns serve to point out the position of the object to which they refer. They are the following:

§ 88. *Ce*,* he, she, this or that, is always used substantively before the verb *être*, to be, or before the relative pronouns *qui*, who, *que*, whom, *dont*, of or from whom or which, *à quoi*, to what, as:—

C'est un élève studieux, he is a studious pupil.

C'est ce que je disais, that is what I said.

§ 89. *Ce* is of course always the subject of the verb, and drops the *e* before an *a* or *u*, as:—*ç'a été la cause de bien des malheurs*, this has been the cause of many misfortunes. But sometimes *ce* can be used as an accusative without any relative pronoun, as: *soit fait, ce dit le frère* (La Font.), let it be done, said the frater; *quant à ce, il n'a jamais fait de mal à personne* (Laplace), as to this, he has never done harm to anybody. *Ce* is also used without a relative pronoun in legal style, as *nonobstant lettres à ce contraires*, notwithstanding letters contrary to this.

§ 90. *Celui*,† (m.s.), *celle* (f.s), that; *ceux* (m.p.), *celles*, (f.p.), those, always followed by the relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, expressed or understood; by *de*, expressing possession; or by *de* followed by a present infinitive, a past participle, or adjective, as:—

* In Latin, *Ecce iste*.

† From the Latin, *Ecce ille*.

| | |
|---|----------------------|
| <i>La voix de l'homme est plus forte</i> | The voice of the man |
| <i>que celle de l'enfant (de expressing</i> | is stronger than the |
| <i>possession)</i> | child's. |
| <i>C'est un méchant métier que celui de</i> | Slandering is a bad |
| <i>médire (de followed by pres. infin.)</i> | trade. |
| <i>Ce livre n'est pas celui que j'ai</i> | This book is not the |
| <i>acheté (celui followed by the</i> | one I have bought. |
| <i>relat. pron. que)</i> | |

§ 91. *Ci*, or *là*, is often added to these pronouns to point out the nearest or farthest of two or more persons, or things; they can generally be translated into English by *the former, the latter, this, that*, as:—

| | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Voici de beaux chevaux; ceux-ci</i> | Here are fine horses; these |
| <i>sont bruns; ceux-là sont noirs</i> | are brown; those are black. |

§ 92. *Ceci*, this, and *cela*, that, are formed from *ce*, united with *ci* and *là*; these two pronouns have no plural, are both masculine, and stand for something pointed at, but not named. They can generally be translated by *this thing, that thing*, as:—

Ceci est soie; cela est laine, this is silk; that is wool.

Ceci has more power than *cela*, as:—

Ceci n'est pas un jeu d'enfants, this is no child's play.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 93. The relative pronouns are so called, because they relate to a preceding noun or pronoun expressed or understood, called antecedent. They are *qui*, who; *que*, whom; *lequel*, which; *quoi*, what; *où*, where, in which. *Que* loses the *e* before a vowel, but *qui* never changes.*

§ 94. *Qui* has neither gender nor number, relates to persons and things, and is thus declined:—

* *Que, qui*, from the Latin *quid, quis*
lequel, „ „ ille qualis

quoi, from the Latin que
où, „ „ ubi

| | |
|---|--|
| Nom. <i>qui</i> , who | <i>L'homme qui parle</i> , the man who speaks |
| Gen. <i>de qui</i> (for persons only), or <i>dont</i> | <i>La femme de qui</i> , or <i>dont je parle</i> , the woman of whom I speak |
| Dat. <i>à qui</i> , to whom | <i>L'homme à qui je parle</i> , the man to whom I speak |
| Acc. <i>que</i> , whom | <i>La femme que je vois</i> , the woman whom I see. |

§ 95. Though *qui* has two genitives, *de qui* and *dont*, *de qui* is only used in speaking of persons, when the following verb expresses an idea of transfer, or conveyance; but *dont* is used both of persons and things, can never begin a sentence, and is generally preferred to *de qui*. We can therefore say, *l'enfant de qui*, or *dont j'ai reçu une plume*, the child from whom I have received a pen. But we cannot say, *les livres de qui vous parlez*; it must be, *les livres dont vous parlez*, the books of which you speak.*

§ 96. *Dont* expresses also an idea of birth, descent, or origin, as:—
Les Gaulois dont ils sont descendus, The Gauls from whom they are descended.

§ 97. *Lequel* (m. s.), *laquelle* (f. s.), *lesquels* (m. p.), *lesquelles* (f. p.), are used instead of *qui*, or *que*. They agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate, and are thus declined:—

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| MAS. | FEM. | MAS. | FEM. |
| Nom. <i>lequel</i> , <i>laquelle</i> | | <i>lesquels</i> , <i>lesquelles</i> | who, which, that |
| Gen. <i>duquel</i> , <i>de laquelle</i> | | <i>desquels</i> , <i>desquelles</i> | of whom, etc. |
| Dat. <i>auquel</i> , <i>à laquelle</i> | | <i>auxquels</i> , <i>auxquelles</i> | to whom, etc. |

* Formerly *de qui* and *à qui* were also used for things, as:—
Une paix de qui les doucurs (Racine), A peace of which the charms
La main par qui Dieu m'a frappé (Voltaire), The hand by which God has struck me
L'œil intellectuel par qui vous découvrez les merveilles de la cité sainte (Chateaubriand), The eye of the mind by which you discover the wonders of the holy city
Deux pivots sur qui roule aujourd'hui notre vie (La Fontaine), Two pivots on which turns to-day our life.

§ 98. The genitive and dative of these pronouns can be used when speaking of persons and things; but these same cases of *qui* can only be used of persons (see § 95), as:—

C'est une grammaire de laquelle (not de qui) on parle très-bien It is a grammar of which they speak very well

Voilà l'homme à qui (or auquel) je me fie There is the man in whom I trust.

§ 99. Observe that in speaking of persons *qui*, *de qui* or *dont*, and *à qui*, are generally preferred to *lequel*, *duquel*, *auquel*, etc., except to avoid ambiguity, as: *un homme s'est levé au milieu de l'assemblée lequel a parlé* (Acad.), a man rose in the midst of the assembly who has spoken. Here *lequel* is used, because if *qui* was employed it would be doubtful if *l'homme*, the man, or *l'assemblée*, had spoken.

§ 100. *Duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, etc., and *dont*, as relative pronouns, can both be used of persons, but *dont* generally has a nominative or accusative following, as: *la femme dont le fils est mort hier, et dont j'ai vu la fille*, the woman, whose son died yesterday, and whose daughter I have seen; whilst *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, etc., are generally followed by a dative or by a substantive preceded by a preposition, as: *la femme au fils à laquelle j'ai parlé*, the woman to whose son I have spoken; *la femme, avec le fils de laquelle je suis sorti*, the woman with whose son I went out.

§ 101. *Quoi*, what, is only used when speaking of things; it is employed in an absolute manner in the sense of *lequel*, *laquelle*, etc. *Quoi* is always preceded or followed by a preposition, as:

Voilà de quoi il est question That is what the matter is
C'est la chose à quoi il pense le moins It is the thing of which he thinks the least.

§ 102. *Où* with an antecedent, is a relative pronoun, and always relates to inanimate objects, as:—

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort The moment in which we are born, is a step towards death.

It is often preceded by a preposition, and generally used when speaking of places, as:—

Les villes par où il a passé The towns through which he
has passed.

103. When *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, and *lequel* have no antecedent they are called interrogative pronouns. In this case *qui*, who, whom, is only employed as subject and object in speaking of persons; *que*, what, and *quoi*, what, in the same cases in speaking of things, as:—

Subj. *Qui est là ?* who is there?

Obj. *Qui cherchez-vous ?* whom do you look for?

Subj. *Que faites vous ?* what are you doing?

Obj. *Je ne sais que dire*, I do not know what to say.

À quoi bon tout cela ? what is the use of all that?

Observe that *of whom* in an interrogative sentence can never be translated by *dont*.

§ 104. *Lequel*, which, as an interrogative pronoun marks a distinction among several persons or things, as:—

Lequel aimez-vous le mieux de ces deux tableaux-là ? Which of these two pictures do you like best?

Observe that the relative pronouns are often understood in English, but must always be expressed in French, as: *la poire que j'aime*, the pear I like. Here the pronoun *which*, is understood in English, but expressed by *que* in French.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 105. Indefinite pronouns express a general and vague signification, as:—

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>autrui</i> , other people | <i>quelconque</i> , whatever |
| <i>chacun</i> , every one | <i>l'un l'autre</i> , one another |
| <i>on</i> , one, they, people, etc. | <i>l'un et l'autre</i> , both |
| <i>personne</i> , nobody | <i>l'un ou l'autre</i> , either |
| <i>quelqu'un</i> , somebody | <i>ni l'un ni l'autre</i> , neither.* |
| <i>quiconque</i> , whoever | |

* *Autrui*, from the Latin *alter*
chacun, " *quisque unus*
on, " *homō*

personne, from the Latin *persona*
quelconque, " *qualicumque*
quiconque, " *quicumque* *

CHAPTER VI.

THE VERB.

§ 106. **VERB** is the grammatical term for doing something.

§ 107. French verbs are divided into four conjugations, which are distinguished from each other by the termination of the infinitive mood.

The first terminates in **er**, as *parler*, to speak.

„ second „ in **ir**, as *finir*, to finish.

„ third „ in **oir**, as *recevoir*, to receive

„ fourth „ in **re**, as *vendre*, to sell.

There are, in French, two auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be; as they differ in their conjugation and serve to form the compound tenses of all other verbs we give them first.

§ 108. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB.

AVOIR, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | PAST. |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>Avoir</i> , to have. | <i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had. |
| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. |
| <i>Ayant</i> , having. | <i>Ayant eu</i> , having had. |
| PARTICIPLE PAST.— <i>Eu</i> , m., <i>eue</i> , f., had. | |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Simple Tenses. | | Compound Tenses. | |
|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
| <i>J'ai</i> , | I have. | <i>J'ai</i> | I have |
| <i>tu as</i> , | thou hast. | <i>tu as</i> | thou hast |
| <i>il or elle a</i> , | he or she has. | <i>il a</i> | he has |
| <i>nous avons</i> , | we have. | <i>nous avons</i> | we have |
| <i>vous avez</i> , | you have. | <i>vous avez</i> | you have |
| <i>ils or elles ont</i> , | they have. | <i>ils ont</i> | they have |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| <i>J'avais,</i> | I had. |
| <i>tu avais,</i> | thou hadst. |
| <i>il avait,</i> | he had. |
| <i>nous avions,</i> | we had. |
| <i>vous aviez,</i> | you had. |
| <i>ils avaient,</i> | they had. |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|------------|--------|
| <i>*J'avais</i> |] <i>tu,</i> | I had |] had. |
| <i>*tu avais</i> | | thou hadst | |
| <i>il avait</i> | | he had | |
| <i>nous avions</i> | | we had | |
| <i>vous aviez</i> | | you had | |
| <i>ils avaient</i> | | they had | |

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

| | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| <i>J'eus,</i> | I had. |
| <i>tu eus,</i> | thou hadst. |
| <i>il eut,</i> | he had. |
| <i>nous eûmes,*</i> | we had. |
| <i>vous eûtes,</i> | you had. |
| <i>ils eurent,</i> | they had. |

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|------------|--------|
| <i>J'eus</i> |] <i>tu,</i> | I had |] had. |
| <i>tu eus</i> | | thou hadst | |
| <i>il eut</i> | | he had | |
| <i>nous eûmes</i> | | we had | |
| <i>vous eûtes</i> | | you had | |
| <i>ils eurent</i> | | they had | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | | |
|---------------------|------------|---------|
| <i>J'aurai,</i> | I shall |] have. |
| <i>tu auras,</i> | thou shalt | |
| <i>il aura,</i> | he shall | |
| <i>nous aurons,</i> | we shall | |
| <i>vous aurez,</i> | you shall | |
| <i>ils auront,</i> | they shall | |

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| <i>J'aurai</i> |] <i>tu,</i> | I shall |] have had. |
| <i>tu auras</i> | | thou shalt | |
| <i>il aura</i> | | he shall | |
| <i>nous aurons</i> | | we shall | |
| <i>vous aurez</i> | | you shall | |
| <i>ils auront</i> | | they shall | |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------|
| <i>J'aurais,</i> | I should |] have. |
| <i>tu aurais,</i> | thou shouldst | |
| <i>il aurait,</i> | he should | |
| <i>nous aurions,</i> | we should | |
| <i>vous auriez,</i> | you should | |
| <i>ils auraient,</i> | they should | |

PAST.

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>J'aurais</i> |] <i>tu,</i> | I should |] have had. |
| <i>tu aurais</i> | | thou shouldst | |
| <i>il aurait</i> | | he should | |
| <i>nous aurions</i> | | we should | |
| <i>vous auriez</i> | | you should | |
| <i>ils auraient</i> | | they should | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>Aie,</i> | Have (thou) |
| <i>qu'il ait,</i> | let him have |
| <i>ayons,</i> | let us have |
| <i>ayez,</i> | have (ye) |
| <i>qu'ils aient,</i> | let them have. |

* In the *preterite definite* of all verbs, the first and second person plural take the circumflex accent over the vowel that terminates the penultimate syllables.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. | That I may have. | ch, | That I may have had. |
|---|--|---------------------|-----|---------------------------|
| <i>Que j'aie,</i> <i>que tu aies,</i> <i>qu'il ait,</i> <i>que nous ayons,</i> <i>que vous ayez,</i> <i>qu'ils aient,</i> | <i>Que j'aie</i> <i>que tu aies</i> <i>qu'il ait</i> <i>que nous ayons</i> <i>que vous ayez</i> <i>qu'ils aient</i> | | | |
| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT. | | | |
| <i>Que j'eusse,</i> <i>que tu eusses,</i> <i>qu'il eût,*</i> <i>que nous eussions,</i> <i>que vous eussiez.</i> <i>qu'ils eussent,</i> | <i>Que j'eusse</i> <i>que tu eusses</i> <i>qu'il eût</i> <i>que nous eussions</i> <i>que vous eussiez</i> <i>qu'ils eussent †</i> | | | That I might have had. |
| That I might have. | ch, | | | |

The auxiliary verb *avoir* is made use of to conjugate—

1st. Its own compound tenses, as : *J'ai eu*, I have had, etc.

2ndly. The compound tenses of the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, as : *J'ai été*, I have been, etc.

3rdly. The compound tenses of all active or transitive verbs, as : *J'ai aimé*, I have loved, etc.

4thly. The compound tenses of neuter verbs in general.

§ 109. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB

ÊTRE, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | PAST. |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <i>Être</i> , to be. | <i>Avoir été</i> , to have been. |
| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. |
| <i>Étant</i> , being. | <i>Ayant été</i> , having been. |
| ‡ | |
| PARTICIPLE PAST.— <i>Été</i> , ‡ been. | |

* In the subjunctive mood of all verbs, the third person singular of the *imperfect tense* takes the circumflex accent over the vowel that precedes the final *t*, as : *qu'il fût*, etc.

† This tense, by omitting the *que*, is used for the conditional past.

‡ The termination of *été* is never changed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Simple Tenses. | | Compound Tenses. | |
|---------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|------------|
| PRESENT. | | PRÆTERITE INDEFINITE. | |
| <i>Je suis,</i> | I am. | <i>J'ai</i> | I have |
| <i>tu es,</i> | thou art. | <i>tu as</i> | thou hast |
| <i>il or elle est,</i> | he or she is. | <i>il a</i> | he has |
| <i>nous sommes,</i> | we are. | <i>nous avons</i> | we have |
| <i>*vous êtes,</i> | you are. | <i>vous avez</i> | you have |
| <i>ils or elles sont,</i> | they are. | <i>ils ont</i> | they have |
| IMPERFECT. | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>J'étais,</i> | I was. | <i>J'avais</i> | I had |
| <i>tu étais,</i> | thou wast. | <i>tu avais</i> | thou hadst |
| <i>il était,</i> | he was. | <i>il avait</i> | he had |
| <i>nous étions,</i> | we were. | <i>nous avions</i> | we had |
| <i>vous étiez,</i> | you were. | <i>vous aviez</i> | you had |
| <i>ils étaient,</i> | they were. | <i>ils avaient</i> | they had |
| PRÆTERITE DEFINITE. | | PRÆTERITE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je fus,</i> | I was. | <i>J'eus</i> | I had |
| <i>tu fus,</i> | thou wast. | <i>tu eus</i> | thou hadst |
| <i>il fut,</i> | he was. | <i>il eut</i> | he had |
| <i>nous fûmes,</i> | we were. | <i>nous eûmes</i> | we had |
| <i>vous fûtes,</i> | you were. | <i>vous eûtes</i> | you had |
| <i>ils furent,</i> | they were. | <i>ils eurent</i> | they had |
| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | | FUTURE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je serai,</i> | I shall | <i>J'aurai</i> | I shall |
| <i>tu seras,</i> | thou shalt | <i>tu auras</i> | thou shalt |
| <i>il sera,</i> | he shall | <i>il aura</i> | he shall |
| <i>nous serons,</i> | we shall | <i>nous aurons</i> | we shall |
| <i>vous serez,</i> | you shall | <i>vous aurez</i> | you shall |
| <i>ils seront,</i> | they shall | <i>ils auront</i> | they shall |

•CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>Je serais,</i> | I should | <i>J'aurais</i> | I should |
| <i>tu serais,</i> | thou shouldst | <i>tu aurais</i> | thou shouldst |
| <i>il serait,</i> | he should | <i>il aurait</i> | he should |
| <i>nous serions,</i> | we should | <i>nous aurions</i> | we should |
| <i>vous seriez,</i> | you should | <i>vous auriez</i> | you should |
| <i>ils seraient,</i> | they should | <i>ils auraient</i> | they should |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| <i>Sois,</i> | Be (thou). |
| <i>qu'il soit,</i> | let him be. |
| <i>soyons,</i> | let us be. |
| <i>soyez,</i> | be (ye). |
| <i>qu'ils soient,</i> | let them be. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Que je sois,
que tu sois,
qu'il soit,
que nous soyons,
que vous soyez,
qu'ils soient,*

That I may
be.

PRÆTERITE.

*Que j'aie
que tu aies
qu'il ait
que nous ayons
que vous ayez
qu'ils aient*

été,

That I may
have been.

IMPERFECT.

*Que je fusse,
que tu fusses,
qu'il fût,
que nous fussions,
que vous fussiez,
qu'ils fussent,*

That I might
be.

PLUPERFECT.

*Que j'eusse
que tu eusses
qu'il eût
que nous eussions
que vous eussiez
qu'ils eussent*

été,

That I might
have been.

The auxiliary verb *être* is made use of to conjugate—

- 1st. All passive verbs, as: *je suis aimé*, I am loved.
- 2ndly. The compound tenses of a few neuter verbs.
- 3rdly. Those of all the reflexive verbs, as: *je me suis promené*, I have walked.

§ 110. THE REGULAR VERBS.

It is from five simple parts of the verb that all the other tenses may be formed, and thence they are called the primitive forms or tenses; they are:—

- The Present of the Infinitive,
- The Present Participle,
- The Past Participle,
- The Present of the Indicative, and
- The Præterite Definite.

Their forms in the four conjugations are as follows:—

| PRF ^s . INF. | PRES. PART. | PAST PART. | PRES. INDIC. | PRET. DEF. |
|-------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>parler</i> | <i>parlant</i> | <i>parlé</i> | <i>parle</i> | <i>parlai</i> |
| <i>finir</i> | <i>finissant</i> | <i>fini</i> | <i>finis</i> | <i>finis.</i> |
| <i>recevoir</i> | <i>recevant</i> | <i>reçu</i> | <i>reçois</i> | <i>reçus</i> |
| <i>vendre</i> | <i>vendant</i> | <i>vendu</i> | <i>vends</i> | <i>vendis.</i> |

§ 111. The *Present* of the *Infinitive* forms two tenses—viz., the *Future Absolute*, by changing *r* in the first and second conjugation, *oir* in the third, and *re* in the fourth, into *fai*, *ras*, *ra*, *rons*, *rez*, *ront*; and the *Present Conditional*, by changing *r* in the first and second conjugation, *oir* in the third, and *re* in the fourth into *rais*, *rais*, *rait*, *riens*, *riez*, *raient*.

§ 112. The *Present Participle* forms three tenses—viz., the three persons plural of the *Present* of the *Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent*, except in the third conjugation, where, in the third person plural, it changes *evant* into *oivent*. The *Imperfect Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ais*, *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, *aient*. The *Present Subjunctive* by changing *ant* into *e*, *es*, *e*, *ions*, *iez*, *ent*, except in the third conjugation, which changes *evant* into *oive*, *oives*, *oive*, *evions*, *eviez*, *oivent*.

§ 113. The *Past Participle* forms all the compound tenses by *avoir* or *être*.

§ 114. The *Present* of the *Indicative* forms the *Imperative* by omitting the pronouns *tu*, *nous*, *vous* in all verbs, and by suppressing the last *s* of the second person singular in the verbs of the first conjugation.

§ 115. The *Preterite Definite* forms the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by adding to the second person singular *se*, *ses* (the third person changes the *s* into *t*), *sions*, *siez*, *sent*.

• **Observe** that the only variable letters in the four conjugations are the terminations *ER*, *IR*, *OIR*, and *RE*; the part that remains invariable is called the *root*.

§ 116. PARADIGM OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION, IN **ER**
PARLER, TO SPEAK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|---|-----------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Parler,</i> | to speak. | <i>Avoir parlé,</i> | to have spoken. |
| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | |
| <i>Parlant,</i> | speaking. | <i>Ayant parlé,</i> | having spoken |
| PARTICIPLE PAST.— <i>Parlé,</i> spoken. | | | |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|------------|
| <i>Je parle,</i> | I speak. | <i>J'ai</i> | I have |
| <i>tu parles,</i> | thou speakest. | <i>tu as</i> | thou hast |
| <i>il parle,</i> | he speaks. | <i>il a</i> | he has |
| <i>nous parlons,</i> | we speak. | <i>nous avons</i> | we have |
| <i>vous parlez,</i> | you speak. | <i>vous avez</i> | you have |
| <i>ils parlent,</i> | they speak. | <i>ils ont</i> | they have |
| | | | |
| IMPERFECT. | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>Je parlais,</i> | I was | <i>J'avais</i> | I had |
| <i>tu parlais,</i> | thou wast | <i>tu avais</i> | thou hadst |
| <i>il parlait,</i> | he was | <i>il avait</i> | he had |
| <i>nous parlions,</i> | we were | <i>nous avions</i> | we had |
| <i>vous parliez,</i> | you were | <i>vous aviez</i> | you had |
| <i>ils parlaient,</i> | they were | <i>ils avaient</i> | they had |
| | | | |
| PRETERITE DEFINITE. | | PRETERITE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je parlai,</i> | I spoke. | <i>J'eus</i> | I had |
| <i>tu parlais,</i> | thou spokest. | <i>tu eus</i> | thou hadst |
| <i>il parla,</i> | he spoke. | <i>il eut</i> | he had |
| <i>nous parlâmes,</i> | we spoke. | <i>nous eûmes</i> | we had |
| <i>vous parlâtes,</i> | you spoke. | <i>vous eûtes</i> | you had |
| <i>ils parlèrent,</i> | they spoke. | <i>ils eurent</i> | they had |
| | | | |
| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | | FUTURE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je parlerai,</i> | I shall | <i>J'aurai</i> | I shall |
| <i>tu parleras,</i> | thou shalt | <i>tu auras</i> | thou shalt |
| <i>il parlera,</i> | he shall | <i>il aura</i> | he shall |
| <i>nous parlerons,</i> | we shall | <i>nous aurons</i> | we shall |
| <i>vous parlerez,</i> | you shall | <i>vous aurez</i> | you shall |
| <i>ils parleront,</i> | they shall | <i>ils auront</i> | they shall |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | | | | PAST. |
|-------------------------|---------------|--------|---------------------|--------|---------------|
| <i>Je parlerais,</i> | I should | speak. | <i>J'aurais</i> | parlé, | I should |
| <i>tu parlerais,</i> | thou shouldst | | <i>tu aurais</i> | | thou shouldst |
| <i>il parlerait,</i> | he should | | <i>il aurait</i> | | he should |
| <i>nous parlerions,</i> | we should | | <i>nous aurions</i> | | we should |
| <i>vous parleriez,</i> | you should | | <i>vous auriez</i> | | you should |
| <i>ils parleraient,</i> | they should | | <i>ils auraient</i> | | they should |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Parle,</i> | Speak (thou). |
| <i>qu'il parle,</i> | let him speak. |
| <i>parlons,</i> | let us speak. |
| <i>parlez,</i> | speak (you). |
| <i>qu'ils parlent,</i> | let them speak. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE. | |
|---|----------------------|--|--|
| <i>Que je parle,</i> <i>que tu parles,</i> <i>qu'il parle,</i> <i>que nous parlions,</i> <i>que vous parliez,</i> <i>qu'ils parlent,</i> | That I may speak. | <i>Que j'aie</i> <i>que tu aies</i> <i>qu'il ait</i> <i>que nous ayons</i> <i>que vous ayez</i> <i>qu'ils aient</i> | <i>parlé,</i> < |

Conjugate the following verbs like *parler* :—

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>absorber,</i> | to absorb | <i>autoriser,</i> | to authorize |
| <i>affliger,</i> | to afflict | <i>céder,</i> | to yield |
| <i>aimer,</i> | to love | <i>commander,</i> | to command |
| <i>attacher,</i> | to attach | <i>complimenter,</i> | to compliment |
| <i>attaquer,</i> | to attack | <i>condamner,</i> | to condemn |
| <i>attribuer,</i> | to attribute | <i>conjuguer,</i> | to conjugate |
| <i>augmenter,</i> | to augment | <i>contempler,</i> | to contemplate |

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| <i>daigner,</i> | to disdain | <i>inventer,</i> | to invent |
| <i>développer,</i> | to develop | <i>laisser,</i> | to leave |
| <i>dicter,</i> | to dictate | <i>laver,</i> | to wash |
| <i>discerner,</i> | to discern | <i>mendier,</i> | to beg |
| <i>dispenser,</i> | to dispense with | <i>négociier,</i> | to negotiate |
| <i>effectuer,</i> | to effect | <i>nommer,</i> | to name |
| <i>embarrasser,</i> | to embarrass | <i>offenser,</i> | to offend |
| <i>empêcher,</i> | to prevent | <i>plaider,</i> | to plead |
| <i>emprisonner,</i> | to imprison | <i>porter,</i> | to carry |
| <i>enseigner,</i> | to teach | <i>raccommoder,</i> | to mend |
| <i>envier,</i> | to envy | <i>récompenser,</i> | to reward |
| <i>ériger,</i> | to erect | <i>remercier,</i> | to thank |
| <i>espérer,</i> | to hope | <i>rencontrer,</i> | to meet |
| <i>exceller,</i> | to excel | <i>ressembler,</i> | to resemble |
| <i>exercer,</i> | to exercise | <i>révoquer,</i> | to revoke |
| <i>flatter,</i> | to flatter | <i>sauter,</i> | to jump |
| <i>frapper,</i> | to strike | <i>solliciter,</i> | to solicit |
| <i>fréquenter,</i> | to frequent | <i>souffler,</i> | to blow |
| <i>frotter,</i> | to rub | <i>supplier,</i> | to beseech |
| <i>habiller,</i> | to dress, | <i>tourmenter,</i> | to torment |
| <i>habituer,</i> | to accustom | <i>tousser,*</i> | to cough. |

§ 117. It is to be observed that all verbs ending in *ger*, take an *e* mute in the present participle and the preterite definite, and in all tenses formed from these two, between the *g* and the termination, that this letter may preserve its soft sound, as:—

MANGER, TO EAT.

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| Pres. Part. | <i>mangeant</i> , eating |
| Pres. Indic. | <i>nous mangeons</i> , we eat |

* A great many verbs of this conjugation are derived from Latin verbs ending in *are*, as:—

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>aimer</i> from <i>amare</i> | <i>laver</i> from <i>lavare</i> |
| <i>dicter</i> " <i>dictare</i> | <i>porter</i> " <i>portare</i> |
| <i>espérer</i> " <i>sperare</i> | <i>révoquer</i> " <i>revocare</i> |

Some are formed from the Latin third conjugation, as:—

| |
|---------------------------------------|
| <i>affliger</i> from <i>affligere</i> |
| <i>céder</i> " <i>cedere</i> |
| <i>ériger</i> " <i>erigere</i> |

A few from the Latin second conjugation, as:—

| |
|---------------------------------------|
| <i>absorber</i> from <i>absorbere</i> |
| <i>exercer</i> " <i>exercere</i> |

And very few from the fourth conjugation, as:—

| |
|--------------------------------------|
| <i>tousser</i> from <i>tussire</i> . |
|--------------------------------------|

| | |
|----------------|--|
| Imperf. Indic. | <i>je mangeais</i> , I was eating <i>tu mangeais</i> , thou wast eating <i>il mangeait</i> , he was eating <i>ils mangeaient</i> , they were eating |
| Pret. Def. | <i>je mangeai</i> , I ate |
| Imperf. Subj. | <i>que je mangeasse</i> , etc., that I might eat. |

The other persons and tenses of similar verbs exactly follow the form given in § 116.

§ 118. The *c* also in those verbs which terminate in *cer* takes the cedilla (*ç*) before *a* and *o*, to preserve the soft sound of that letter, as :—

AVANCER, TO ADVANCE.

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Pres. Part. | <i>avançant</i> |
| Pres. Indic. | <i>nous avançons</i> , we advance |
| Imperf. Indic. | <i>j'avançais</i> , I advanced <i>tu avançais</i> , thou advancedst <i>il avançait</i> , he advanced <i>ils avançaient</i> , they advanced |
| Pret. Def. | <i>j'avançai</i> , I advanced |
| Imperat. | <i>avançons</i> , let us advance |
| Imperf. Subj. | <i>que j'avançasse</i> , that I might advance, etc. |

Without any other exception they follow the form given in § 116.

§ 119. Verbs in *eler* and *eter* double the consonants *l* and *t* before *e* mute, as :—

Appeler, to call ; *j'appelle*, I call ; *jeter*, to throw , *je jette*, I throw ; etc.

The following verbs are exceptions to the above rule, viz. : *acheter*, to buy ; *bourreler*, to torment ; *congeler*, to congeal ; *déceler*, to disclose ; *dégeler*, to thaw ; *geler*, to freeze ; *harceler*, to harass ; *peler*, to peel ; *colleter*, to collar ; *décolleter*, to bare one's neck and shoulders ; *étiqueter*, to label ; *trompeter*, to trumpet ; *coqueter*, to coquet. These take the grave accent (·) over the penultimate *e* in those instances where the verbs in *eler* and *eter* add the second consonant.

§ 120. The verbs in *er* which have *e* mute, or close {*é*) before their final syllable, change it into an open *e* (*e*) before a consonant followed by an *e* mute, as : *mener*, to lead ; *je mène*, I lead ; *répéter*, to repeat ; *je répète*, I repeat. Some in *gner* follow the same rule, as : *régner*, to reign ; *je règne*, I reign. Those which end in *éger*, do not take the grave accent.

§ 121. Those verbs which end in *éer*, retain the two *e*'s throughout their whole conjugation except before *a*, *i*, *o*, as: *créer*, to create; *je créai*, I created; *récréer*, to amuse; *recréer*, to recreate; *agrée*, to agree; *désagrée*, to disagree; *gréer*, to rig; *ragrée*, to refit; *procréer*, to beget; *suppléer*, to supply; which constitute all that are.

§ 122. The verbs which terminate in *yer* change the *y* into *i* before *e* mute, as: *employer*, to employ; *j'emploie*, I employ, etc. In the first and second persons plural of the imperfect indicative and present subjunctive the *y* is retained before the *i*, as: *nous employions*, we employ. Verbs terminating in *ier*, as: *prier*, to pray, take two *i*'s in the same persons of those tenses.

§ 123. PARADIGM OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION, IN *IR*.

FINIR, TO FINISH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Finir</i> , | to finish. | <i>Avoir fini</i> , | to have finished. |

| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | |
|---------------------|------------|------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Finissant</i> , | finishing. | <i>Ayant fini</i> , | having finished. |

PARTICIPLE PAST.—*Fini*, finished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

| PRESENT. | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Je finis</i> , | I finish. |
| <i>tu finis</i> , | thou finishest. |
| <i>il finit</i> , | he finishes. |
| <i>nous finissons</i> , | we finish. |
| <i>vous finissez</i> , | you finish. |
| <i>ils finissent</i> , | they finish. |

| PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| <i>J'ai</i> | I have |
| <i>tu as</i> | thou hast |
| <i>il a</i> | he has |
| <i>nous avons</i> | we have |
| <i>vous avez</i> | you have |
| <i>ils ont</i> | they have |

finished.

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Je finissais,</i> | I was |
| <i>tu finissais,</i> | thou wast |
| <i>il finissait,</i> | he was |
| <i>nous finissions,</i> | we were |
| <i>vous finissiez,</i> | you were |
| <i>ils finissaient,</i> | they were |

finishing.

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|------------|-----------|
| <i>J'avais</i> | I had | finished. |
| <i>tu avais</i> | thou hadst | |
| <i>il avait</i> | he had | |
| <i>nous avions</i> | we had | |
| <i>vous aviez</i> | you had | |
| <i>ils avaient</i> | they had | |

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Je finis,</i> | I finished. |
| <i>tu finis,</i> | thou finishedst |
| <i>il finit,</i> | he finished. |
| <i>nous finîmes,</i> | we finished. |
| <i>vous finîtes</i> | you finished. |
| <i>ils finirent,</i> | they finished. |

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

| | | |
|-------------------|------------|-----------|
| <i>J'eus</i> | I had | finished. |
| <i>tu eus</i> | thou hadst | |
| <i>il eut</i> | he had | |
| <i>nous eûmes</i> | we had | |
| <i>vous eûtes</i> | you had | |
| <i>ils eurent</i> | they had | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | |
|-----------------------|------------|
| <i>Je finirai,</i> | I shall |
| <i>tu finiras</i> | thou shalt |
| <i>il finira,</i> | he shall |
| <i>nous finirons,</i> | we shall |
| <i>vous finirez,</i> | you shall |
| <i>ils finiront,</i> | they shall |

finishing.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| <i>J'aurai</i> | I shall have | finished. |
| <i>tu auras</i> | thou shalt have | |
| <i>il aura,</i> | he shall have | |
| <i>nous aurons</i> | we shall have | |
| <i>vous aurez</i> | you shall have | |
| <i>ils auront</i> | they shall have | |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

| | |
|------------------------|---------------|
| <i>Je finirais,</i> | I should |
| <i>tu finirais,</i> | thou shouldst |
| <i>il finirait,</i> | he should |
| <i>nous finirions,</i> | we should |
| <i>vous finiriez,</i> | you should |
| <i>ils finiraient,</i> | they should |

finishing.

PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>J'aurais</i> | I should | have finished. |
| <i>tu aurais</i> | thou shouldst | |
| <i>il aurait</i> | he should | |
| <i>nous aurions</i> | we should | |
| <i>vous auriez</i> | you should | |
| <i>ils auraient</i> | they should | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Finis,</i> | Finish (thou). |
| <i>qu'il finisse,</i> | let him finish. |
| <i>finissons,</i> | let us finish. |
| <i>finissez,</i> | finish (you). |
| <i>qu'ils finissent,</i> | let them finish. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Que je finisse,
que tu finisses,
qu'il finisse,
que nous finissions,
que vous finissiez,
qu'ils finissent;*

(That I may
finish.)

PRÆTERITE.

*Que j'aie
que tu aies
qu'il ait
que nous ayons
que vous ayez
qu'ils aient*

(fini,
)

(That I may
have finished.)

IMPERFECT.

*Que je finisse,
que tu finisses,
qu'il finît,
que nous finissions,
que vous finissiez,
qu'ils finissent,*

(That I
might finish.)

PLUPERFECT.

*Que j'eusse
que tu eusses
qu'il eût
que nous eussions
que vous eussiez,
qu'ils eussent*

(fini,
)

(That I might
have finished.)

Conjugate the following in the same manner :—

| | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>accomplir,</i> | to accomplish | <i>embellir,</i> | to embellish |
| <i>adoucir,</i> | to soften | <i>fournir.</i> | to furnish |
| <i>affermir,</i> | to strengthen | <i>garnir,</i> | to garnish |
| <i>appauvrir,</i> | to impoverish | <i>hennir,</i> | to neigh |
| <i>asservir,</i> | to enslave | <i>munir,</i> | to provide |
| <i>assortir,</i> | to match | <i>nourrir,</i> | to feed |
| <i>avertir,</i> | to inform | <i>remplir,</i> | to fill |
| <i>bannir,</i> | to banish | <i>répartir,</i> | to distribute |
| <i>benir,</i> | to bless | <i>retentir,</i> | to resound |
| <i>chérir,</i> | to cherish | <i>ternir,</i> | to tarnish.* |

* Many of the verbs of this conjugation come from Saxon verbs ending in *tan* and *jan*, as :—

haïr from *hatian*
fournir „ *frumjan*, etc.

Several are derived from the Latin third conjugation, as :—

agir from *agere*
applaudir „ *applaudere*
concertir „ *concertare*.

A few come from the second Latin conjugation, as :—

abolir from *abolere*
accomplir „ *complere*.

And some end in Latin in *oscere*, as :—

nourcir from *nigrescere*.

§ 124. *Bénir*, to bless, has two past participles, viz., (1) *béni* (m.), *bénite* (f.), implying consecrated by religious rites, as: *du pain béni*, consecrated bread; *de l'eau bénite*, holy water; (2) *béni* (m.), *bénie* (f.), blessed; *un peuple béni de Dieu*, a nation blessed by God; *une famille bénie du ciel*, a family blessed of heaven.

In the verb *hàir*, to hate, the diæresis (·) is placed over the *i* excepting in the three persons singular of the present indicative *je hais*, etc., and the second person singular of the imperative mood, *hais*, hate thou. In the first and second persons plural of the preterite definite, which is very seldom used, and in the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive, we write *nous haïmes*, *vous haïtes*, *qu'il haït*.

Fleurir, to flourish, used figuratively, has in the part. pres. *florissant*, and in the imperf. indic. *florissait*, as: *l'empire des Romains florissait à cette époque*, the Roman empire was flourishing at that period.

§ 125. PARADIGM OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | PAST. |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Recevoir</i> , to receive. | <i>Avoir reçu</i> , to have received. |
| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. |
| <i>Recevant</i> , receiving. | <i>Ayant reçu</i> , having received. |
| PARTICIPLE PAST.— <i>Reçu</i> , received. | |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Simple Tenses. | | Compound Tenses. | |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
| <i>Je reçois</i> , | I receive. | <i>J'ai</i> | I have |
| <i>tu reçois</i> , | thou receivest. | <i>tu as</i> | thou hast |
| <i>il reçoit</i> , | he receives. | <i>il a</i> | he has |
| <i>nous recevons</i> , | we receive. | <i>nous avons</i> | we have |
| <i>vous recevez</i> , | you receive. | <i>vous avez</i> | you have |
| <i>ils reçoivent</i> , | they receive. | <i>ils ont</i> | they have |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------|--------------|
| <i>Je recevais,</i> | I was |) receiving. |
| <i>tu recevais.</i> | thou wast | |
| <i>il recevait,</i> | he was | |
| <i>nous recevions,</i> | we were | |
| <i>vous receviez,</i> | you were | |
| <i>ils recevaient</i> | they were |) |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|------------|-------------|
| <i>J'avais</i> |) reçu, | I had |) received. |
| <i>tu avais</i> | | thou hadst | |
| <i>il avait</i> | | he had | |
| <i>nous avions</i> | | we had | |
| <i>vous aviez</i> | | you had | |
| <i>ils avaient</i> |) | they had |) |

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

| | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>Je reçus,</i> | I received. |
| <i>tu reçus,</i> | thou receivedst. |
| <i>il reçut,</i> | he received. |
| <i>nous reçûmes,</i> | we received. |
| <i>vous reçûtes,</i> | you received. |
| <i>ils reçurent,</i> | they received. |

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

| | | | |
|-------------------|---------|------------|-------------|
| <i>J'eus</i> |) reçu, | I had |) received. |
| <i>tu eus</i> | | thou hadst | |
| <i>il eut</i> | | he had | |
| <i>nous eûmes</i> | | we had | |
| <i>vous eûtes</i> | | you had | |
| <i>ils eurent</i> |) | they had |) |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | | |
|------------------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Je recevrai,</i> | I shall |) receive. |
| <i>tu recevras,</i> | thou shalt | |
| <i>il recevra,</i> | he shall | |
| <i>nous recevrons,</i> | we shall | |
| <i>vous recevrez,</i> | you shall | |
| <i>ils recevront,</i> | they shall |) |

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|------------|------------------|
| <i>J'aurai</i> |) reçu, | I shall |) have received. |
| <i>tu auras</i> | | thou shalt | |
| <i>il aura</i> | | he shall | |
| <i>nous aurons</i> | | we shall | |
| <i>vous aurez</i> | | you shall | |
| <i>ils auront</i> |) | they shall |) |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------|
| <i>Je recevrais,</i> | I should |) receive. |
| <i>tu recevrais,</i> | thou shouldst | |
| <i>il recevrait,</i> | he should | |
| <i>nous recevriions,</i> | we should | |
| <i>vous recevriez,</i> | you should | |
| <i>ils recevraient,</i> | they should |) |

PAST.

| | | | |
|---------------------|---------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>J'aurais</i> |) reçu, | I should |) have received. |
| <i>tu aurais</i> | | thou shouldst | |
| <i>il aurait</i> | | he should | |
| <i>nous aurions</i> | | we should | |
| <i>vous auriez</i> | | you should | |
| <i>ils auraient</i> |) | they should |) |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Reçois,</i> | Receive (thou). |
| <i>qu'il reçoive,</i> | let him receive. |
| <i>recevons,</i> | let us receive. |
| <i>recevez,</i> | receive (you). |
| <i>qu'ils reçoivent,</i> | let them receive. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PRÆTERITE. | |
|--|--------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| Que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive, que nous recevions, que vous receviez, qu'ils reçoivent | That I may receive. | Que j'aie que tu aies qu'il ait que nous ayons que vous ayez qu'ils aient | That I may have received. |
| IMPERFECT. | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| Que je reçusse, que tu reçusses, qu'il reçût, que nous reçussions, que vous reçussiez, qu'ils reçussent | That I might receive. | Que j'eusse que tu eusses qu'il eût que nous eussions que vous eussiez qu'ils eussent | That I might have received. |

Conjugate the following verbs like *recevoir* :—

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>apercevoir</i> , to perceive | <i>percevoir</i> , to collect |
| <i>concevoir</i> , to conceive | <i>redevoir</i> , to owe still. |
| <i>devoir</i> , to owe | |

Only verbs terminating in *voir* are conjugated according to this form.

The verbs *devoir* and *redevoir* take the circumflex accent over the masculine singular of their participles, as: *dû*, *redû*; but they make *due*, *dues*, and *redue*, *redues*, without the circumflex, in the feminine singular and plural, and *dus*, *redus* in the masculine plural. *Devoir* is also used to form the idiomatic tenses of any verb, as: *je dois parler*, I am to speak; *je devais parler*, I was to speak; *je devrais parler*, I ought or should speak; *j'aurais dû parler*, I ought or should have spoken, etc.*

Verbs ending in *oir* are irregular, as *mouvoir*, to move; *pourvoir*, to provide; *savoir*, to know, etc. (See §§ 163-170, and §§ 205-213).

§ 126. PARADIGM OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN RE.

VENDRE, TO SELL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|--|------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <i>Vendre</i> , to sell. | <i>Avoir vendu</i> , to have sold. | | |
| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | |
| <i>Vendant</i> , selling. | <i>Ayant vendu</i> , having sold. | | |
| PARTICIPLE PAST.— <i>Vendu</i> , sold. | | | |

* *Recevoir* is derived from the Latin *recipere*; *devoir*, from *debere*; *percevoir*, from *percipere*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Simple Tenses.</i> | | <i>Compound Tenses.</i> | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
| <i>Je vends,</i> | I sell. | <i>J'ai</i> | I have |
| <i>tu vends,</i> | thou sellest. | <i>tu as</i> | thou hast |
| <i>il vend,</i> | he sells. | <i>il a</i> | he has |
| <i>nous vendons,</i> | we sell. | <i>nous avons</i> | we have |
| <i>vous vendez,</i> | you sell. | <i>vous avez</i> | you have |
| <i>ils vendent,</i> | they sell. | <i>ils ont</i> | they have |
| IMPERFECT. | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>Je vendais,</i> | I was selling. | <i>J'avais</i> | I had |
| <i>tu vendais,</i> | thou wast selling. | <i>tu avais</i> | thou hadst |
| <i>il vendait,</i> | he was selling. | <i>il avait</i> | he had |
| <i>nous vendions,</i> | we were selling. | <i>nous avions</i> | we had |
| <i>vous vendiez,</i> | you were selling. | <i>vous aviez</i> | you had |
| <i>ils vendaient,</i> | they were selling. | <i>ils avaient</i> | they had |
| PRETERITE DEFINITE. | | PRETERITE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je vendis,</i> | I sold. | <i>J'eus</i> | I had |
| <i>tu vendis,</i> | thou soldest. | <i>tu eus</i> | thou hadst |
| <i>il vendit,</i> | he sold. | <i>il eut</i> | he had |
| <i>nous vendîmes,</i> | we sold. | <i>nous eûmes</i> | we had |
| <i>vous vendîtes,</i> | you sold. | <i>vous eûtes</i> | you had |
| <i>ils vendirent,</i> | they sold. | <i>ils eurent</i> | they had |
| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | | FUTURE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je vendrai,</i> | I shall | <i>J'aurai</i> | I shall |
| <i>tu vendras,</i> | thou shalt | <i>tu auras</i> | thou shalt |
| <i>il vendra,</i> | he shall | <i>il aura</i> | he shall |
| <i>nous vendrons,</i> | we shall | <i>nous aurons</i> | we shall |
| <i>vous vendrez,</i> | you shall | <i>vous aurez</i> | you shall |
| <i>ils vendront,</i> | they shall | <i>ils auront</i> | they shall |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|------------------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>Je vendrais,</i> | I should | <i>J'aurais</i> | I should |
| <i>tu vendrais,</i> | thou shouldst | <i>tu aurais</i> | thou shouldst |
| <i>il vendrait,</i> | he should | <i>il aurait</i> | he should |
| <i>nous vendrions,</i> | we should | <i>nous aurions</i> | we should |
| <i>vous vendriez,</i> | you should | <i>vous auriez</i> | you should |
| <i>ils vendraient,</i> | they should | <i>ils auraient</i> | they should |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>Vends,</i> | sell (thou). |
| <i>qu'il vende,</i> | let him sell. |
| <i>vendons,</i> | let us sell. |
| <i>vendez,</i> | sell (ye). |
| <i>qu'ils vendent,</i> | let them sell. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je vende,
que tu vendes,
qu'il vende,
que nous vendions,
que vous vendiez,
qu'ils vendent,

{
 That I
 may sell.

PRETERITE.

Que j'aie
que tu aies
qu'il ait
que nous ayons
que vous ayez
qu'ils aient

{
 vendu,

{
 That I may
 have sold.

IMPERFECT.

Que je vendisse,
que tu vendisses,
qu'il vendît,
que nous vendissions,
que vous vendissiez,
qu'ils vendissent,

{
 That I
 might sell.

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse
que tu eusses
qu'il eût
que nous eussions
que vous eussiez
qu'ils eussent

{
 vendû,

{
 That I might
 have sold.

Conjugate according to this form:—

| | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|
| <i>attendre,</i> | to expect | <i>pendre,</i> | to hang |
| <i>confondre,</i> | to confound | <i>perdre,</i> | to lose |
| <i>correspondre,</i> | to correspond | <i>pondre,</i> | to lay eggs |
| <i>descendre,</i> | to descend | <i>prétendre,</i> | to pretend |
| <i>défendre,</i> | to defend | <i>répandre.</i> | to spill |
| <i>entendre,</i> | to hear | <i>répondre,</i> | to answer |
| <i>fondre,</i> | to melt | <i>suspendre,</i> | to suspend |
| <i>fenêdre,</i> | to split | <i>tordre,</i> | to twist |
| <i>mordre,</i> | to bite | <i>tondre,</i> | to shear.* |

* Several verbs of this conjugation are formed from Latin verbs, in *êre*, as: *mordre*, from *mordêre*; *répondre*, from *respondêre*; *tordre*, from *tondêre*, etc. Some come from the Latin third conjugation, as: *vendre*, from *vendêre*.

§ 127. PARADIGM FOR CONJUGATING A VERB USED
NEGATIVELY.

NE PAS PARLER, NOT TO SPEAK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | PAST. |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>Ne pas parler</i> , not to speak. | <i>N'avoir pas parlé</i> , not to have spoken. |
| PARTICIPLE PRESENT. | COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT. |
| <i>Ne parlant pas</i> , not speaking. | <i>N'ayant pas parlé</i> , not having spoken. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Simple Tenses. | | Compound Tenses. | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
| <i>Je ne parle</i> | pas, I do not speak. | <i>Je n'ai</i> | pas parlé, I have not spoken. |
| <i>tu ne parles</i> | | <i>tu n'as</i> | |
| <i>il ne parle</i> | | <i>il n'a</i> | |
| <i>nous ne parlons</i> | | <i>nous n'avons</i> | |
| <i>vous ne parlez</i> | | <i>vous n'avez</i> | |
| <i>ils ne parlent</i> | | <i>ils n'ont</i> | |
| IMPERFECT. | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>Je ne parlais</i> | pas, I was not speaking. | <i>Je n'avais</i> | pas parlé, I had not spoken. |
| <i>tu ne parlais</i> | | <i>tu n'avais</i> | |
| <i>il ne parlait</i> | | <i>il n'avait</i> | |
| <i>nous ne parlions</i> | | <i>nous n'avions</i> | |
| <i>vous ne parliez</i> | | <i>vous n'aviez</i> | |
| <i>ils ne parlaient</i> | | <i>ils n'avaient</i> | |
| PRETERITE DEFINITE. | | PRETERITE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je ne parlai</i> | pas, I did not speak. | <i>Je n'eus</i> | pas parlé, I had not spoken. |
| <i>tu ne parlais</i> | | <i>tu n'eus</i> | |
| <i>il ne parla</i> | | <i>il n'eut</i> | |
| <i>nous ne parlâmes</i> | | <i>nous n'eûmes</i> | |
| <i>vous ne parlâtes</i> | | <i>vous n'eûtes</i> | |
| <i>ils ne parlèrent</i> | | <i>ils n'eurent</i> | |
| FUTUR ABSOLUTE. | | FUTURE ANTERIOR. | |
| <i>Je ne parlerai</i> | pas, I shall not speak. | <i>Je n'aurai</i> | pas parlé, I shall not have spoken. |
| <i>tu ne parleras</i> | | <i>tu n'auras</i> | |
| <i>il ne parlera</i> | | <i>il n'aura</i> | |
| <i>nous ne parlerons</i> | | <i>nous n'aurons</i> | |
| <i>vous ne parlerez</i> | | <i>vous n'aurez</i> | |
| <i>ils ne parleront</i> | | <i>ils n'auront</i> | |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | | | | PAST |
|---------------------------|--------|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|--------------|
| <i>Je ne parlerais</i> |] pas, | [I should not speak. | | <i>Je n'aurais</i> |] pas parlé, |
| <i>tu ne parlerais</i> | | | | <i>tu n'aurais</i> | |
| <i>il ne parlerait</i> | | | | <i>il n'aurait</i> | |
| <i>nous ne parlerions</i> | | | | <i>nous n'aurions</i> | |
| <i>vous ne parleriez</i> | | | | <i>vous n'auriez</i> | |
| <i>ils ne parleraient</i> | | | | <i>ils n'auraient</i> | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Ne parle pas,</i> | do not speak. | <i>ne parlons pas,</i> | let us not speak. |
| <i>Qu'il ne parle pas,</i> | let him not speak. | <i>ne parlez pas,</i> | do not you speak. |
| | | <i>qu'ils ne parlent pas,</i> | let them not speak. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | | | | PRETERITE. | |
|--------------------------------|--------|---------------------------|--|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Que je ne parle</i> |] pas, | [That I may not speak. | | <i>Que je n'aie</i> |] pas parlé, | That I may not have spoken. |
| <i>que tu ne parles</i> | | | | <i>que tu n'aies</i> | | |
| <i>qu'il ne parle</i> | | | | <i>qu'il n'ait</i> | | |
| <i>que nous ne parlions</i> | | | | <i>que nous n'ayons</i> | | |
| <i>que vous ne parliez</i> | | | | <i>que vous n'ayez</i> | | |
| <i>qu'ils ne parlent</i> | | | | <i>qu'ils n'aient</i> | | |
| IMPERFECT. | | | | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>Que je ne parlasse</i> |] pas, | [That I might not speak. | | <i>Que je n'eusse</i> |] pas parlé, | That I might not have spoken. |
| <i>que tu ne parlasses</i> | | | | <i>que tu n'eusses</i> | | |
| <i>qu'il ne parlât</i> | | | | <i>qu'il n'eût</i> | | |
| <i>que nous ne parlussions</i> | | | | <i>que nous n'eussions</i> | | |
| <i>que vous ne parlassiez</i> | | | | <i>que vous n'eussiez</i> | | |
| <i>qu'ils ne parlassent</i> | | | | <i>qu'ils n'eussent</i> | | |

A negative in French is usually expressed by placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas*, not, or *point*, not at all, after it. In compound tenses *pas* is placed between the auxiliary and the past participle. With the infinitive present *pas* or *point* generally precede.

Observe: There are also other negations in French, as: *ne . . . plus*, no more, no longer; *ne . . . jamais*, never; *ne . . . rien*, nothing; *ne . . . guère*, scarcely ever, but little; *ne . . . personne*, nobody; *ne . . . nul, nē . . . aucun*, no, not any; *ne . . . nullement, ne . . . aucunement* not at all, by no means; *ne . . . nulle part*, nowhere; *ne . . . ni*, neither, nor; *ne . . . que*, only. In all these negations *ne* precedes the verb; this is also the case with the negation *ne . . . pas un*, not one. In compound tenses *personne, nul, aucun*, and *nulle part*, come after the past participle, unless they begin the sentence; *que* in *ne . . . que* always comes after the past participle.

§ 128. PARADIGM FOR CONJUGATING A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| <i>Donné-je ?</i> | Do I |
| <i>donnes-tu ?</i> | dost thou |
| <i>donne-t-il ?</i> | does he |
| <i>donnons-nous ?</i> | do we |
| <i>donnez-vous ?</i> | do you |
| <i>donnent-ils ?</i> | do they |

} give ?

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

| | |
|-------------------|-----------|
| <i>Ai-je</i> | Have I |
| <i>as-tu</i> | hast thou |
| <i>a-t-il</i> | has he |
| <i>avons-nous</i> | have we |
| <i>avez-vous</i> | have you |
| <i>ont-ils</i> | have they |

} donné,

} given ?

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Donnais-je ?</i> | Was I |
| <i>donnais-tu ?</i> | wast thou |
| <i>donnait-il ?</i> | was he |
| <i>donnions-nous ?</i> | were we |
| <i>donniez-vous ?</i> | were you |
| <i>donnaient-ils ?</i> | were they |

} giving ?

PLUPERFECT.

| | |
|--------------------|------------|
| <i>Avais-je</i> | Had I |
| <i>avais-tu</i> | hadst thou |
| <i>avait-il</i> | had he |
| <i>avions-nous</i> | had we |
| <i>aviez-vous</i> | had you |
| <i>avaient-ils</i> | had they |

} donné,

} given ?

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Donnai-je ?</i> | Did I give ? |
| <i>donnas-tu ?</i> | didst thou give ? |
| <i>donna-t-il ?</i> | did he give ? |
| <i>donnâmes-nous ?</i> | did we give ? |
| <i>donnâtes-vous ?</i> | did you give ? |
| <i>donnèrent-ils ?</i> | did they give ? |

The *Preterite anterior* is generally not used interrogatively.

| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | | FUTURE ANTERIOR. | |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|
| <i>Donnerai-je ?</i> | Shall I | <i>Aurai-je</i> | Shall I |
| <i>donneras-tu ?</i> | shalt thou | <i>auras-tu</i> | shalt thou |
| <i>donnera-t-il ?</i> | shall he | <i>aura-t-il</i> | shall he |
| <i>donnerons-nous ?</i> | shall we | <i>aurons-nous</i> | shall we |
| <i>donnerez-vous ?</i> | shall you | <i> aurez-vous</i> | shall you |
| <i>donneront-ils ?</i> | shall they | <i>auront-ils</i> | shall they |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>Donnerais-je ?</i> | Should I | <i>Aurais-je</i> | Should I |
| <i>donnerais-tu ?</i> | shouldst thou | <i>aurais-tu</i> | shouldst thou |
| <i>donnerait-il ?</i> | should he | <i>aurait-il</i> | should he |
| <i>donnerions-nous ?</i> | should we | <i>aurions-nous</i> | should we |
| <i>donneriez-vous ?</i> | should you | <i>auriez-vous</i> | should you |
| <i>donneraient-ils ?</i> | should they | <i>auraient-ils</i> | should they |

§ 129. There are two ways of conjugating a verb interrogatively. The first and most usual way is by beginning a sentence with *est-ce que*, which means literally, is it that, as: *Est-ce que vous aimez le roi ?* Do you like the king? This mode of interrogating is generally used with verbs that have but one syllable in the first person singular of the present indicative; therefore, instead of *vends-je ? pars-je ?* we prefer saying, *est-ce que je vends ? est-ce que je pars ?* Custom, however, allows to say *ai-je ? dis-je ? dois-je ? fais-je ? puis-je ? suis-je ? vais-je ? vois-je ?* etc.

§ 130. The other way is to place the subject after the verb in a simple tense; and after the auxiliary verb in a compound one, connecting always the subject and verb with a hyphen, as: *Jouez-vous ?* Do you play? *Avez-vous joué ?* Have you played?

§ 131. If the subject of the verb is a noun, that noun comes first, and one of the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, is placed after the verb and joined to it by a hyphen, as: *Le maître punit-il ?* Does the master punish? But we might

also say, *Est-ce que le maître punit ?* in which case the pronoun is not repeated.

§ 132. When the first person singular of a verb ends with an *e* mute, an acute accent is placed over the *e*, as: *parlé-je ?* do I speak ?

§ 133. If the third person singular ends in a vowel, we place between the verb and the pronoun *il*, *elle*, a *t* (called the *t* euphonic) followed by a hyphen, as: *Chante-t-elle ?* does she sing ?

§ 134. PARADIGM FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

PERDRE, TO LOSE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Simple Tenses. | | Compound Tenses. | |
|--|-----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| PRESENT. | | PRÉTERITE INDEFINITE. | |
| <i>Est-ce que je ne perds</i> (for <i>ne perds-je</i>) | pas ? Do I not lose ? | <i>N'ai-je</i> | pas perdu ? Have I not lost ? |
| <i>ne perds-tu</i> | | <i>n'as-tu</i> | |
| <i>ne perd-il</i> | | <i>n'a-t-il</i> | |
| <i>ne perdons-nous</i> | | <i>n'avons-nous</i> | |
| <i>ne perdez-vous</i> | | <i>n'avez-vous</i> | |
| <i>ne perdent ils</i> | | <i>n'ont-ils</i> | |
| IMPERFECT. | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>Ne perdais-je</i> | pas ? Was I not losing ? | <i>N'avais-je</i> | pas perdu ? Had I not lost ? |
| <i>ne perdais-tu</i> | | <i>n'avais-tu</i> | |
| <i>ne perdait-il</i> | | <i>n'avait-il</i> | |
| <i>ne perdions-nous</i> | | <i>n'avions-nous</i> | |
| <i>ne perdiez-vous</i> | | <i>n'aviez-vous</i> | |
| <i>ne perdaient-ils</i> | | <i>n'avaient-ils</i> | |
| PRÉTERITE DÉFINITE. | | PRÉTERITE ANTERIEUR. | |
| <i>Ne perdis-je</i> | pas ? Did I not lose ? | <i>N'eus-je</i> | pas perdu ? Had I not lost ? |
| <i>ne perdis-tu</i> | | <i>n'eus-tu</i> | |
| <i>ne perdit-il</i> | | <i>n'eut-il</i> | |
| <i>ne perdissons-nous</i> | | <i>n'eûmes-nous</i> | |
| <i>ne perdiez-vous</i> | | <i>n'eûtes-vous</i> | |
| <i>ne perdirent-ils</i> | | <i>n'eurent-ils</i> | |

| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | | | FUTURE ANTERIOR. | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Ne perdrai-je</i> | } <i>pas ?</i> | } Shall I not lose ? | <i>N'aurai-je</i> | } <i>pas ?</i> | } Shall I not have lost ? |
| <i>ne perdras-tu</i> | | | <i>n'auras-tu</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdra-t-il</i> | | | <i>n'aura-t-il</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdrons-nous</i> | | | <i>n'aurons-nous</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdrez-vous</i> | | | <i>n'aurez-vous</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdront-ils</i> | | | <i>n'auront-ils</i> | | |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | | PAST. | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Ne perdrais-je</i> | } <i>pas ?</i> | } Should I not lose ? | <i>N'aurais-je</i> | } <i>pas ?</i> | } Should I not have lost ? |
| <i>ne perdrais-tu</i> | | | <i>n'aurais-tu</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdrait-il</i> | | | <i>n'aurait-il</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdriions-nous</i> | | | <i>n'aurions-nous</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdriez-vous</i> | | | <i>n'auriez-vous</i> | | |
| <i>ne perdraient-ils</i> | | | <i>n'auraient-ils</i> | | |

To conjugate a verb interrogatively and negatively, *ne* is placed before the verb and *pas* after it. In compound tenses *ne* is placed before the auxiliary and *pas* after it.

(For a TABLE of the TERMINATION of FRENCH VERBS, see APPENDIX.)

NEUTER VERBS.

§ 135. Neuter verbs, of which there are about six hundred in the French language, cannot govern a substantive except with the help of a preposition. Their compound tenses are generally formed with *avoir*; the following eighteen are always conjugated with *être*:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>aller</i> , to go | <i>provenir</i> , to arise from |
| <i>arriver</i> , to arrive | <i>redvenir</i> , to become again, to grow again |
| <i>décéder</i> , to die | <i>résulter</i> , to result |
| <i>devenir</i> , to become | <i>retomber</i> , to fall again |
| <i>disconvenir</i> , to disown, to differ | <i>revenir</i> , to come back |
| <i>éclore</i> , to blow, to be hatched | <i>survenir</i> , to come or arrive unexpectedly |
| <i>intervenir</i> , to intervene | <i>tomber</i> , to fall |
| <i>mourir</i> , to die | <i>venir</i> , to come. |
| <i>naitre</i> , to be born | |
| <i>parvenir</i> , to attain | |

§ 136. The *thirty-four* following verbs are conjugated with *avoir* if we want to express the action of the verb; but with *être* if we wish to express the situation of the subject:—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <i>aborder</i> , to land | <i>entrer</i> , to come in |
| <i>accourir</i> , to run to | <i>expirer</i> , to expire |
| <i>apparaître</i> , to appear | <i>grandir</i> , to grow tall |
| <i>accroître</i> , to increase | <i>monter</i> , to come up |
| <i>cesser</i> , to cease | <i>partir</i> , to set off |
| <i>changer</i> , to change | <i>passer</i> , to pass or pass away |
| <i>croître</i> , to grow | <i>périr</i> , to perish |
| <i>décroître</i> , to decrease | <i>rajeunir</i> , to grow younger |
| <i>décamper</i> , to decamp | <i>redescendre</i> , to come down again |
| <i>déchoir</i> , to decay | <i>remonter</i> , to come up again |
| <i>dégénérer</i> , to degenerate | <i>rentrer</i> , to come in again |
| <i>descendre</i> , to come down | <i>repartir</i> , to set off again |
| <i>disparaître</i> , to disappear | <i>ressortir</i> , to go out again |
| <i>échoir</i> , to become due | <i>rester</i> , to stay, to remain |
| <i>échouer</i> , to run aground | <i>sortir</i> , to go out |
| <i>embellir</i> , to embellish | <i>trépasser</i> , to die |
| <i>empirer</i> , to grow worse | <i>vieillir</i> , to grow old. |

Observe : Many verbs are neuter in French and active in English, as: *obéir*, to obey, etc., *plaire*, to please. Others are active in French and neuter in English, as: *regarder*, to look; *chercher* to seek. Several verbs which are neuter in English are pronominal in French, as: *se promener*, to walk; *se repentir*, to repent, etc. *Obéir* can become passive, as: *le père est obéi*, the father is obeyed.

PASSIVE VERBS.

§ 137. These verbs are formed by joining the verb *être* to the past participle of an active verb, which participle must agree with the subject in gender and number.

PARADIGM FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

ÊTRE LOUÉ, TO BE PRAISED.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Être loué, to be praised.

PAST.

Avoir été loué, to have been praised.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Étant loué, being praised.

COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant été loué, having been praised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Je suis</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu es</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle est</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous sommes</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous êtes</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles sont</i> | { louées, f. |

I am
praised.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>J'ai été</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu as été</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle a été</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous avons été</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous avez été</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles ont été</i> | { louées, f. |

I have
been praised.

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>J'étais</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu étais</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle était</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous étions</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous étiez</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles étaient</i> | { louées, f. |

I was
praised.

PLUPERFECT.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>J'avais été</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu avais été</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle avait été</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous avions été</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous aviez été [été]</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles avaient</i> | { louées, f. |

I had
been praised.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Je fus</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu fus</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle fut</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous fûmes</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous fûtes</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles furent</i> | { louées, f. |

I was
praised.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>J'eus été</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu eus été</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle eut été</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous eûmes été</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous eûtes été [été]</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles eurent</i> | { louées, f. |

I had
been praised.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Je serai</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu seras</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle sera</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous serons</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous serez</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles seront</i> | { louées, f. |

I shall be
praised.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>J'aurai été</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu auras été</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle aura été</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous aurons été</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous aurez été [été]</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles auront</i> | { louées, f. |

I shall have
been praised.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Je serais</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu serais</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle serait</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous serions</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous seriez</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles seraient</i> | { louées, f. |

I should
be praised.

PAST.

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>J'aurais été</i> | { loué, m. |
| <i>tu aurais été</i> | { or |
| <i>il or elle aurait été</i> | { louée, f. |
| <i>nous aurions été</i> | { loués, m. |
| <i>vous auriez été [été]</i> | { or |
| <i>ils or elles auraient</i> | { louées, f. |

I should have
been praised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sois</i> | { | <i>loué, m.</i> | Be thou praised. |
| | | or | |
| <i>qu'il or qu'elle soit</i> | { | <i>louée, f.</i> | |
| <i>soyons</i> | { | <i>loués, m.</i> | |
| <i>soyez</i> | { | <i>louées, f.</i> | |
| <i>qu'ils or qu'elles soient</i> | { | | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | | PRETERITE. | | |
|------------------------------|---|-------------------|------------------------------|---|-------------------|
| <i>Que je sois</i> | { | <i>loué, m.</i> | <i>Que j'aie été</i> | { | <i>loué, m.</i> |
| <i>que tu sois</i> | | | <i>que tu aies été</i> | { | <i>été</i> |
| <i>qu'il or qu'elle soit</i> | { | <i>louée, f.</i> | <i>qu'il or qu'elle ait</i> | { | <i>louée, f.</i> |
| <i>que nous soyons</i> | { | <i>loués, m.</i> | <i>que nous ayons été</i> | { | <i>loués, m.</i> |
| <i>que vous soyez</i> | | | <i>que vous ayez été</i> | { | <i>loués, m.</i> |
| <i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i> | { | <i>louées, f.</i> | <i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i> | { | <i>louées, f.</i> |
| <i>soient</i> | | | <i>aient été</i> | | |
| | | | | | |
| IMPERFECT. | | | PLUPERFECT. | | |
| <i>Que je fusse</i> | { | <i>loué, m.</i> | <i>Que j'eusse été</i> | { | <i>loué, m.</i> |
| <i>que tu fusses</i> | | | <i>que tu eusses été</i> | { | <i>été</i> |
| <i>qu'il or qu'elle fût</i> | { | <i>louée, f.</i> | <i>qu'il or qu'elle eût</i> | { | <i>louée, f.</i> |
| <i>que nous fussions</i> | { | <i>loués, m.</i> | <i>que nous eussions été</i> | { | <i>loués, m.</i> |
| <i>que vous fussiez</i> | | | <i>que vous eussiez été</i> | | |
| <i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i> | { | <i>louées, f.</i> | <i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i> | { | <i>louées, f.</i> |
| <i>fussent</i> | | | <i>eussent été</i> | | |

PRONOMINAL VERBS.

§ 138. These Verbs have no conjugation peculiar to themselves; they follow the one to which they belong according to the termination of their infinitive. In the compound tenses they take *être*, to be, when in English they require *have*.

PARADIGM OF THE CONJUGATION OF A PRONOMINAL VERB.

SE PROMENER, TO WALK. (See § 120.)

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|---------------------|----------|---------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Se promener,</i> | to walk. | <i>S'être promené, m.</i> | { to have |
| | | or <i>promené, f.</i> | { walked. |

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Se promenant, walking

COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|----------------------------|----------|
| { | <i>S'étant promené, m.</i> | } having |
| | or <i>promenée, f.</i> | |

PARTICIPLE PAST, *promené, ée*, walked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je me promène,
tu te promènes,
il se promène,
nous nous promenons,
vous vous promenez,
ils se promènent,

I walk.

| | | | |
|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| { | <i>Je me suis</i> | } <i>promené, ée,</i> | I have walked. |
| | <i>tu t'es</i> | | |
| { | <i>il, elle s'est</i> | } <i>promenés,</i> | ées, |
| | <i>nous nous sommes</i> | | |
| { | <i>vous vous êtes</i> | } | |
| | <i>ils, elles se sont</i> | | |

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Je me promenais,
tu te promenais,
il se promenait,
nous nous promenions,
vous vous promeniez,
ils se promenaient

I was walking.

| | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| { | <i>Je m'étais</i> | } <i>promené, ée,</i> | I had walked. |
| | <i>tu t'étais</i> | | |
| { | <i>il, elle s'était</i> | } <i>promenés,</i> | ées, |
| | <i>nous nous étions</i> | | |
| { | <i>vous vous étiez</i> | } | |
| | <i>ils, elles s'étaient</i> | | |

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je me promenai
tu te promenâtes,
il se promena,
nous nous promenâmes
vous vous promenâtes,
ils se promenèrent,

I did walk.

| | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| { | <i>Je me fus</i> | } <i>promené, ée,</i> | I had walked. |
| | <i>tu te fus</i> | | |
| { | <i>il, elle se fut</i> | } <i>promenés,</i> | ées, |
| | <i>nous nous fûmes</i> | | |
| { | <i>vous vous fûtes</i> | } | |
| | <i>ils, elles se furent</i> | | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je me promènerai
tu te promèneras
il se promènera
nous nous promènerons,
vous vous promènerez,
ils se promèneront,

I shall walk.

| | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| { | <i>Je me serai</i> | } <i>promené,</i> | I shall have walked. |
| | <i>tu te seras</i> | | |
| { | <i>il, elle se sera</i> | } <i>promenés,</i> | ées, |
| | <i>nous nous serons</i> | | |
| { | <i>vous vous serez</i> | } | |
| | <i>ils, elles se seront</i> | | |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|--|---------------------------|---|---|
| <i>Je me promènerais,</i> <i>tu te promènerais,</i> <i>il se promènerait,</i> <i>nous nous promènerions,</i> <i>vous vous promèneriez</i> <i>ils se promèneraient</i> | <div>I should walk.</div> | <i>Je me serais</i> <i>tu te serais</i> <i>il, elle se serait</i> <i>nous nous serions</i> <i>vous vous seriez</i> <i>ils, elles se seraient</i> | <div> <div> <i>promené,</i> <i>ée,</i> </div> <div> <i>promenés,</i> <i>ées,</i> </div> </div> <div>I should have walked.</div> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Promène toi,</i> <i>qu'il se promène,</i> <i>promenons-nous,</i> <i>promenez-vous,</i> <i>qu'ils se promènent,</i> | <i>Walk (thou).</i> <i>let him walk.</i> <i>let us walk.</i> <i>walk (you).</i> <i>let them walk.</i> |
|---|---|

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT. | | | PRETERITE. | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| <i>Que je me promène,</i> <i>que tu te promènes</i> <i>qu'il se promène,</i> <i>que nous nous promenions,</i> <i>que vous vous promeniez,</i> <i>qu'ils se promènent,</i> | <i>That I may</i> <i>walk.</i> | <i>Que je me sois</i> <i>que tu te sois</i> <i>qu'il, qu'elle se soit</i> <i>que nous nous soyons</i> <i>que vous vous soyez</i> <i>qu'ils, qu'elles se soient</i> | <i>pro-</i> <i>mené,</i> <i>ée,</i> <i>pro-</i> <i>menés,</i> <i>ées,</i> | <i>That I may</i> <i>have walked.</i> |
| IMPERFECT. | | | PLUPERFECT. | |
| <i>Que je me promenasse,</i> <i>que tu te promenasses</i> <i>qu'il se promenât</i> <i>que nous nous promenassions,</i> <i>que vous vous promenassiez,</i> <i>qu'ils se promenassent</i> | <i>That I</i> <i>might walk.</i> | <i>Que je me fusse</i> <i>que tu te fusses</i> <i>qu'il, qu'elle se fût</i> <i>que nous nous fussions</i> <i>que vous vous fussiez</i> <i>qu'ils, qu'elles se fussent</i> | <i>pro-</i> <i>mené,</i> <i>ée,</i> <i>pro-</i> <i>menés,</i> <i>ées,</i> | <i>That I might</i> <i>have walked.</i> |

The following verbs are conjugated in the same manner :—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>s'accorder</i> , to agree | <i>s'emporter</i> , to be enraged, to carry away |
| <i>s'adresser</i> , to apply to | <i>s'envoler</i> , to fly away |
| <i>s'apercevoir</i> , to perceive | <i>s'étonner</i> , to wonder |
| <i>s'arrêter</i> , to stop | <i>se fâcher</i> , to be angry |
| <i>s'avancer</i> , to advance | <i>se hâter</i> , to hasten |
| <i>se baigner</i> , to bathe | <i>se lever</i> , to rise |
| <i>se baisser</i> , to stoop | <i>se nourrir</i> , to feed oneself |
| <i>se dépêcher</i> , to hasten | <i>se rajeunir</i> , to make oneself younger |
| <i>se déterminer</i> , to resolve upon | <i>se rendre</i> , to repair, to go. |

139. The pronominal or reflective verbs are divided into four classes:—

1st. Those verbs which exist but as reflective, as:—

se repentir, to repent.

2nd. Those verbs which are transitive as well as reflective, as:—

blessar, to wound

se blessar, to wound oneself.

3rd. Those verbs which are intransitive as well as reflective, as:—

Nuire à quelqu'un, to do harm to somebody

se nuire, to do oneself harm.

4th. The reflective verbs with two objects, of which the direct is always a noun, and the indirect the reflective pronoun, as:—

Cette jeune fille se fait une robe,

This young girl makes herself a dress.

This latter kind is always transitive.

§ 140. To conjugate a reflective verb negatively, we place *ne* between the two pronouns, and *pas* after the verb, as:—

PRESENT.

Je ne me promène
tu ne te promènes
il ne se promène
nous ne nous promenons
vous ne vous promenez
ils ne se promènent

} I do not
 walk.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je ne me suis
tu ne t'es
il, elle ne s'est
nous ne nous sommes
vous ne vous êtes
ils, elles ne se sont

} *pas*
promené, ée,
pas
promenés,
ées,

} I have not
 walked.

§ 141. The imperative of a pronominal verb used negatively is thus conjugated:—

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>Né te promène</i> |) | <i>pas,</i> | Do not walk. |
| <i>qu'il ne se promène</i> | | | let him not walk. |
| <i>ne nous promenons</i> | | | let us not walk. |
| <i>ne vous promenez</i> | | | walk ye not. |
| <i>qu'ils ne se promènent</i> |) | | let them not walk. |

§ 142. Interrogatively a pronominal verb is conjugated thus:—

| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
|------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Me promène-je ?</i> | Do I walk ? | <i>Me suis-je</i> | Have I walked ? |
| <i>te promènes-tu ?</i> | | <i>t'es-tu</i> | |
| <i>se promène-t-il ?</i> | | <i>s'est-il, elle</i> | |
| <i>nous promenons-nous ?</i> | | <i>nous sommes-nous</i> | |
| <i>vous promenez-vous ?</i> | | <i>vous êtes-vous</i> | |
| <i>se promènent-ils ?</i> | | <i>se sont-ils, elles</i> | |

§ 143. Interrogatively and negatively, the verb is conjugated thus:—

| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Ne me promène-je</i> | Do I not walk ? | <i>Ne me suis-je pas</i> | Have I not walked ? |
| <i>ne te promènes-tu</i> | | <i>ne t'es-tu pas</i> | |
| <i>ne se promène-t-il</i> | | <i>ne s'est-il, elle pas</i> | |
| <i>ne nous promenons-nous</i> | | <i>ne nous sommes-nous pas</i> | |
| <i>ne vous promenez-vous</i> | | <i>ne vous êtes-vous pas</i> | |
| <i>ne se promènent-ils</i> | | <i>ne se sont-ils, elles pas</i> | |

UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 144. These verbs have only one person, the third person singular, and remain always singular and masculine, though they may have a plural signification. Some are conjugated with *avoir*, some with *être*; but their past participle never changes. Some, like *il arrive*, it happens; *il convient*, it suits; *il semble*, it seems; *il me tarde*, I long, etc., are only accidentally used as unipersonal verbs.

PARADIGM OF A UNIPERSONAL VERB.

NEIGER, TO SNOW (see § 117).

| | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Pres. Inf. | <i>Neiger,</i> | to snow |
| Past Inf. | <i>avoir neigé,</i> | to have snowed |
| Part. Pres. | <i>neigeant,</i> | snowing |
| Comp. of Part. Pres. | <i>ayant neigé</i> | having snowed |
| Part. Past. | <i>neigé,</i> | snowed |
| Pres. Indic. | <i>il neige,</i> | it snows |
| Pret. Indef. | <i>il a neigé,</i> | it has snowed |
| Imperf. | <i>il neigeait</i> | it was snowing |
| Pluperf. | <i>il avait neigé,</i> | it had snowed |
| Pret. Def. | <i>il neigea</i> | it snowed |
| Pret. Ant. | <i>il eut neigé,</i> | it had snowed |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>il neigera,</i> | it will snow |
| Fut. Ant. | <i>il aura neigé,</i> | it will have snowed |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>il neigerait,</i> | it would snow |
| Past. Cond. | <i>il aurait (or eût neigé),</i> | it would have snowed. |

(No Imperative).

| | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Pres. Subj. | <i>qu'il neige,</i> | that it may snow. |
| Pret. Subj. | <i>qu'il ait neigé</i> | that it may have snowed |
| Imperf. Subj. | <i>qu'il neigeât</i> | that it might snow |
| Pluperf. Subj. | <i>qu'il eût neigé,</i> | that it might have snowed |

The following belong also to the first conjugation: *il dégèle*, it thaws; *il éclaire*, it lightens; *il gèle*, it freezes (infinitive *geler*, to freeze, see § 119); *il grêle*, it hails; *il importe*, it is requisite, it matters; *il tonne*, it thunders.

§ 145. *PLEUVOIR*, TO RAIN, is irregular, as:—

| | | |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Part. Pres. | <i>Pleuvant,</i> | raining |
| Part. Past. | <i>plu,</i> | rained |
| Pres. Ind. | <i>il pleut,</i> | it rains |
| Pret. Indef. | <i>il a plu</i> | it has rained |
| Imperf. | <i>il pleuvait,</i> | it was raining |

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Pluperf. | <i>il avait plu,</i> | it had rained |
| Pret. Def. | <i>il plut,</i> | it rained |
| Pret. Ant. | <i>il eut plu</i> | it had rained |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>il pleuvra,</i> | it will rain |
| Fut. Ant. | <i>il aura plu,</i> | it shall have rained |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>il pleuvrait,</i> | it would rain |
| Past Cond. | <i>il aurait plu,</i> | it should have rained |

(No Imperative).

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Pres. Subj. | <i>qu'il pleuve</i> | that it may rain |
| Pret. Subj. | <i>qu'il ait plu,</i> | that it may have rained |
| Imperf. Subj. | <i>qu'il plût,</i> | that it might rain |
| Pluperf. Subj. | <i>qu'il eût plu,</i> | that it might have rained. |

Two other unipersonal verbs are of frequent use and require attentive study, as well in consequence of the irregularity of their form as of the great difficulty of translating them into English; they are *y avoir* (which is compounded of *y* and *avoir* expressive of *to be*) and *falloir*, *to be necessary*. They are conjugated as follows:—

§ 146. Y AVOIR, THERE TO BE.

| | | |
|--------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Part. Pres. | <i>y ayant,</i> | there being |
| Part. Past | <i>y ayant eu,</i> | there having been |
| Pres. Indic. | <i>il y a,</i> | there is, or there are |
| Pret. Indef. | <i>il y a eu,</i> | there has been, or there have been |
| Imperf. | <i>il y avait,</i> | there was, or there were |
| Pluperf. | <i>il y avait eu</i> | there had been |
| Pret. Def. | <i>il y eut,</i> | there'was, or there were |
| Pret. Ant. | <i>il y eut eu,</i> | there had been |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>il y aura,</i> | there will be |
| Fut. Ant. | <i>il y aura eu</i> | there will have been |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>il y aurait</i> | there would be |
| Past Cond. | <i>il y aurait eu,</i> | there would have been |

(No Imperative).

| | | |
|----------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Pres. Subj. | <i>qu'il y ait,</i> | that there may be |
| Pret. Subj. | <i>qu'il y ait eu,</i> | that there may have been. |
| Imperf. Subj. | <i>qu'il y eût,</i> | that there might be |
| Pluperf. Subj. | <i>qu'il y eût eu,</i> | that there might have been. |

When used interrogatively or negatively, it takes the following forms :—

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Y a-t-il ?</i> | is there ? |
| <i>il n'y a pas,</i> | there is not |
| <i>y avait-il ?</i> | was there, or were there ? |
| <i>n'y a-t-il pas eu ?</i> | has there not been ? |
| <i>il n'y avait pas eu,</i> | there had not been |
| <i>y aura-t-il ?</i> | will there be ? |
| <i>il n'y aura pas,</i> | there will not be |
| <i>y aura-t-il eu ?</i> | will there have been ? |

It is never used otherwise than in the singular in French, although in English it is used in the plural when it is followed by a plural substantive. In elevated style and in poetry, *il est*, *il était*, are used instead of *il y a* and *il y avait*, as : *il est un Dieu*, there is a God.

§ 147. *FALLOIR*, TO BE NECESSARY, is conjugated as follows :—

| | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|----------|--------------|------------------------|
| Part. Pres. | none | [it must | Part. Past | <i>fallu</i> |
| Pres. Indic. | <i>il faut</i> , it is necessary, | | Pret. Indef. | <i>il eût fallu</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>il fallait</i> | | Pluperf. | <i>il avait fallu</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>il fallut</i> | | Pret. Ant. | <i>il eut fallu</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>il faudra</i> | | Fut. Ant. | <i>il aura fallu</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>il faudrait</i> | | Past Cond. | <i>il aurait fallu</i> |

(No Imperative)

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| Pres. Subj. | <i>qu'il faille</i> | Pret. | <i>qu'il ait fallu</i> |
| Imp. Subj. | <i>qu'il fallût</i> | Plup. Subj. | <i>qu'il eût fallu</i> |

This verb can either be followed by *que* and the subjunctive, as : *il faut que votre frère parte*, your brother must set off; or by the present infinitive, *il faut partir*, I must set off. But **observe** that the verb *falloir* is in both these cases followed by another verb in French. If *falloir* has no other verb following it, it is expressed thus : *il me faut de l'argent*, I want money; *il lui faut de l'argent*, he wants money. *Falloir* is used in various idiomatic expressions, as : *c'est un homme comme il faut*, he is a gentleman. This verb used with *en* is also idiomatic, as : *il s'en faut de beaucoup qu'il ait appris le français*, he is far from having learned French; but *le cadet n'est pas si sage que l'aîné, il s'en faut beaucoup*, the youngest is not so wise as the oldest; there is a great difference by far. *Il s'en faut*, used with *de beaucoup*, shows "want;" used with *beaucoup*, "difference." *Il s'en faut* does not require *ne* in the dependent clause, when used affirmatively, but *ne* is employed when there is a negation or a negative word like *peu*, little; *guère*, hardly; *presque*, almost, etc., in the sentence, as : *peu s'en faut qu'il n'ait tombé*, he was very near falling.

§ 148. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular verbs are such as do not entirely agree with the forms of the four conjugations (see §§ 110–126).

There are two classes of irregular verbs, viz. :—

First. Those whose primitive tenses (see §§ 110–115) are irregular, but whose derivative tenses are framed in strict conformity to the rules.

Secondly. Those whose primitive and derivative tenses are both irregular.

. **Observe** that the compound tenses are never irregular.

[The verbs marked with an asterisk (*) form their compound tenses with *être*.]

THE FIRST CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Observe that the irregularities are *not* printed in italics throughout these verbs.

FIRST CLASS. *None*.

SECOND CLASS

* § 149. *Aller*, to go; *allant*, going; *allé*, gone.

Pres. Indic. vais, vas, va, *allons*, *allez*, vont.

Imperf. *allais*, etc.

Præf. Def. *allai*, etc.

Fut. Abs. irai, etc.

Pres. Cond. irais, etc.

Imperat. va, *allons*, *allez*.

Pres. Sufj. aille, ailles, aille, *allions*, *alliez*, aillent.

Imperf. ,, *allasse*, etc.†

† *aller* has three distinct derivations: the first, *all* (as in *allai*, *allé*), from the Latin *ambulare*, to walk; the second, *va* (*je vais*, *tu vas*, *il va*), from the Latin *vadere*, to go; and the third, *ir*, from the Latin *ire*, to go.

Observe: 1. *Aller* serves to form some of the idiomatic tenses of other verbs, as: *je vais chanter*, I am going to sing; *j'allais changer*, I was going to change; *que j'allasse déjeuner*, that I should go to breakfast.

2. In lieu of *j'allai*, *je suis allé*, *j'étais allé*, *je serais allé*, the pret., def., and the compound tenses of *être* are used, as. *je fus*; *j'ai été*; *j'avais été*; *j'aurais été*. It indicates, however, a difference of meaning. For instance, *j'ai été à Paris*, implies that I have been there, but have returned; *il est allé à Paris*, indicates that he is still there. The compound tenses of *aller* are again used when we specify the mode of travelling, as: *nous sommes allés à Londres par le chemin-de-fer*, we went to London by railway.

3. *Va* takes an *s* in the imperative when it precedes the pronoun *en*, or the adverb *y* used alone or followed by any other mood but the infinitive, as: *vas-y*, go thither; *va y arranger l'affaire*, go and arrange the business there; *vas-en savoir des nouvelles*, go and learn some news about it.

4. This verb is used in a great many idiomatic ways. We can only give a few:—

a. In proverbial sentences, as: *à force de mal tout ira bien*, it is a long lane that has no turning; *tous les chemins vont à Rome*, there are more ways than one.

b. Fitness, as: *cette robe vous va mal*, that dress suits you badly.

c. Progress, as: *le commerce de Londres va très-bien cette année*, the trade of London is very prosperous this year.

d. *Y aller*, to be at stake, as: *il y va de l'honneur, de la vie*, honour, life is at stake. But if the present conditional or the future absolute are used, *y* must be omitted.

e. *Tout s'en est allé à vau-l'eau*, all is fallen to the ground; *aller sur les brisées de quelqu'un*, to become some one's rival; *au pis-aller*, at the worst; *allez-vous promener*, go about your business; *cela va sans dire*, of course, etc.

§ 150. S'EN ALLER, TO GO AWAY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S'en aller, to go away.

PAST.

| *S'en être allé*, to have gone away.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en allant, going away.

COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

| *S'en étant allé*, having gone away.

PARTICIPLE PAST, *allé*, gone away.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

*Je m'en vais,
tu t'en vas,
il s'en va,
nous nous en allons,
vous vous en êtes,
ils s'en vont,*

{ I go
away. }

IMPERFECT.

*Je m'en allais,
tu t'en allais,
il s'en allait,
nous nous en allions,
vous vous en étiez,
ils s'en allaient,*

{ I was
going away. }

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

*je m'en allai,
tu t'en allas,
il s'en alla,
nous nous en allâmes,
vous vous en êtes,
ils s'en allèrent,*

{ I went
away. }

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

*je m'en irai,
tu t'en iras,
il s'en ira,
nous nous en irons,
vous vous en irez,
ils s'en iront*

{ I shall
go away. }

Compound Tenses.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

*Je m'en suis
tu t'en es
il s'en est
nous nous en sommes
vous vous en êtes
ils s'en sont*

{ I have
gone away.
allé, allés,
allée, allées, }

PLUPERFECT.

*Je m'en étais
tu t'en étais
il s'en était
nous nous en étions
vous vous en étiez
ils s'en étaient*

{ I had
gone away.
allé, allés,
allée, allées, }

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

*je m'en fus
tu t'en fus
il s'en fut
nous nous en fûmes
vous vous en fûtes
ils s'en furent*

{ I had
gone away.
allé, allés,
allée, allées, }

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*je n'en serai
tu t'en seras
il s'en sera
nous nous en serons
vous vous en serez
ils s'en seront*

{ I shall
have gone
away.
allé, allés,
allée, allées, }

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

*je m'en irais,
tu t'en irais,
il s'en irait,
nous nous en irions,
vous vous en iriez,
ils s'en iroient,*

{ I should
go away. }

PAST.

*je m'en serais
tu t'en serais
il s'en serait
nous nous en serions
vous vous en seriez
ils s'en seraient*

{ I should
have gone
away.
allé, allés,
allée, allées, }

+ In the conditional past, *je m'en fusse allé* is also used.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Va-t'en,</i> | Go (thou) away. |
| <i>allons-nous-en,</i> | let us go away. |
| <i>allez-vous-en.</i> | go (ye) away. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Que je m'en aille,</i> | { That I may go away. |
| <i>que tu t'en ailles,</i> | |
| <i>qu'il s'en aille,</i> | |
| <i>que nous nous en allions,</i> | |
| <i>que vous vous en alliez,</i> | |
| <i>qu'ils s'en aillent,</i> | |

PRETERITE.

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Que je m'en sois</i> | { That I may have gone away. |
| <i>que tu t'en sois</i> | |
| <i>qu'il s'en soit</i> | |
| <i>que nous nous en soyons</i> | |
| <i>que vous vous en soyez</i> | |
| <i>qu'ils s'en soient</i> | |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Que je m'en allasse,</i> | { That I might go away. |
| <i>que tu t'en allasses,</i> | |
| <i>qu'il s'en allât,</i> | |
| <i>que nous nous en allussions,</i> | |
| <i>que vous vous en allassiez,</i> | |
| <i>qu'ils s'en allassent,</i> | |

PLUPERFECT.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Que je m'en fusse</i> | { That I might have gone away. |
| <i>que tu t'en fusses</i> | |
| <i>qu'il s'en fût,</i> | |
| <i>que nous nous en fussions</i> | |
| <i>que vous vous en fussiez</i> | |
| <i>qu'ils s'en fussent</i> | |

§ 151. *Envoyer*, to send; *envoyant*, sending; *envoyé*, sent.

- Pres. Indic. *envoie, -es, -e, envoy-ons, -ez, envoient*
- Imperf. *envoyais*
- Pret. Def. *envoyai*
- Fut. Abs. *enverrai*
- Pres. Cond. *enverrais*
- Imperat. *envoie, envoyons, envoyez*
- Pres. Subj. *envoie, -es, -e, envoy-ions, -iez, envoient*
- Imperf. „ *envoyasse.*

Renvoyer, to discharge, to send back, is conjugated in the same manner.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CLASS.

§ 152. *Assaillir*, to assault; *assaillant*, assaulting; *assailli*, assaulted.

Pres. Indic. *assaill-e, -es, -e; -ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *assaillais*

Pret. Def. *assaillis*

Fut. Abs. *assaillirai*

Pres. Cond. *assaillirais*

Imperat. *assaill-e, -ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *assaille*

Imperf. ,, *assaillisse*.

Tressaillir, to start, to shudder, is conjugated in the same manner.

§ 153. *Bouillir*, to boil; *bouillant*, boiling; *bouilli*, boiled.

Pres. Indic. *bous, bous, bout; bouill-ons, -ez, -ent*.

Imperf. *bouillais*

Pret. Def. *bouillis*

Fut. Abs. *bouillirai*

Pres. Cond. *bouillirais*

Imperat. *bous, bouill-ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *bouille*

Imperf. ,, *bouillisse*

Observe that *bouillir* is never active, like the English verb *to boil*, but is generally used in a transitive sense with the verb *faire*, as: *faire bouillir de la viande*, to boil some meat. In the third persons singular and plural, it can be used in its literal sense, as: *l'eau bout*, the water boils; figuratively, this verb may be used in every person, as: *nous bouillons d'impatience*, we are most impatient.

• *Débouillir*, to test a dyed colour, and *rebouillir*, to reboil, are conjugated in the same manner.

§ 154. *Ouvrir*, to open; *ouvrant*, opening; *ouvert*, opened.

Pres. Indic. *ouvr-e, -es, -e; ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *ouvrais*

Pret. Def. *ouvris*

Fut. Abs. *ouvrirai*

Pres. Cond. *ouvrirais*

Imperat. *ouvr-e, -ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *ouvre*

Imperf. ,, *ouvrisse.*

The following are conjugated in the same manner:—

couvrir, to cover

offrir, to offer

découvrir, to uncover, to discover

recouvrir, to cover again

rouvrir, to open again

entr'ouvrir, to half open

souffrir, to suffer.

mésoffrir, to underbid

§ 155. *Sentir*, to feel, to smell; *sentant*, feeling; *sent*, felt.

Pres. Indic. *sens, sens, sent; sent-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *sentais*

Pret. Def. *sentis*

Fut. Abs. *sentirai*

Pres. Cond. *sentirais*

Imperat. *sens, sent-ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *sente*

Imperf. ,, *sentisse.*

The following are conjugated in the same manner:—

consentir, to consent

mentir, to lie

démentir, to give the lie

**partir*, to set out

départir, to distribute

pressentir, to foresee

desservir, to clear the table,
to harm

redormir, to sleep again

**repartir*, to set out again

dormir, to sleep

ressentir, to resent

endormir, to lull asleep

**ressortir*, to go out again

**s'endormir*, to fall asleep

**se repentir*, to repent

**se rendormir*, to fall asleep
again.

servir, to serve

**sortir*, to go, or come out.

Observe that *départir*, to distribute, to endow, and *repartir*, to reply to, though conjugated like *partir*, form their compound tenses with *avoir*, as : *il lui a reparti*, he replied to him ; *la nature lui a départi des talents*, nature has endowed him with talents. *Répartir*, to distribute, and *asservir*, to subjugate, are not conjugated like *partir* and *servir*, but like *finir*. **Observe** the difference between *repartir*, to reply to ; *repartir*, to set out again ; and *répartir*, to distribute. *Ressortir*, meaning to be under the jurisdiction of a court, is scarcely ever used except in the third person. *Mentir*, to lie, has the name of a thing for its subject only in the proverbial phrase : *bon sang ne peut mentir*, he is a chip of the old block ; otherwise it must always have the name of a person, or a pronoun for its subject.

§ 156. *Vêtir*, to clothe ; *vêtant*, clothing ; *vêtu*, clothed.

Pres. Indic. *vêts, vêts, vêt, vêt-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *vétais*

Pret. Def. *vêtis*

Fut. Abs. *vêtirai*

Pres. Cond. *vêtirais*

Imperat. *vêts, vêt-ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *vête*

Imperf. „ *vétisse.*

Observe that *vêtir* is generally used as a pronominal verb, for instance . *Il s'est vêtu d'une manière ridicule*, he is clothed in a ridiculous manner.

Conjugate after this form *dévêtir*, to strip ; *revêtir*, to clothe, to invest.

SECOND CLASS.

§ 157. *Acquérir*, to acquire ; *acquérant*, acquiring, *acquis*, acquired.

Pres. Indic. *acqu-iers, -iers, -iert, érons, -érez, -ièrent*

Imperf. *acquérais*

Pret. Def. *acquis*

Fut. Abs. *acquerrai*

Pres. Cond. *acquerrais*

| | |
|-------------|---|
| Imperat. | <i>acqu-iers, -érons, -érez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>acqu-ière, -ières, -ière, -érions, -ériez, -ièrent</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>acquisse.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>conquérir</i> , to conquer | <i>*s'enquérir</i> , to inquire |
| <i>reconquérir</i> , to reconquer | <i>requérir</i> , to request ; |

the latter is generally restricted in use to the law.

§ 158. *Courir*, to run ; *cour-ant*, running ; *cour-u*, run.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>cours, cours, court, cour-ons-ez-ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>courais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>courus</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>courrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>courrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>cours, -ons, -ez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>coure</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>courusse</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>accourir</i> , to hasten to | <i>encourir</i> , to incur |
| <i>concourir</i> , to concur, to compete | <i>parcourir</i> , to run over |
| <i>discourir</i> , to discourse, to argue | <i>recourir</i> , to run again, to have recourse |
| | <i>secourir</i> , to succour. |

Observe that *courir*, in the sense of to be sought after, takes *être*, as : *ce maître est beaucoup couru*, this master is much sought after. Formerly *courre* was used instead of *courir*, as a hunting term, as :—

A-t-on jamais parlé de pistolets pour courre un cerf ! (Molière.)

Has one ever heard of using pistols to hunt a stag !

§ 159. *Cueillir*, to gather ; *cueillant*, gathering ; *cueilli*, gathered.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>cueill-c, -es, -e ; ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>cueillais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>cueillis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>cueillerai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>cueillerais</i> |

Imperat. *cueill-e, -ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *cueille*

Imperf. „ *cueillisse*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

accueillir, to receive, to welcome

recueillir, to gather, to receive.

§ 160. *Fuir*, to flee; *fuyant*, fleeing; *fui*, fled.

Pres. Indic. *fu-is, -is, -it; -yons, -yez, -ient*

Imperf. *fuyais*

Pret. Def. *fuis*

„ Fut. Abs. *fuirai*

Pres. Cond. *fuirais*

Imperat. *fu-is, -yons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *fu-ic, -ies, -ie; yions, -yiez, -ient*

Imperf. „ *fuisse*

Conjugate in the same manner, *s'enfuir*, to flee, to escape; but **observe** that *en* is never separated from *fuir* in this verb.

§ 161. **Mourir*, to die; *mourant*, dying; *mort*, dead.

Pres. Indic. *meu-rs, -rs, -rt; mour-ons, -ez, meurent*

Imperf. *mourais*

Pret. Def. *mourus*

„ Fut. Abs. *mourrai*

Pres. Cond. *mourrais*

Imperat. *meurs, mour-ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *meu-re, -res, -re; mour-ions, -iez, meurent*

Imperf. „ *mourusse*

Conjugate in the same manner, *se mourir*, to be dying, to die away, which has usually only two tenses employed, the present and imperfect of the indicative.

§ 162. *Tenir*, to hold; *tenant*, holding; *ten-u*, held.

Pres. Indic. *tiens-s, -t; ten-ons, -ez, tiennent*

Imperf. *tenais*

Pret. Def. *tins, tins, tint; tinmes, tintes, tinrent*

Fut. Abs. *tiendrai*

| | |
|-------------|---|
| Pres. Cond. | tiendrais |
| Imperat. | tiens; ten- <i>ons</i> , - <i>ez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | tienn- <i>e</i> , - <i>es</i> , - <i>e</i> ; ten- <i>ions</i> , - <i>iez</i> , tienn <i>ent</i> |
| Imperf. „ | tinsse, tins <i>ses</i> , tint; tins <i>aions</i> , tins <i>siez</i> , tins <i>sent</i> . |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>appartenir</i> , to belong | * <i>provenir</i> , to arise from, to proceed |
| <i>circonvenir</i> , to circumvent | |
| <i>contenir</i> , to contain | * <i>redevenir</i> , to become again |
| <i>contrevenir</i> , to contravene | <i>retenir</i> , to retain |
| <i>convenir</i> , to suit | * <i>revenir</i> , to return |
| <i>détenir</i> , to detain | * <i>s'abstenir</i> , to abstain |
| * <i>devenir</i> , to become | * <i>se ressouvenir</i> , to recollect |
| <i>disconvenir</i> , to disgrace | * <i>se souvenir</i> , to remember |
| <i>entretenir</i> , to keep | <i>soutenir</i> , to uphold |
| * <i>intervenir</i> , to interfere | <i>subvenir</i> , to provide for |
| <i>maintenir</i> , to maintain | * <i>survenir</i> , to arrive unexpectedly |
| <i>obtenir</i> , to obtain | |
| * <i>parvenir</i> , to reach | <i>venir</i> , to come.† |
| <i>prévenir</i> , to warn | |

Observe that before *e* mute these verbs double the *n*. The verb *convenir*, to suit, is conjugated in its compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*; but when it implies to agree, the auxiliary *être* must be used, as: *cette maison lui aurait bien convenu*, this house would have suited him; *il est convenu que nous voyageons ensemble*, it is agreed that we travel together. *Venir*, to come, requires no preposition before an infinitive; but in the sense of *to have just*, it requires the preposition *de*; meaning *to happen*, the preposition *à* as: *nous venons le voir*, we come to see him; *nous venons de le voir*, we have just seen him; *s'il vient à me punir que ferai-je*? if he happens to punish me, what shall I do?

| † Acquisir from the Latin | acquirere | offrir from the Latin | offerre |
|---------------------------|------------|-----------------------|----------|
| bénir | benedicere | ouvrir | aperire |
| bouillir | ebullire | partir | partire |
| courir | currere | repentir | pœnitere |
| *couvrir | co-operire | sentir | sentire |
| cueillir | colligere | servir | servire |
| dormir | dormire | souffrir | sufferre |
| flétrir | florere | tenir | tenere |
| fuir | fugere | venir | venire |
| mentir | mentiri | vêtur | vestire |
| mourir | mbiri | | |

THE THIRD CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CLASS. *None.*

SECOND CLASS.

§ 163. *Asseoir*, to sit; *asseyant*, sitting; *assis*, sat

Pres. Indic. *ass-ieds, -ieds, -ied, -eyons, -eyez, -eyent*

Imperf. *asseyais*

Pret. Def. *assis*

Fut. Abs. *assiérai*

Pres. Cond. *assiérais*

Imperat. *assieds*; *ass-eyons, -eyez*

Pres. Subj. *asseye*

Imperf. ,, *assisse.*

Observe that we may also use in the future *j'asscyerai*, and in the subjunctive present, *que j'asscie.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

**s'asseoir*, to sit down

**se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

rasseoir, to settle

The participle past of this last verb is used in the sense of stale, or steady, as: *du pain rassis*, stale bread; *esprit rassis*, steady mind.

§ 164. *Mouvoir*, to move; *mouvant*, moving; *mu*, moved

Pres. Indic. *meus, meus, meut*; *mouv-ons, -ez, meuvent*

Imperf. *mouvais*

Pret. Def. *mus*

Fut. Abs. *mouvrai*

Pres. Cond. *mouvrais*

Imperat. *meus*; *mou-vons, -vez*

Pres. Subj. *meu-ve, -ves, -ve*; *mouv-ions, -iez, meuvent*

Imperf. ,, *musse*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

émouvoir, to move, to agitate **s'émouvoir*, to be affected.

§ 165. *Pouvoir*, to provide; *pourvoyant*, providing; *pourvu*, provided.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>pourv-ois, -ois, -oit; -oyons, -oyez, -oient</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>pourvoyais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>pourvus</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>pourvoirai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>pourvoirais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>pourv-ois, -oyons, -oyez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>pourv-oie, -oies, -oie; -oyions, -oyiez, -oient</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>pourvusse.</i> |

§ 166. *Pouvoir*, to be able; *pouvant*, being able; *pu*, been able.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>peux (or puis), peux, peut; pou-vons, -vâs peuvent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>pouvais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>pus</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>pourrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>pourrais</i> |

No Imperative.

| | |
|-------------|---------------|
| Pres. Subj. | <i>puisse</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>pusse.</i> |

Observe that in interrogations, it is better to use *puis-je* ? but otherwise we can use *je peux*, or *je puis*, though the latter is preferred. Negatively used *pas* is often omitted, as: *vous ne pouvez faire cela*, you cannot do that. *Pouvoir* is also used in the present subjunctive without *que*, and with the subject after the verb, as: *puissé-je de mes yeux y voir tomber la foudre* (Corneille), may I with my own eyes see lightning strike it. This verb, with or without *se*, is also employed unipersonally, as: *il pourrait arriver*, that might happen; *cela se peut*, that might be; *n'en pouvoir plus*, means: to be quite exhausted.

§ 167. *Savoir*, to know; *sachant*, knowing; *su*, known.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>sais, sais, sait; sav-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>savais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>sus</i> |

ACCIDENCE.

| | |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| Fut. Abs. | <i>saurai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>saurais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>sache ; sachez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>sache</i> |
| Imperf. ,, | <i>susse.</i> |

Observe, a. *Savoir* is the only verb that forms its imperfect irregularly. .

b. There is a great difference in French between the use of *savoir* and *connaître*, which both mean in English *to know*. *Savoir* is employed as denoting knowledge of the intellect; *connaître*, as denoting knowledge of the senses, for instance: *il sait sa leçon*, he knows his lesson; *je connais cet homme*, I know this man. Sometimes it is difficult to distinguish between these two verbs, as: *je sais ce morceau de musique*, I know (can play) that piece of music; and *je connais ce morceau de musique*, I am acquainted with that piece of music.

c. *Je ne saurais* is often used for *je ne puis*, as: *je ne saurais faire cela*, I cannot do that.

d. *Je ne sache* is sometimes used for *je ne sais pas*, in sentences implying a doubt, as: *aucun élève n'a appris sa leçon que je sache*, no pupil has learned his lesson as far as I know.

§ 168. *Valoir*, to be worth; *valant*, being worth; *valu*, been worth.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>vaux, vauz, vaut ; val-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>valais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>valus</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>vaudrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>vaudrais</i> |

No Imperative.

| | |
|-------------|---|
| Pres. Subj. | <i>vaille, vailles, vaille ; val-ions, -iez, vaillent</i> |
| Imperf. ,, | <i>valusse.</i> |

Observe that *valoir* is often used unipersonally with *mieux*, meaning to be better, as: *il vaut mieux travailler*, it is better to work.

Conjugate in the same manner: *équivaloir*, to be equivalent; *revaloir*, to give an equivalent; and *prévaloir*, to prevail; which however forms its present subjunctive regularly, as: *preval-e, -es, -e ; ions, -iez, -ent*.

§ 169. *Voir*, to see; *voyant*, seeing; *vu*, seen.

Pres. Indic. *vois, vois, voit; voy-ons, -ez, voient*

Imperf. *voyais*

Pret. Def. *vis*

Fut. Abs. *verrai*

Pres. Cond. *verrais*

• Imperat. *vois, voy-ons, -ez*

Pres. Subj. *voi-e, -es, -e; voy-ions, -iez, voient*

Imperf. „ *visse.*

Conjugate in the same manner: *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of; *revoir*, to see again; and *prévoir*, to foresee; which forms its future *prévoirai*, and its conditional *prévoirais*.

Observe that in *pourvoir*, to provide (see § 165) the future, condit., pret. def., and imperf. subj., differ from *voir*, whilst in *prévoir*, to foresee, only the future and condit. differ.

§ 170. *Vouloir*, to desire, to be willing; *voulant*, desiring; *voulu*, desired.

Pres. Indic. *veux, veux, veut; voul-ons, -ez, veulent*

Imperf. *voulais*

Pret. Def. *voulus*

Fut. Abs. *voudrai*

Pres. Cond. *voudrais*

For the Imperative see the Observation.

Pres. Subj. *veuill-e, -es, -e; voul-ions, -iez, veulent*

• Imperf. „ *voulusse.*

Observe that *veuille, veuillez*, be so kind as, are the only persons used of the imperative, as: *veuillez me prêter un livre*, be so kind as to lend me a book. The imperative *veux, voulons, voulez*, is used only to indicate a strong determination, as: *voulez seulement et vous l'obtiendrez*, only determine and you will obtain it. *En vouloir à quelqu'un*, means to be angry with some one, or bear a grudge, as: *il en veut à mon ami*, he is angry with my friend. *En vouloir à quelque chose*, is to aim at, as: *J'en veut à ma place*, he aims at my place.†

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| + <i>Assavoir</i> from the Latin | <i>assidere</i> | <i>valoir</i> , from the Latin | <i>valere</i> |
| <i>mouvoir</i> „ | <i>movers</i> | <i>voir</i> „ | <i>videre</i> |
| <i>pouvoir</i> „ | <i>posse</i> | <i>vouloir</i> „ | <i>velle</i> |
| <i>savoir</i> „ | <i>sapere</i> | | |

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CLASS.

§ 171. *Battre*, to beat; *battant*, beating; *battu*, beat

Pres. Indic. *bats, bats, bat; batt-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *battais*

Pret. Def. *battis*

Fut. Abs. *battrai*

Pres. Cond. *battrais*

Imperat. *bats, battons, battez*

Pres. Subj. *batte*

Imperf. ,, *battisse.*

Conjugate in the same manner :—

abattre, to beat down **s'écabtre*, to make merry

combattre, to fight *rabattre*, to abate

débattre, to debate *rebattre*, to beat again.

Observe that *battre* has several idiomatic expressions, as : *battre la campagne*, to rave; *battre la retraite*, to sound the retreat, *battre des mains*, to applaud; *mener quelqu'un tambour battant*, to treat somebody haughtily; *il faut battre le fer quand il est chaud*, one must strike the iron while it is hot, etc.

§ 172. *Conclure*, to conclude; *concluant*, concluding; *conclu*, concluded.

Pres. Indic. *conclus, conclus, conclut; conclu-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *conclu-ais, -ais, -ait; ions, -iez, -aient*

Pret. Def. *conclus*

Fut. Abs. *conclurai*

Pres. Cond. *conclurais*

Imperat. *conclus, concluons, concluez*

Pres. Subj. *conclue, concluions, concluez*

Imperf. ,, *conclusse.*

Conjugate in the same manner *exclure*, to exclude.

Observe that *conclure* and *exclure* require a diæresis over the *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect indicative and present subjunctive.

§ 173. *Conduire*, to conduct; *conduisant*, conducting; *conduit*, conducted.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>conduis, conduis, conduit; conduis-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>conduisais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>conduirai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>conduirais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>conduis, conduisons, conduisez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>conduise</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>conduisissee</i> . |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>construire</i> , to construct | <i>nuire</i> , to hurt |
| <i>cuire</i> , to cook | <i>produire</i> , to produce |
| <i>déduire</i> , to deduct | <i>reconduire</i> , to reconduct |
| <i>détruire</i> , to destroy | <i>recuire</i> , to boil again |
| <i>éconduire</i> , to refuse | <i>réduire</i> , to reduce |
| <i>enduire</i> , to plaster | <i>reluire</i> , to glitter |
| <i>instruire</i> , to instruct | <i>reproduire</i> , to reproduce |
| <i>introduire</i> , to introduce | <i>séduire</i> , to seduce |
| <i>luire</i> , to shine | <i>traduire</i> , to translate. |

Observe that *luire*, *nuire*, and *reluire*, take in the participle past *lui*, *nui*, and *relui*. *Luire* and *reluire* have no preterite definite, and consequently also no imperfect of the subjunctive.

§ 174. *Coudre*, to sew; *cousant*, sewing; *cousu*, sewn

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>couds, couds, coud; cous-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>cousais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>cousis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>coudrai</i> |

| | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Pres. Cond. | <i>coudrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>couds, cousons, cousez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>couse</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>cousisse.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner, *découdre*, to unsew; and *recoudre*, to sew again.

§ 175. *Craindre*, to fear; *craignant*, fearing; *craint*, feared.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>crains, crains, craint; craign-ons, -ez-ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>craignais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>craignis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>craindrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>craindrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>crains, craignons, craignez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>craigne</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>craignisse.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>astreindre</i> , to confine to | <i>feindre</i> , to feign |
| <i>atteindre</i> , to reach | <i>joindre</i> , to join |
| <i>ceindre</i> , to gird on | <i>oindre</i> , to anoint |
| <i>contraindre</i> , to compel | <i>peindre</i> , to paint |
| <i>enceindre</i> , to enclose | <i>plaindre</i> , to pity |
| <i>enfreindre</i> , to infringe | <i>rejoindre</i> , to meet again |
| <i>enjoindre</i> , to enjoin | <i>restreindre</i> , to bind |
| <i>éteindre</i> , to extinguish | <i>teindre</i> , to dye. |

Observe that *atteindre*, to reach, if meaning with an effort, has generally *d* before its object, as: *il peut atteindre au clocher*, he can reach the steeple; but meaning without an effort, it requires no preposition, as: *j'ai atteint ma vingtième année*, I have reached my twentieth year. *Plaindre*, is to pity, but *se plaindre*, is to complain, as: *je me plains que je ne puis y aller*, I complain that I cannot go there; *il aime à se plaindre et à être plaint*, he likes to complain and to be pitied.

§ 176. *Écrire*, to write; *écrivant*, writing; *écrit*, written

Pres. Indic. *écris, écris, écrit; écriv-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *écrivais*

Pret. Def. *écrivis*

Fut. Abs. *écrirai*

Pres. Cond. *écrirais*

Imperat. *écris, écrivons, écrivez*

Pres. Subj. *écrive*

Imperf. „ *écrivisse.*

Conjugate in the same manner —

circonscrire, to circumscribe *proscrire*, to proscribe

décrire, to describe *récrire*, to re-write

inscrire, to inscribe *souscrire*, to subscribe

prescrire, to prescribe *transcrire*, to copy.

§ 177. *Lire*, to read; *li-sant*, reading; *lu*, read

Pres. Indic. *lis, lis, lit; lis-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *lisais*

Pret. Def. *lus*

Fut. Abs. *lirai*

Pres. Cond. *lirais*

Imperat. *lis, lisons, lisez*

Pres. Subj. *lise*

Imperf. „ *lusse.*

Conjugate in the same manner :—

élire, to elect *relire*, to read again.

§ 178. *Maudire*, to curse; *maudissant*, cursing; *maudit*, cursed.

Pres. Indic. *maudis, maudis, maudit; maudis-sons, -sez, -sent*

Imperf. *maudissais*

Pret. Def. *maudis*

Fut. Abs. *maudirai*

Pres. Cond. *maudirais*

| | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Imperat. | <i>maudis, maudissons, maudissez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>maudisse</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>maudisse.</i> |

Observe that *maudire*, though an irregular verb of the fourth conjugation, is conjugated like *finir*, except the past part.

§ 179. *Médire*, to slander; *médisant*, slandering; *médit*, slandered.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>médis, médis, médit; médis-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>médiais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>médis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>médirai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>médirais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>médis, médisons, médisez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>médise</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>méd</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>circoncire</i> , to circumcise | <i>dédire</i> , to deny |
| <i>confire</i> , to preserve | <i>interdire</i> , to prohibit |
| <i>contredire</i> , to contradict | <i>prédire</i> , to predict |
| <i>déconfire</i> , to defeat | <i>suffire</i> , to suffice. |

Observe that the verbs given here above differ from *dire* (see § 193) only in the second person plural of the present indicative and imperative. The past participle of *suffire* is *suffi*, and of *circoncire*, *circoncis*.

§ 180. *Mettre*, to put; *mettant*, putting; *mis*, put

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>mets, mets, met; mett-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>mettais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>mis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>mettrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>mettrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>mets, mettons, mettez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>mette</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>misso.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner :—

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>admettre</i> , to admit | <i>permettre</i> , to permit |
| <i>commettre</i> , to commit | <i>promettre</i> , to promise |
| <i>compromettre</i> , to compromise | <i>remettre</i> , to defer |
| <i>démettre</i> , to discharge | <i>*s'entremettre</i> , to interpose |
| <i>émettre</i> , to issue | <i>soumettre</i> , to subject |
| <i>omettre</i> , to omit | <i>transmettre</i> , to transmit. |

Observe that *mettre* has a great many peculiar idioms ; we can only give a few, as : *mettre au fait*, to inform, to acquaint ; *mettre à même de*, to enable ; *mettre aux abois* (see § 25), to bring to the last gasp ; *mettre les fers au feu*, to set about a thing in good earnest ; *se mettre à*, means to apply oneself to, to begin, as : *nous nous sommes mis à étudier*, we have applied ourselves to study ; *se mettre en* means also to commence, as : *se mettre en ménage*, to commence housekeeping ; *il s'est mis en chemin*, he has begun his journey.

§ 181. *Moudre*, to grind ; *moulant*, grinding ; *moulu* ground.

Pres. Indic. *mouds, mouds, moud ; moule-ns, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *moulais*

Pret. Def. *moulus*

Fut. Abs. *moudrai*

Pres. Cond. *moudrais*

Imperat. *mouds, moulons, moulez*

Pres. Subj. *moule*

Imperf. „ *moulusse*

Conjugate in the same manner :—

émoudre, to whet, to set

remoudre, to grind again

réémoudre, to whet again, to set again.

Observe that we use *moudre* when we speak of grinding corn, pepper, coffee, etc., or whenever we wish to reduce a thing to powder ; for sharpening tools and instruments *émoudre* is used. Idiomatical expressions are : *se battre à fer émoulu*, to combat with sharp weapons ; *moudre un homme de coups*, to beat a man black and blue ; *frais émoulu du collège*, fresh from college, etc.

§ 182. **Naitre*, to be born; *naissant*, being born; *né*, been born.

Pres. Indic. *nais, nais, nait*; *naiss-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *naissais*

Pret. Def. *naquis*

Fut. Abs. *naîtrai*

Pres. Cond. *naîtrais*

Imperat. *nais, naissons, naissez*

Pres. Subj. *naisse*

Imperf. ,, *naquisse,*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

renaitre, to revive, to be born again.

Observe that in French *naitre* is a neuter verb, and forms its compound tenses with *être*, whereas in English it is always passive; therefore we say. *il naquit sous une heureuse étoile*, he was born under a lucky star, and not *il fut né sous une heureuse étoile*. *Renaitre* has no past participle, and consequently no compound tenses. *Naitre* and *renaitre* take a circumflex accent on the *i* of the root coming before a *t*.

§ 183. *Paraître*, to appear; *paraissant*. appearing; *par-u*, appeared.

Pres. Indic. *paraïs, paraïs, paraît*; *paraiss-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *paraissais*

Pret. Def. *parus*

Fut. Abs. *paraîtrai*

Pres. Cond. *paraîtrais*

Imperat. *paraïs, paraissions, paraissez*

Pres. Subj. *paraisse*

Imperf. ,, *parusse.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

accroître, to increase

croître, to grow

apparaître, to appear

décroître, to decrease

connaître, to know

disparaître, to disappear

comparaître, to appear in a
court of justice

méconnaître, to misconceive
paitre, to graze

reconnaître, to recognize
recroître, to grow again
repâître, to feed

**se repaître*, to feed on
reparaître, to reappear.

• **Observe** that all verbs conjugated like *paraître*, take a circumflex accent over the *i* of the root coming before a *t*. *Paraître* has no imperfect subjunctive, it having no preterite definite; for the verb *connaître* refer to *savoir* (see § 167). The circumflex accent in the verb *croître*, is used throughout that verb, except, according to the French Academy, before double *s*, or with the feminine or plural of the past participle *crû*, which is written *crue*, *crus*, *crues*. It is by means of the circumflex accent that we distinguish between the past participle of *croître*, to grow, and of *croire*, to believe (see § 192). *Accroître* and *décroître* have no circumflex accent on their past participle.

§ 184. *Plaire*, to please; *plaisant*, pleasing; *plu*, pleased

Pres. Indic. *plais, plais, plaît; plais-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *plaisais*

• Pret. Def. *plus*

Fut. Abs. *plairai*

Pres. Cond. *plairais*

- Imperat. *plais, plaisons, plaisez*

Pres. Subj. *plaise*

• Imperf. „ *plusse.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

• *complaire*, to comply with *déplaire*, to displease

**se complaire*, to take delight in *taire*, to conceal, to be silent.

• **Observe**, a. That *plaire* is neuter in French, therefore *je leur plais* is, I please them, and not *je les plais*.

For the same reason *plaire* cannot have a passive voice; I am pleased is not to be translated by *je suis plu*, but by *je suis content*.

b. The verb *plaire* is frequently used unipersonally in answer to a question, as: *voulez-vous prendre quelque chose?* you reply, *s'il vous plaît*, if you please. *Plait-il* is used interrogatively for: what do you say?

c. *Taire* does not take a circumflex accent in the third person singular present indicative like *plaire* and its compounds, but it takes a circumflex accent on the past participle *tû*. This verb is used reflectively, when we wish to indicate holding the tongue, or being silent, as . *il se tut*, he ceased speaking, and *taisez-vous*, hold your tongue.

§ 185. *Résoudre*, to resolve; *résolvant*, resolving; *résolu*, resolved.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>résous, résous, résout ; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>résolvais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>résolus</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>résoudrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>résoudrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>résous, résolvons, résolvez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>résolve</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>résolusse.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>absoudre</i> , to acquit, to ab- | <i>dissoudre</i> , to melt, to dis- |
| solve | solve. |

Observe that when *résoudre* means *to change into*, its past participle is *résous*, and it then has no feminine (see § 46). The feminine of the past participles of *absoudre*, and *dissoudre*, *absous* and *dissous*, is *absoute* and *dissoute* (see § 41). These two verbs have no imperfect subjunctive, having no preterite definite.

§ 186. *Rire*, to laugh; *riant*, laughing; *ri*, laughed

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>ris, rit, rit ; ri-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>riaais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>ris</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>rirai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>rirais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>ris, rions, riez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>rie</i> |
| Imperf. „ | <i>risse.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

sourire, to smile.

§ 187. *Rompre*, to break; *rompant*, breaking; *rompu*, broke.

Pres. Indic. *romps, romps, rompt; romp-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *rompais*

Pret. Def. *rompis*

Fut. Abs. *romprai*

Pres. Cond. *romprais*

Imperat. *romps, rompons, rompez*

Pres. Subj. *rompe*

Imperf. „ *rompisse.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

corrompre, to corrupt

interrompre, to interrupt.

Observe that *rompre* is said of breaking anything that is not brittle, as: *il a rompu une chaise*, he has broken a chair; but *casser* and *briser*, both meaning to break, can be used in speaking of brittle objects, *briser* being more particularly applied to breaking things into small pieces, as: *j'ai cassé un verre*, I have broken a glass; *nous avons brisé la glace*, we have broken the looking-glass into pieces. Sometimes *casser* is used in speaking of objects not brittle.

§ 188. *Suivre*, to follow; *suisant*, following; *suivi*, followed.

Pres. Indic. *suis, suis, suit; suiv-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *suivais*

Pret. Def. *suivis*

Fut. Abs. *suivrai*

Pres. Cond. *suivrais*

Imperat. *suis, suivons, suivez*

Pres. Subj. *suive*

Imperf. „ *suivisse.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

poursuivre, to pursue, to continue.

§ 189. *Vaincre*, to conquer; *vainquant*, conquering; *vaincu*, conquered.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vainqu-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>vainquais</i> |
| Prot. Def. | <i>vainquis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>vaincrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>vaincrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>vaincs, vainquons, vainquez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>vainque</i> |
| Imperf. ,, | <i>vainquissiez.</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner:—

convaincre, to convince.

§ 190. *Vivre*, to live; *vivant*, living; *vécu*, lived

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>vis, vis, vit; viv-ons, -ez, -ent</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>vivais</i> |
| Prpt. Def. | <i>vécus</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>vivrai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>vivrais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>vis, vivons, vivez</i> |
| Pres. Subj. | <i>vive</i> |
| Imperf. ,, | <i>vécusse.†</i> |

| † <i>Baître</i> from the Latin <i>battuere</i> | |
|--|---------------------|
| <i>ceindre</i> | „ <i>cingere</i> |
| <i>conduire</i> | „ <i>conducere</i> |
| <i>connaître</i> | „ <i>cognoscere</i> |
| <i>coudre</i> | „ <i>consuere</i> |
| <i>croître</i> | „ <i>crescere</i> |
| <i>cuire</i> | „ <i>coquere</i> |
| <i>détruire</i> | „ <i>destruere</i> |
| <i>écrire</i> | „ <i>scribere</i> |
| <i>enfreindre</i> | „ <i>infringere</i> |
| <i>éteindre</i> | „ <i>exinguere</i> |
| <i>feindre</i> | „ <i> fingere</i> |
| <i>instruire</i> | „ <i>instruere</i> |
| <i>joindre</i> | „ <i>jungere</i> |
| <i>lire</i> | „ <i>legere</i> |
| <i>luire</i> | „ <i>lucere</i> |

| <i>mettre</i> from the Latin <i>mittere</i> | |
|---|--------------------|
| <i>moudre</i> | „ <i>molere</i> |
| <i>naître</i> | „ <i>nasci</i> |
| <i>nuire</i> | „ <i>nocere</i> |
| <i>paître</i> | „ <i>pascere</i> |
| <i>paraître</i> | „ <i>apparere</i> |
| <i>peindre</i> | „ <i>pingere</i> |
| <i>plaindre</i> | „ <i>plangere</i> |
| <i>plaire</i> | „ <i>placere</i> |
| <i>résoudre</i> | „ <i>resolvere</i> |
| <i>suire</i> | „ <i>sequi</i> |
| <i>taire</i> | „ <i>tacere</i> |
| <i>teindre</i> | „ <i>tingere</i> |
| <i>vaincre</i> | „ <i>vincere</i> |
| <i>vivre</i> | „ <i>vivere</i> |

Conjugate in the same manner :—

revivre, to revive *survivre*, to survive, to outlive.

Observe that this verb never expresses to dwell at a place, *demeurer* being then employed, as, for instance, we say: *je demeure à Londres*, I live in London. The third persons singular and plural of the present subjunctive are often used as exclamations, as: *Vive la Reine!* long live the Queen!

SECOND CLASS.

§ 191. *Boire*, to drink; *buvant*, drinking; *bu*, drunk

Pres. Indic. bois, bois, boit; *bu-vons*, -ez, boivent

Imperf. *buvais*

Pret. Def. bus

Fut. Abs. *boirai*

Pres. Cond. *boirais*

Imperat. *bois, buvons, buvez*

Pres. Subj. boive, boives, boive; *bu-vions*, -iez, boivent

Imperf. „ *busse*.

This verb is employed in several proverbs, as: *qui a bu boira*, habits always remain; *on ne saurait faire boire un âne s'il n'a soif*, a man may take a horse to the water, but he cannot make him drink unless he is thirsty.

§ 192. *Croire*, to believe; *croyant*, believing; *cru*, believed.

Pres. Indic. crois, crois, croit; *croy-ons*, -ez, croient

Imperf. *croyais*

Pret. Def. crus

Fut. Abs. *croirai*

Pres. Cond. *croirais*

Imperat. *crois; croyons, croyez*

Pres. Subj. croie, croies, croie; *croy-ions*, -iez, croient

Imperf. „ *crusse*.

§ 193. *Dire*, to say; *disant*, saying; *dit*, said

Pres. Indic. dis, dis, dit; *disons*, dites, *disent*

Impæf. *disais*

Pret. Def. dis

Fut. Abs. *dirai*

Pres. Cond. *dirais*

Imperat. *dis, disons, dites*

Pres. Subj. *dise*

Imperf. ,,

Conjugate in the same manner:—

redire, to repeat, to tell again. (See the Observation, § 179).

Observe that nearly all old classical French writers, as Corneille, Racine, Molière, and La Fontaine, use *die* in the present subjunctive, instead of *dise*, which cannot be done now.

§ 194. *Faire*, to do; *faisant*, doing; *fait*, done

Pres. Indic. fais, fais, fait; *faisons*, faites, font

Imperf. *faisais*

Pret. Def. fis

Fut. Abs. ferai

Pres. Cond. ferais

Imperat. *fais, faisons, faites*

Pres. Subj. fasse

Imperf. ,, *fisse*.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

contrefaire, to counterfeit *refaire*, to repair, to do again

défaire, to undo, to defeat *satisfaire*, to satisfy

**se défaire de*, to get rid of *surfaire*, to overcharge.

Observe that *faire* has a great many idiomatic meanings. All cannot be given, but some follow here:—

a. Used unipersonally, as: *il fait beau temps*, it is fine weather; *il fait chaud, froid*, it is hot, cold; *il fait jour*, it is daylight.

b. Used pronominally, as: *il se fait tard*, it grows late.

c. To cause, as: *il vous fera punir*, he will cause you to be punished.

d. *Faire faire*, to cause to be done, to get it done, as: *il se fait faire une montre d'or*, he got a gold watch made.

e. *Faire l'école buissonnière*, to play the truant; *faire le bon apôtre*, to pretend to be good; *faire la petite bouche*, to mince it; *faire d'une pierre deux coups*, to kill two birds with one stone; *faire des châteaux en Espagne*, to build castles in the air, etc.

f. *Ne faire que*, to do nothing but; *ne faire que de* (like *venir de*), to have just; *n'en rien faire*, to neglect, to let alone; *n'avoir que faire de quelqu'un*, not to associate with some one.

§ 195. *Prendre*, to take; *prenant*, taking; *pris*, took

Pres. Indic. *prends, prends, prend; pren-ons, -ez, -nent*

Imperf. *prenais*

Pret. Def. *pris*

Fut. Abs. *prendrai*

Pres. Cond. *prendrais*

Imperat. *prends, prenons, prenez*

Pres. Subj. *prenn-e, -es, -e; pren-ions, -iez, -nent*

Imperf. „ *prissee.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

apprendre, to learn

**se méprendre*, to mistake

comprendre, to understand

rapprendre, to learn anew

entreprendre, to undertake

reprendre, to take back

**s'éprendre*, to be smitten

surprendre, to surprise.

Observe that *n* before the *e* mute is doubled in all these verbs.†

(For a TABLE containing all the IRREGULAR VERBS, see APPENDIX).

† *Boire* from the Latin *bibere*
croire „ *credere*
dire „ *dicere*

faire from the Latin *facere*
prendre „ *prehendere*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs are those which occur only in certain tenses of persons.

THE DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 196. The defective verbs of the first conjugation are the unipersonal verbs *tonner*, etc., (see § 144), and *ester*, which is only used in the present of the infinitive as a legal term for, *to appear before a court*.

From this verb are formed *rester*, to remain; *arrêter*, to stop; and *contraster*, to contrast.

In old French are found the verbs *conster*, *dister*, *inster*, *obster*; from which have been formed the present participles *constant*, *distant*, *instant*, *mobstant*.

THE DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 197. *Faillir*, to fail; to be near; *faillant*, failing; *failli*, failed.

Pres. Indic. *faux, faux, faut; faill-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *faillais*

Pret. Def. *faillis*

Fut. Abs. *faudrai*.

Observe that the following tenses of this verb are in use although they have not the authority of the French Academy, viz., Fut. Abs. *je faillirai*. Pres. Cond. *je faillirais*. *Faillir*, with the sense of "to be near," is only used in the preter. def. and pret. indef., as *j'ai failli tomber*, I was near (almost) falling. Sometimes it is used with *à* or *de*.

The compound *défaillir*, to decay, to faint, is to be found only in the three pers. plur of the pres. indic. *nous défaillons*, etc., the imperf. *je défaillais*, etc., in the pret. def. *je défaillis*, etc., and the infinitive.

§ 198. *Fêrir*, to strike.

This verb occurs only in the expression, *sans coup fêrir*, without striking a blow; but the past participle *fêru*, wounded, is still used as a veterinary term.

§ 199. *Gésir*, to lie; *gisant*, lying.

Pres. Indic. *il gît, nous gis-ons, -ez, -ent*

Imperf. *gisais.*

This is said of things destroyed, of prisoners, and of sick and dead persons. It is generally used in epitaphs, as *ci-gît*, here lies.

§ 200. *Honnir*, to disgrace.

This is found only in the past participle *honni*, as: *il est honni*, he is disgraced. The motto of the Order of the Garter is *Honni soit qui mal y pense*, evil be to him that evil thinks.

Observe that the initial *h* is aspirated.

§ 201. *Issir*, to issue.

This verb occurs only in the past participle *issu*, to convey a descent from, as: *issu du sang de David*, descended from David.

§ 202. *Ouir*, to hear; past part. *ouï*, heard.

This verb rarely occurs but in the present infinitive, or conjugated with *avoir* in the compound tenses. It occurs in the English law term, *oyer*, hear ye, and the assize of *oyer and terminer* is derived from it.

§ 203. *Quérir*, to fetch.

This was formerly used in the infinitive, after *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer*, but *chercher* is now used instead.

§ 204. *Saillir*, to gush out; *saillissant*, gushing out; *sailli*, gushed out.

Pres. Indic. *saillis*

Imperf. *saillissais*

Pret. Def. *saillîs*

Fut. Abs. *saillirai*

Pres. Cond. *saillirais*

Imp. Subj. *saillisse.*

This verb has no imperative nor pres. subj. It is rarely used but in the infinitive and third person singular of some of the tenses, *jaillir*, taking its place. It is also used as an architectural term, to project, and can only be employed in the third persons singular and plural; these persons of

the future, condit., imperf. subj., and past part. are the same as of *saillir*, to gush out, but the pres. part. of *saillir*, to project, is *saillant*; the pres. indic. *il saille*, *ils saillent*; the imperf. indic. *il saillait*, *ils saillaient*; and the prés. subj. *qu'il saille*, *qu'ils saillent*.†

THE DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 205. *Apparoir*, to be evident.

Used sometimes as a legal term in the infinitive and the third person singular of the present indicative, as: *il appert*, it is evident.

§ 206. *Choir*, to fall.

This verb occurs only in the infinitive and the past participle *chu*, m., *chue*, f., which was *chute* formerly, but this word is preserved only in the proverb *chercher chape-chute*, to endeavour to profit by some one's mishap—closely resembling the substantive form in *la chute des feuilles*, the fall of leaves.

Down to the sixteenth century *choir* was used in all its tenses. From the old French verb *meschoir* is still in use as an adjective, the present participle *méchant*, wicked.

§ 207. *Déchoir*, to decay, to degenerate; *déchu*, decayed.

Prés. Indic. *déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*; *déchoy-ons*, -ez, *déchoient*

Pret. Def. *déchus*

Fut. Abs. *décherrai*

Pres. Cond. *décherrais*

Pres. Subj. *déchoie*

Imperf. „ *dechusse*.

§ 208. *Échoir*, to lapse, to fall to the lot of; *échéant*, falling, etc.; *échu*, fallen, etc.

Pres. Indic. only third person singular, *il échoit* (pronounce *échet*).

Pret. Def. *échu*

† *Faillir* from the Latin *fallere*
fêrir „ *ferire*
gêrir „ *gacere*
issir „ *exire*

ouïr from the Latin *audire*
quêrir „ *quaerere*
saillir „ *salire*.

Fut. Abs. *écherrai*

Pres. Cond. *écherrais*

Imperf. Subj. *échusse.*

§ 209. *Dépourvoir*, to deprive, to strip; *dépourvu*, deprived.

This occurs only in the preterite indefinite and in the infinitive. It is used sometimes in the compound tenses reflectively, as :—

Il s'est dépourvu de tout pour obtenir son but,

He deprived himself of everything to obtain his object.

§ 210. *Promouvoir*, to raise, to promote.

Used only in the infinitive and in the compound tenses, as : *le prince fut promu à l'empire*, the prince was raised to the empire.

§ 211. *Ravoir*, to recover, to have back.

This occurs only in the infinitive present, as :—

Je lui ai prêté de l'argent, je veux le ravoir.

I lent him some money, I will have it back.

§ 212. *Seoir*, to sit; *seant*, sitting; *sis*, m., *sise*, f., sat.

These, and *sieds-toi*, are the only parts used; the latter is derived from the reflective *se seoir* which has long been obsolete; *s'asseoir* is now used instead of it.

In French, in the sense of *to fit*, this verb has no infinitive, but it occurs as follows.—

Pres. Indie *il sied, ils siètent*

Imperf. *il seyait, ils seyaient*

Fut. Abs. *il siéra, ils sièront*

Pres. Cond. *il sièrait, ils sièraient*

It has no compound tenses, and is unipersonal; *messeoir*, to be unbecoming, occurs in the same tenses.

§ 213. *Surseoir*, to put off, to suspend; *sursoyant*, suspending; *sursis*, suspended.

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>sursois, sursois, sursoit; sursoy - ons, - ez, sursoient</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>sursoyais</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>sursis</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>surseoirai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>surseoirais</i> |
| Imp. Subj. | <i>sursisse.†</i> |

When used neuter, in which it is found more generally than active, it takes the preposition *à*, as : *surseoir au jugement*, to withhold judgment.

THE DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 214. *Accroire*, to make one believe.

This is never used but in the infinitive and with the verb *faire*, to impose the belief upon some one of what is untrue, as : *vous voudrez nous en faire accroire*, you wish to make us believe it.

§ 215. *Braire*, to bray

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>il brait, ils braient</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>il braira, ils brairont</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>il brairait, ils brairaient.</i> |

§ 216. *Bruire*, to rustle, to roar, to rattle (of waves, wind, etc.)

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>il bruit</i> |
| Imperf. | <i>il bruissait, ils bruyaient</i> (sometimes <i>bruissait, bruissaient</i>). |

§ 217. *Clore*, to close ; *clos*, m., *close*, f., closed.

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>clos, clos, clôt</i> (no plural) |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>clorai</i> |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>clorais</i> |
| Imperat. | <i>clos</i> (no other persons). |

† *Choir* from the Latin *cadere*

Séoir from the Latin *sedere*.

Fermer is ordinarily used in common discourse. *Forclorre*, to debar, occurs only in the infinitive and the past participle.

§ 218. *Éclorre*, to be hatched, to open; *éclos*, m., *écloose*, f., opened.

Pres. Indic. *il éclôt ils éclosent*

Pret. Indef. *il est éclos*

Fut. Abs. *il éclóra*

Pres. Cond. *il éclórait*

Pres. Subj. *écloose.*

§ 219. *Forfaire*, to forfeit.

This, with *malfaire*, to do ill, *parfaire*, to perfect (legal), and *méfaire*, to misdo, are only used in the infinitive and past participle.

§ 220. *Frir*, to fry; *frit*, m., *frite*, f., fried.

Pres. Indic. *fris, fris, frit* (no plural)

Fut. Abs. *frirai*

Pres. Cond. *frirais*

Imperat. *fris* (no other persons).

This is generally used with *faire*, and also in the compound tenses; sometimes it is used neuter.

§ 221. *Poindre*, to dawn, to sprout.

Is only used in the infinitive and the future, as: *le jour commence à poindre*, the day begins to dawn; *mes fleurs poindront*, my flowers will sprout.

§ 222. *Sourdre*, to spring up.

This is used only in the infinitive and in the third persons singular and plural of the present of the indicative, as: *l'eau sourd de ce rocher*, the water springs from this rock.

§ 223. *Tistre*, to weave.

This occurs only in the past participle *tissu*, m. and *tissue*, f., and the tenses thence derived. *Tisser* is the verb commonly used: *tissu* is used also as a substantive, as *les tissus fabriqués en Angleterre*, the fabrics woven in England.†

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| + <i>Bruire</i> from the Latin | <i>rugire</i> | <i>sourdre</i> from the Latin | <i>surgere</i> |
| <i>clorre</i> | <i>claudere</i> | <i>tistre</i> | <i>texere</i> . |
| <i>frir</i> | <i>frigere</i> | | |

CHAPTER VII.

THE ADVERB.

§ 224. An adverb is an invariable part of speech which modifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or another adverb, as: *parler éloquemment*, to speak eloquently; *bien beau*, very fine; *très-souvent*, very often.

Adverbs are either simple, and formed of one word, as: *hier*, yesterday; or compound, and formed of more than one word, as: *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday.

Adverbs may be divided into the following classes:—

§ 225. ADVERBS OF TIME.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>à la*fois</i> , at once | <i>dorénavant</i> , henceforth |
| <i>alors</i> , then | <i>encore</i> , yet, still |
| <i>anciennement</i> , formerly | <i>enfin</i> , lastly |
| <i>aujourd'hui</i> , to-day | <i>ensuite</i> , afterwards |
| <i>auparavant</i> , before | <i>hier</i> , yesterday |
| <i>aussitôt</i> , as soon as | <i>incontinent</i> , immediately |
| <i>autrefois</i> , formerly | <i>jadis</i> , of yore |
| <i>bientôt</i> , soon | <i>jamais</i> , ever |
| <i>cependant</i> , meanwhile | <i>lors</i> , then |
| <i>déjà</i> , already | <i>maintenant</i> , now |
| <i>demain</i> , to-morrow | <i>naguère</i> , lately, formerly |
| <i>depuis</i> , since | <i>parfois</i> , at times |
| <i>désormais</i> , henceforth | <i>plutôt</i> , sooner |
| <i>dernièrement</i> , lately | <i>puis</i> , then |
| <i>de suite</i> , immediately | <i>quand</i> , when |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>quelquefois</i> , sometimes | <i>tard</i> , late |
| <i>rarement</i> , seldom | <i>tôt</i> , soon |
| <i>souvent</i> , often | <i>toujours</i> , always |
| <i>tantôt</i> , sometimes, presently | <i>vite</i> , quickly.† |

§ 226. ADVERBS OF PLACE AND ORDER.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>ailleurs</i> , elsewhere | <i>dessus</i> , above |
| <i>alentour</i> , around | <i>devant</i> , before, in front |
| <i>à la fois</i> , at once | <i>d'ici</i> , hence |
| <i>à droite</i> , on the right | <i>d'où</i> , whence |
| <i>après</i> , after | <i>en bas</i> , below |
| <i>auprès</i> , near | <i>en haut</i> , above |
| <i>autour</i> , in the neighbourhood | <i>ensemble</i> , together |
| <i>avant</i> , before | <i>environ</i> , here about |
| <i>céans</i> , here, within | <i>ici</i> , here |
| <i>ça et là</i> , up and down | <i>ici bas</i> , here below |
| <i>ci</i> , here | <i>ici près</i> , near here |
| <i>ci-après</i> , hereafter | <i>jusque là</i> , so far |
| <i>d'ailleurs</i> , besides | <i>jusqu'où ?</i> how far ? |
| <i>deçà</i> , on this side | <i>là</i> , there |
| <i>dedans</i> , within | <i>là-bas</i> , yonder |
| <i>dehors</i> , without | <i>là-dedans</i> , within |
| <i>dèlà</i> , thence | <i>là-haut</i> , above |
| <i>derrière</i> , behind | <i>loin</i> , far |
| <i>dessous</i> , under | <i>pêle-mêle</i> , confusedly |

† *Alors* from the Latin *ad illam horam* *jamais* from the Latin *jam magis*
anciennement „ *antiqua mente* *maintenant* „ *manu tenente*
déjà „ *de jam* „ *quando*
demain „ *de mane* „ *souvent* „ *subinde*
depuis „ *de post* „ *tantôt* „ *tantum tostus*
désormais „ *de hora magis* „ *tard* „ *tarde*
hier „ *heri* „ *tôt* „ *tostus* (part. p.
ici „ *jam diu* „ *of torreo*).

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>où</i> , where | <i>près</i> , } near |
| <i>par ici</i> , this way | <i>proche</i> , } |
| <i>par où</i> ? which way | <i>séparément</i> , separately |
| <i>partout</i> , everywhere | <i>y</i> , there, here. † |

Observe. *Alentour* and *autour* (adverb) never have an object. When *autour* is a preposition it is followed by *de* and has an object.

§ 227. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON.

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>aussi</i> , as, also | <i>moins</i> , less |
| <i>autant</i> , as much | <i>néanmoins</i> , nevertheless |
| <i>au moins</i> , at least | <i>pis</i> , worse |
| <i>comme</i> , as, like | <i>plus</i> , more |
| <i>davantage</i> , more | <i>plutôt</i> , rather |
| <i>de même</i> , so | <i>si</i> , so, so very |
| <i>de moins</i> , at least | <i>surtout</i> , above all, especially |
| <i>de plus</i> , moreover | <i>tant</i> , so much |
| <i>encore</i> , still, yet | <i>tant soit peu</i> , ever so little |
| <i>entièrement</i> , entirely | <i>très</i> , very (<i>bien</i> is often used instead) |
| <i>environ</i> , about | <i>trop</i> , too much |
| <i>en sâs</i> , over | <i>trop peu</i> , too little |
| <i>fort</i> , very | <i>un peu</i> , a little. † |
| <i>mieux</i> , better | |

Observe that the *i* of *si* (adverb) is never cut off before a vowel, as it is the case with *si*, if, a conjunction.

| | | |
|---|---------------------------|--------------------|
| † <i>Ailleurs</i> from the Latin <i>aliorum</i> | <i>là</i> from the Latin | <i>illa</i> |
| <i>auprès</i> „ <i>ad pressum</i> | <i>loin</i> „ | <i>longe</i> |
| <i>avant</i> „ <i>ab ante</i> | <i>où</i> „ | <i>ubi</i> |
| <i>dedans</i> „ <i>de, de intus</i> | <i>près</i> „ | <i>pressum</i> |
| <i>derrière</i> „ <i>de retro</i> | <i>proche</i> „ | <i>propius</i> |
| <i>ensemble</i> „ <i>in simul</i> | <i>séparément</i> „ | <i>separatim</i> |
| <i>jusque</i> „ <i>de-usque</i> | <i>y</i> „ | <i>ibi</i> |
| <i>ici</i> „ <i>ecce hic</i> | | |
| ‡ <i>Aussi</i> from the Latin <i>aliud sic</i> | <i>pis</i> from the Latin | <i>pejus</i> |
| <i>autant</i> „ <i>aliud tantum</i> | <i>peu</i> „ | <i>paucus</i> |
| <i>davantage</i> „ <i>de ab ante</i> | <i>plutôt</i> „ | <i>plus tostus</i> |
| <i>fort</i> „ <i>fortis</i> | <i>si</i> „ | <i>sic</i> |
| <i>mieux</i> „ <i>melius</i> | <i>tant</i> „ | <i>tantum</i> |
| <i>moins</i> „ <i>minus</i> | <i>très</i> „ | <i>trans.</i> |

§ 228. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, DOUBT, AND NEGATION.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>assurément</i> , assuredly | <i>ni</i> , nor |
| <i>aucunement</i> , by no means | <i>non</i> , no |
| <i>certainement</i> , certainly | <i>nullement</i> , not at all |
| <i>certes</i> , certainly, indeed | <i>oui</i> , yes |
| <i>en vérité</i> , indeed | <i>peut-être</i> , perhaps |
| <i>ne, ne—pas,</i> } not | <i>si</i> , yes |
| <i>ne—point,</i> } | <i>volontiers</i> , willingly |
| <i>probablement</i> , very likely | <i>vraiment</i> , truly, indeed.† |
| <i>sans doute</i> , without doubt | |

§ 229. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>assez</i> ,* enough | <i>guère</i> ,* but little, but few |
| <i>autant</i> ,* so much | <i>moins</i> ,* less |
| <i>beaucoup</i> ,* much, very much, | <i>peu</i> ,* little, few |
| many | <i>plus</i> ,* more |
| <i>bien</i> , much, many | <i>que</i> * (exclam.), how much, |
| <i>combien</i> ,* how much, how many | how many |
| <i>davantage</i> , more | <i>tant</i> ,* so much, so many |
| <i>environ</i> , about | <i>trop</i> ,* too much, too many.‡ |

Observe that the adverbs of quantity marked thus * take *de* before the following noun or adjective, as: *mon ami a trop de travail*, my friend has too much work.

§ 230. ADVERBS OF QUALITY.

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>ainsi</i> , thus | <i>exprès</i> , on purpose |
| <i>bien</i> , well | <i>mal</i> , badly |
| <i>comment</i> , how | <i>même</i> , even |

† *Certes* from the Latin *certe*
comment " *qua mente*
ni " *nec*

non from the Latin *non*
nullement " *nulla mente*
vraiment " *extra mente*

‡ *Assez* from the Latin *ad satis*
beaucoup " *bellus colaphus*
encore " *in hanc horam*

environ from the Latin *in gyrum*
plus " *plus*

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| <i>notamment</i> , especially | <i>pourtant</i> , | } however.† |
| <i>partant</i> , therefore | <i>toutefois</i> , | |

Bien and *mal* are used in the comparative degree irregularly, and also the adverb of quantity, *peu*. (See § 60.)

§ 231. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-------|-------------------------|
| <i>combien</i> ? how much ? | how | <i>d'où</i> ? whence ? |
| many ? | | <i>où</i> ? where ? |
| <i>comment</i> ? how ? | | <i>pourquoi</i> ? why ? |
| <i>depuis quand</i> ? | } how | <i>quand</i> ? when ? |
| <i>combien y-a-t-il-que</i> ? | | } long ? |

§ 232. Another class of adverbs can be formed from adjectives, by generally adding the termination *ment*,† in English *ly*. They are formed as follows :—

RULE 1. Adjectives ending in a vowel take *ment*, as :—

| |
|--|
| <i> vrai</i> , <i>vraiment</i> , truly |
| <i> joli</i> , <i>joliment</i> , prettily |
| <i> absolu</i> , <i>absolument</i> , absolutely. |

Impuni, unpunished, makes *impunément* ; *traître*, treacherous, makes *traîtreusement*, treacherously.

Eight of these adjectives in order to become adverbs, take an *é* accented before the termination *ment* ; they are :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>aveuglement</i> , blindly | <i>immensément</i> , immensely |
| <i>commodément</i> , commodiously | <i>incommodément</i> , incommodiously |
| <i>conformément</i> , conformably | <i>opiniâtrément</i> , obstinately |
| <i>énormément</i> , enormously | <i>uniformément</i> , uniformly. |

† *Ainsi* from the Latin *in sio*
bien „ *bene*

mal from the Latin *male*
même „ *semetipsissimum*.

‡ We are told by French Grammarians that in order to form adverbs, we have to add the termination *ment*, thus from *bon*, good, we form *bonnement* ; from *cras*, *cruc*, *vraiment*. This termination does not exist in Latin, but we meet in Latin with expressions such as *bonâ mente*, in good faith. We read in Ovid, '*Insistam fortis menti*,' I shall insist with a strong mind or will, I shall insist strongly ; in French '*J'insisterai fortement*'. Therefore what has happened in the growth of Latin, or in the change of Latin into French, is simply this : in phrases such as *fortis mente*, the last word was no longer felt as a distinct word, and it lost at the same time its distinct pronunciation ; *mente*, the ablative of *mens*, was changed into *ment*, and was preserved as a merely formal element, as the termination of adverbs, even in cases where a recollection of the original meaning of *mente* (with a mind) would have rendered its employment perfectly impossible. If we say in French that a hammer falls *lourdement*, we little suspect that we ascribe to a piece of iron a heavy mind."—MAX MÜLLER'S *Lectures on the Science of Languages*, vol. I.

Bellement, softly, *follement*, foolishly, *mollement*, effeminately, and *nouvellement*, newly, are constructed from their feminine form, *belle*, *folle*, *molle*, *nouvelle*.

RULE 2. Adjectives ending in a consonant add *ment* to their feminine form, as :—

long, *longuement*, for a long time
bon, *bonnement*, well
ancien, *anciennement*, anciently.

Except the following, which take an acute accent over the vowel preceding *ment*, as :—

commun, *communément*, commonly
confus, *confusément*, confusedly
importun, *importunément*, importunately
obscur, *obscurément*, obscurely, darkly
précis, *précisément*, precisely
profond, *profondément*, profoundly.

Gentil, forms *gentiment*, prettily; and *profusément*, profusely, exists as an adverb, though there is no adjective *profus*.

RULE 3. Adjectives which terminate in *ant* and *ent*, are turned into adverbs by changing these into *amment*, *emment*, which although differing in orthography are pronounced similarly, as :—

constant, *constamment*, constantly
évident, *évidemment*, evidently.

Excepting :—

lent, *lentement*, slowly
présent, *présentement*, presently
véhément, *véhétement*, vehemently.

§ 233. There are in French a great many compound adverbs, and adverbial phrases, too numerous to be given here. They are generally formed with a preposition and a noun or adjective. A few only follow, as :—

| | | |
|----------------------------|---|---------------------|
| <i>d'abord</i> , at first | } | formed with a noun. |
| <i>d'accord</i> , agreed | | |
| <i>de jour</i> , by day | | |
| <i>de nuit</i> , by night | | |
| <i>à genoux</i> , kneeling | | |
| <i>à plomb</i> , level | | |
| <i>à temps</i> , in time | } | |
| <i>à tâtons</i> , groping | | |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| <i>à sec</i> , without money, dry | } | formed with an adjective. |
| <i>à vide</i> , empty | | |
| <i>d'ordinaire</i> , usually | | |
| <i>en vain</i> , in vain | | |

Sometimes these compound adverbs are formed with a preposition, an article, and a noun, as: *à la fin*, at last; *à la fois*, at once; *à l'instant*, immediately.

Sometimes they have a preposition, and the adjective in the feminine form, as: *à la légère*, lightly; *à droite*, *à gauche*, to the right, to the left.

Observe that the adverb can never be placed between the pronoun and the verb, as it sometimes happens in English, as: *il parlera certainement*, he certainly will speak.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE PREPOSITION.

§ 234. A preposition expresses the relation existing between other words, commonly nouns.

By prepositions we supply the *cases*, which are wanting in the French language; *de*, corresponds often to the genitive and ablative in Latin; *à*, to the dative.

Prepositions can be divided into simple (that is composed of a single word) or compound (formed of two or more words); they all belong to one of the three following classes:—

1. Those requiring no complement.
2. Those requiring *de*.
3. Those requiring *à*.

§ 235. CLASS THE FIRST.

Those requiring no complement.

Simple.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>à</i> , to or at | <i>de</i> , of |
| <i>après</i> , after | <i>dela</i> , thence, beyond |
| <i>attendu</i> , considering | <i>depuis</i> , since |
| <i>avant</i> , before | <i>derrière</i> , behind |
| <i>avec</i> , with | <i>dès</i> , as soon as, from |
| <i>chez</i> , at, among | <i>dessous</i> , under |
| <i>concernant</i> , concerning | <i>dessus</i> , above |
| <i>contre</i> , against | <i>devant</i> , before |
| <i>àans</i> , in | <i>devers</i> , towards |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>durant</i> , during | <i>pendant</i> , during |
| <i>en</i> , in | <i>pour</i> , for |
| <i>entre</i> , between | <i>sans</i> , without |
| <i>envers</i> , towards | <i>sauf</i> , except |
| <i>excepté</i> , except | <i>selon</i> , according to |
| <i>environ</i> , about | <i>sous</i> , under |
| <i>hormis</i> , except | <i>sur</i> , upon |
| <i>joignant</i> , next to | <i>suivant</i> , according to |
| <i>malgré</i> , in spite of | <i>touchant</i> , concerning |
| <i>moyennant</i> , by means of | <i>vers</i> , towards |
| <i>nonobstant</i> , notwithstanding | <i>voici</i> , here is |
| <i>outré</i> , beside | <i>voilà</i> , there is |
| <i>par</i> , by | <i>vu</i> , considering. † |
| <i>parmi</i> , among | |

Observe that the prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en* are repeated before every noun they govern.

Compound.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>à travers</i> , across | <i>par dessous</i> , beneath |
| <i>d'après</i> , according to | <i>par dessus</i> , above |
| <i>de dessus</i> , from above | <i>par deçà</i> , on this side |
| <i>de dessous</i> , from under | <i>par delà</i> , on that side. |

§ 236. CLASS THE SECOND.

Those requiring *de*.

Simple.

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>auprès</i> , near | <i>autour</i> , around |
|----------------------|------------------------|

| + <i>à</i> , from the Latin | <i>ad</i> | enters from the Latin | <i>in</i> versus |
|-----------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <i>avant</i> " | <i>ab ante</i> | <i>malgré</i> " | <i>mala gratia</i> |
| <i>avec</i> " | <i>apud hoc</i> | <i>outré</i> " | <i>ultra</i> |
| <i>chez</i> " | <i>casa</i> | <i>par</i> " | <i>per</i> , or Greek <i>παρά</i> |
| <i>contre</i> " | <i>contra</i> | <i>pour</i> " | <i>pro</i> |
| <i>dans</i> " | <i>de intus</i> | <i>sans</i> " | <i>sine</i> |
| <i>de</i> " | <i>de</i> | <i>sauf</i> " | <i>salvus</i> |
| <i>derrière</i> " | <i>de retro</i> | <i>sous</i> " | <i>sub</i> |
| <i>dés</i> " | <i>de ipso</i> | <i>sur</i> " | <i>super</i> |
| <i>devers</i> " | <i>de versus</i> | <i>vers</i> " | <i>versus</i> |
| <i>en</i> " | <i>in</i> | <i>vu</i> " | <i>visus</i> (p.p. of <i>videre</i>). |
| <i>entre</i> " | | | |

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|--------|
| <i>faute</i> , for want of | <i>près</i> , | } near |
| <i>hors</i> , out of | <i>proche</i> , | |
| <i>loin</i> , far ; | | |

Compound.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <i>à cause</i> , by reason | <i>au dessous</i> , beneath |
| <i>à côté</i> , beside | <i>au dessus</i> , above |
| <i>à l'égard</i> , in regard | <i>au derrière</i> , behind |
| <i>à l'exception</i> , with the excep- tion of | <i>au travers</i> , across |
| <i>à l'instar</i> , in the style of | <i>en deça</i> , on this side |
| <i>au deça</i> , on this side | <i>en dépit</i> , in spite of |
| <i>au delà</i> , beyond | <i>en faveur</i> , in favour of |
| | <i>vis-à-vis</i> , opposite. |

§ 237. CLASS THE THIRD.

Those requiring à.

Simple.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>jusque</i> , up to, till | <i>quant</i> , as to |
| <i>attendant</i> , next, adjoining. | |

Compound.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>par rapport</i> , in regard to | <i>en égard</i> , considering that |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|

CHAPTER IX.

THE CONJUNCTION.

Conjunctions are words used to connect sentences, or parts of sentences, together.

They may be divided into the following three classes:—

§ 238. CLASS THE FIRST.

Those that require the indicative mood.

| | | |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>à cause que,</i> | } because. | <i>car,</i> for, because |
| <i>car,</i> | | <i>comme,</i> as |
| <i>parce que,</i> | | <i>comme si,</i> as if, as though |
| <i>à condition que,</i> on condition | } that | <i>d'autant que,</i> { whereas, for |
| that | | as much as |
| <i>ainsi,</i> thus | } as, just as | <i>depuis que,</i> since, ever since |
| <i>ainsi que,</i> | | <i>donc,</i> than, therefore |
| <i>de même que,</i> | | <i>et,</i> and |
| <i>à mesure que,</i> in proportion as | } joint que, added to that | <i>joint que,</i> added to that |
| <i>après que,</i> after that, when | | <i>lorsque,</i> } when |
| <i>attendu que,</i> as | } quand, | <i>quand,</i> } when |
| <i>au reste,</i> as for the rest | | <i>mais,</i> but |
| <i>autant que,</i> as much | } as soon as | <i>néanmoins,</i> nevertheless |
| <i>aussitôt que,</i> | | <i>ni,</i> neither, nor |
| <i>d'abord que,</i> | | <i>non-seulement,</i> not only |
| <i>dès que,</i> | | <i>or,</i> now |
| <i>sitôt que,</i> | } besides | <i>ou,</i> or |
| <i>au lieu que,</i> whereas | | <i>outré que,</i> } besides |
| <i>aussi long-temps que,</i> as long as | | <i>d'ailleurs,</i> } |
| <i>au surplus,</i> moreover | | <i>par conséquent,</i> consequently |

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>pendant que,</i> | } whilst, while | <i>si,</i> | if |
| <i>tandis que,</i> | | <i>sinon que,</i> | except that |
| <i>peut-être,</i> | perhaps | <i>sinon,</i> | else |
| <i>pourquoi,</i> | } why | <i>soit que,</i> | whether |
| <i>que,</i> | | <i>surtout,</i> | especially |
| <i>pourtant,</i> | however | <i>tant que,</i> | as long as |
| <i>puisque,</i> | since, as | <i>toutefois,</i> | } yet, however |
| <i>que,</i> | that | <i>cependant,</i> | |
| <i>selon que,</i> | } as, according as | <i>vu que,</i> | seeing that. |
| <i>suivant que,</i> | | | |

§ 239. CLASS THE SECOND.

Those that require the subjunctive mood.

| | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>afin que,</i> | } that, to the end | <i>jusqu'à ce que,</i> | till |
| <i>pour que,</i> | | <i>malgré que,</i> | in spite of |
| <i>à moins que,</i> | unless | <i>moyennant que,</i> | provided that |
| <i>au cas que,</i> | } in case that | <i>nonobstant que,</i> | notwith- |
| <i>en cas que,</i> | | standing that, for all that | |
| <i>avant que,</i> | before | <i>non pas que,</i> | } not that |
| <i>bien que,</i> | } though, although | <i>non que,</i> | |
| <i>encore que,</i> | | <i>pour peu que,</i> | } if . . . ever so |
| <i>quoique,</i> | | <i>si peu que</i> | |
| <i>de crainte que,</i> | for fear | <i>pourvu que,</i> | provided |
| <i>de peur que,</i> | lest, for fear | <i>sans que,</i> | without |
| that | | <i>sinon que,</i> | except that |
| <i>hors que,</i> | except | <i>soit que,</i> | whether |
| <i>loin que,</i> | far from | <i>supposé que,</i> | suppose that |

Observe *À moins que, de crainte que, and de peur que,* require also *ne* before the subjunctive mood. When *à moins que* is followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, it requires only *de* and not *ne*.

§ 240. CLASS THE THIRD.

Those that require the present of the infinitive mood.

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| <i>à fin de</i> , for, in order to | <i>de crainte de</i> , } | for fear of |
| <i>à moins de</i> , } | <i>de peur de</i> , } | |
| <i>à moins que de</i> , } | <i>excepté de</i> , except to | |
| <i>au lieu de</i> , instead | <i>faute de</i> , for want of | |
| <i>avant de</i> , } | <i>jusqu'à</i> , till | |
| <i>avant que de</i> , } | <i>plutôt que de</i> , rather.† | |
| <i>bien loin de</i> , very far from | | |

Observe that prepositions are sometimes used as conjunctions, as .
nous avons écrit sans le leur dire, we have written without mentioning it to them.

| | |
|---|---|
| † <i>Car</i> from the Latin <i>qua re</i> | <i>or</i> from the Latin <i>homo</i> |
| <i>comme</i> „ <i>quomodo</i> | <i>ou</i> „ <i>aut</i> |
| <i>d'ailleurs</i> „ <i>de aliorum</i> | <i>puisque</i> „ <i>postquam</i> |
| <i>donc</i> „ <i>tunc</i> | <i>que</i> „ <i>qui</i> |
| <i>et</i> „ <i>et</i> | <i>si</i> „ <i>sit</i> |
| <i>mais</i> „ <i>magis</i> | <i>tandis que</i> „ <i>tam diu quam</i> |
| <i>ni</i> „ <i>ne nec, neque</i> | |

CHAPTER X.

THE INTERJECTION.

§ 241. Interjections are words or mere sounds used to express the various passions of joy, grief, aversion; or exclamations of encouragement, admiration, warning, caution, contradiction, or disbelief, etc., viz. :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Ah!</i> ay | <i>Hélas!</i> alas! |
| <i>Ah bah!</i> oh indeed! | <i>Hem!</i> hem! |
| <i>Aie!</i> oh dear! | <i>Holà, ho!</i> ho, there! |
| <i>Bah!</i> zest! stuff! pooh! | <i>Malheur à!</i> woe to! |
| <i>Bon,</i> good! | <i>Oh!</i> oh! |
| <i>Ça, courage!</i> come, come on! | <i>O ciel!</i> O heaven! |
| <i>Chut!</i> <i>paix!</i> silence! | <i>Paix, chut, st, st!</i> hist, hush! |
| <i>Courage! Allons!</i> come, be cheerful! | <i>Pardonnez-moi,</i> excuse me |
| <i>Fi! fi!</i> fy upon! fy! | <i>Prenez garde! gare!</i> have a care! |
| <i>Gare!</i> take care! | <i>Silence!</i> silence! |
| <i>Ha! quelle joie!</i> Oh, jey! | <i>Si, or si fait,</i> yes, it is so. |

APPENDIX.

RULES FOR PRONUNCIATION.

VOWELS.

The VOWELS are pronounced either long or short, as :

a is long in *pâte*, dough

e „ *tête*, head

i „ *gîte*, den

o „ *rôle*, part

u „ *brûler*, to burn.

a is short in *patte*, paw

e „ *chasse*, chase

i „ *marmite*, kettle

o „ *mode*, fashion

u „ *hutte*, hut.

The *y* has generally the sound of *i*, as : *style*, style; *mystère*, mystery; *jury*, jury; except when coming between two vowels, when it is sounded like two *i*'s, as in *moyens*, means; *joyeux*, joyful; *ayant*, having; pronounced *moi-en*, *joyeux*, *ai-iant*; this is also the case with *pays*, country; *paysan*, countryman; *paysage*, landscape, which are pronounced *pai-is*, *pai-i-sqn*, *pai-i-sage*.

The COMPOUND VOWELS, or sounds produced by the combination of vowels, are :—

ai, as in *mai*, May

aie, „ *haie*, hedge

au, „ *autel*, altar

eai, „ *gai*, jay

eau, „ *peau*, skin

ei, as in *seigneur*, lord

eu, „ *beurre*, butter

æ, „ *œillet*, pink

æu, „ *vœu*, vow

ou, „ *hibou*, owl.

The NASAL VOWELS, generally produced by adding an *n* or *m* to one or more vowels, are :—

an, as in *fange*, mud

am, „ *ambition*, ambition

en, „ *entre*, between

em, „ *emploi*, employment

in, „ *instinct*, instinct

im, „ *impôt*, tax

ain, „ *pain*, bread

aim, as in *faim*, hunger

on, „ *bon*, good

om, „ *comie*, count

eon, „ *pigeon*, pigeon

um, „ *perfum*, perfume

un, „ *un*, one

eun, „ *à jeun*, fasting.

DIPHTHONGS.

DIPHTHONGS are combinations of vowels, which, when pronounced, produce a double sound, they are:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>oi</i> , as in <i>bourgeois</i> , citizen | <i>oi</i> , as in <i>loi</i> , law |
| <i>ia</i> , „ <i>diacre</i> , deacon | <i>oie</i> , „ <i>joie</i> , joy |
| <i>iai</i> , „ <i>biais</i> , slope | <i>oin</i> , „ <i>coin</i> , corner |
| <i>ié</i> , „ <i>pitié</i> , pity | <i>oua</i> , „ <i>douane</i> , custom-house |
| <i>îe</i> , „ <i>lumière</i> , light | <i>ouan</i> , „ <i>louange</i> , praise |
| <i>ian</i> , „ <i>viande</i> , meat | <i>ouin</i> , „ <i>baragouin</i> , gibberish |
| <i>ien</i> , „ <i>lien</i> , bond | <i>oui</i> , „ <i>oui</i> , yes |
| <i>io</i> , „ <i>brioche</i> , bun | <i>ouai</i> , „ <i>je clouai</i> , I nailed |
| <i>ion</i> , „ <i>nation</i> , nation | <i>ue</i> , „ <i>ruelle</i> , alley |
| <i>ieu</i> , „ <i>pieu</i> , stake | <i>uai</i> , „ <i>je remuai</i> , I stirred |
| <i>oe</i> , „ <i>moëlle</i> , marrow | <i>ui</i> , „ <i>nuit</i> , night. |

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE VOWELS.

a is not pronounced in *août*, August; *aoriste*, aorist; *Saône*, the river Saône; and *taon*, ox-fly. The *ai* in the verb *faire* (see § 194) has before an *s* the sound of *e* unaccented.

e is not sounded in *Jean*, John, and *Caen*, Cæen (a town in Normandy). The *ent* of the third person plural of French verbs is sounded like *e* unaccented.

i is not pronounced in *poignard*, dagger; *poignée*, handful; *poignet*, wrist; *moignon*, stump; and *oignon*, onion.

o is not sounded in *faon*, a doe; *Laon*, Laon (a town in the department of the Aisne); and *paon*, a peacock.

u is sounded like *o* in *album*, *opium*, *minimum*, *triumvir*, *parfum*, and *rhum*.

in followed by *n*, and *im* followed by *m* do no longer retain the nasal pronunciation. This is also the case when *in* and *im* are immediately followed by a vowel or *h* mute, as in *innover*, *immoral*, *inoffensif*, *image*, *inhumain*.

Several words are written like the third person plural of the Pres. Indic. of some verbs, though they are differently pronounced, as: *ils différent* and *différent*; *ils adhérent* and *adhérent*; *ils précèdent* and *précédent*, etc. A list of them, with examples, will be found in the APPENDIX of the SYNTAX.

CONSONANTS.

b has the same sound as in English, but is not pronounced in *plomb*, lead; *a plomb*, level. When doubled, as in *sabbat*, *rabbin*, *abbé*, only one *b* is heard.

c has the sound of *k* before *a*, *o*, *u*, as in: *cabaret*, public-house; *colonne*, column; *cube*, cube.

c is sounded like *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, as in *ceinture*, girdle; *cire*, wax; *cygne*, swan.

c before *a*, *o*, and *u* has the sound of *s* when accompanied by a cedilla (*ç*), as *façade*, front; *garçon*, boy; *reçu*, received.

c final is silent in *almanach*, *banc*, form; *blanc*, white; *broc*, jug; *clerc*, clerk; *cric*, jack; *croc*, hook; *accroc*, rent; *escroc*, rogue; *estomac*, stomach; *échecs*, chess; *franc*, frank; *flanc*, side; *jonc*, reed; *porc*, pig; *tabac*, tobacco; *tronc*, trunk; *je vaincs*, I conquer; *tu vaincs*, il *vainc*; *lacs*, nets; *instinct*, instinct; *marc*, eight ounces.

c is sounded like *g* in *second*; *secondement*; *seconder*, to assist.

ch has generally the sound of the English *sh*, as in *chat*, cat; *cheval*, horse; *chapeau*, hat.

ch has the sound of *k* before a consonant, and in many words derived from Greek or Hebrew as in *chœur*, choir; *chaos*; *Chaldée*; *archange*, archangel.

d has the same sound as in English, but at the end of words, before a vowel or *h* mute it takes the sound of *t*, as: *un grand-homme*, a great man, pronounce *un gran-tomme*.

f is generally heard, but silent in *cerf*, stag; *clef*, key; *chef-d'œuvre*, masterpiece; *œuf frais*, new-laid egg; *bœuf gras*, fat cow; and in *œufs*, eggs; *bœufs*, oxen; *nerfs*, nerves. In *neuf*, nine, the *f* is sounded before a vowel or *h* mute. The *f* is also sounded in *un œuf*, *un bœuf*, *un nerf* (except *nerf de bœuf*).

g is sounded hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *gâteau*, cake; *gobelet*, goblet; *guttural*, guttural.

g is sounded like *j* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, as in *agir*, to act; *gentil*, pretty; *gymnase*, gymnasium.

g is mute in *faubourg*, suburb; *Luxembourg*, Luxemburg; *legs*, legacy; *doigt*, finger; *poing*, fist; *vieux-ving*, cart's-grease; *hareng*, herring; *étang*, pond; *vingt*, twenty; *coing*, quince; *seign*, signature, and in *rang*, rank; *long*, long; and *sang*, blood, before a consonant.

gui, is sounded *gu-i* in *aiguille*, needle, and in all words formed with *aigu*, sharp. It is also pronounced *gu-i* in *Guise*, *la Linguistique*.

gn has generally a liquid sound, as in *dignité*, dignity; *vigne*, vine-

yard, except in *stagnant*, *regnicole*, *inexpugnable*, *igné*, *diagnostique*, *agnat*, *cognat*, in which the *gn* is sounded hard. *Signet* is pronounced *sinet*.

h is 'either mute, as in *l'hirondelle*, the swallow, or aspirated, as in *le héros*, the hero.

In the following words and their derivatives the *h* is aspirated:—*Ha!* *hableur* (and its derivatives), *hache* (and its derivatives), *hagard*, *haha*, *hahé*, *haie*, *haïe*, *la Haie*, *haillon*, *haine*, *haineux*, *haïr*, *heïre*, *halage*, *halbran*, *halbrené*, *hâle*, *halenir*, *haler*, *hâler*, *haletant*, *hallage*, *halle*, *hallebarde*, *hallebreds*, *hallier*, *haloir*, *halot*, *halle*, *hamac*, *hameau*, *hampe*, *han*, *hanap*, *hanche*, *hangar*, *hanneton*, *hansse*, *hanscrit*, *hansière*, *hunter*, *hantise*, *happe*, *happ-lourde*, *happer*, *haquenée*, *haquet*, *harangue* (and its derivatives), *haras*, *harasser*, *harceler*, *harder*, *hardes*, *hardiesse* (and its derivatives), *hareem*, *hareng*, *harengaison*, *harengere*, *hargneux*, *haricot*, *haridelle*, *harnacher*, *harnais*, *haro*, *harpiller*, *harpe*, *harper*, *harpie*, *harpin*, *harpon*, *harponner*, *hart*, *hasard* (and its derivatives), *hase*, *hâte*, *hâter* (and its derivatives), *haubans*, *haubert*, *hausse*, *hausse-col*, *hausser*, *hautain*, *haut*, *haute* (and its derivatives), *hâve*, *havr*, *Havre*, *havresac*, *hé!* *heume*, *héler*, *hem!* *hennir*, *hennissement*, *Henri* (in elevated style), *hérald*, *hère*, *hérisser*, *hérisson*, *hernie*, *herneux*, *héron*, *héros*, *her-sage*, *herse* (and its derivatives), *hêtre*, *heurt*, *hourter*, *heurtoir*, *hibou*, *hic*, *hideusement*, *hideux*, *hie*, *hiérarchie*, *hisser*, *ho!* *hobereau*, *hoc*, *hoche*, *hocher* (and its derivatives), *holà!* *Hollande* (and its derivatives), *homard*, *hongre*, *Hongrie*, *honnir*, *honte* (and its derivatives), *hoquet*, *hoqueton*, *horde*, *horion*, *hors*, *hors-d'œuvre*, *hotte*, *Hottentot*, *houblon* (and its derivatives), *hone*, *houille*, *houlette*, *houle*, *houpe*, *houppelande*, *houpper*, *hourdaye*, *houret*, *hour*, *hourvari*, *housard*, *hussard*, *houspiller*, *houssage*, *houssaie*, *housse* (and its derivatives), *houssine*, *houssoir*, *houx*, *hoyau*, *huche*, *hucher*, *hucés* (and its derivatives), *Huguenot*, *huit* (and its derivatives), *humer*, *hune*, *hulier*, *Huns* (a nation), *huppe* (and its derivatives), *hure*, *hurhau*, *hurlement*, *hurler*, *hutte*, *hutter*.

The *h* is mute in words formed from *héros*, such as *héroïne*, *héronique*, *héroïquement*, and *héroïsme*. In *hors-d'œuvre*, a cookery term, the *h* is mute; in *hors-d'œuvre*, a thing one can do without, the *h* is aspirated.

j is always sounded like *s* in *pleasure*, as: *joli*, pretty; *je*, I.

k does properly not belong to the French alphabet; it is only found in words derived from foreign languages, and is then sounded like the *k* in English.

l final is nearly always sounded, as in *soul*, alone; *fil*, thread; but it is not sounded in *baril*, barrel; *chenil*, dog-kennel; *coutil*, tick; *fil*, son;

fusil, gun; *gentil*, pretty; *gril*, gridiron; *nombril*, navel; *outil*, tool; *pouls*, pulse; *persil*, parsley; *soul*, tipsy; *sourcil*, eye-brow.

l is pronounced liquid, something like the *gl* in the English word *séraglio*, in many words with one *l* or two *ll*'s, as in *soleil*, sun; *fil*, daughter; *paille*, straw; *travail*, work, etc.; but the *l* is not liquid in *fil*, thread; *mille*, thousand; *ville*, town; *tranquille*, quiet; *camomille*, camomile; *imbécille*, dunce; *codicille*, codicil; *Achille*, Achilles; *armillaire*, armillary (astr.); *distiller*, to distil; *idylle*, idyl; *pupille*, pupil; *syllabe*, syllable; *vaciller*, to waver; *subtil*, subtle, etc.; nor in words beginning with *ill*, as: *illustre*, illustrious; *illégal*, illegal.

m followed by *b* or *p* has the sound of *n* nasal, as: *empire*, empire; *embrasser*, to embrace.

m final has generally the sound of *n*, as: *faim*, hunger; *parfum*, perfume, etc., except in many proper names, as: *Jérusalem*, *Abraham*.

n is sounded as in English, but often nasal. In the word *Monsieur* it is not heard.

p is sounded as in English, but is generally silent at the end of words, except in *Gap*, (a place); *cap*, cape; *cep*, vine (except *cep de vigne*); and *Alep*, Aleppo. In the body of words it is not heard, as in *baptême*, baptism; *baptiser*, to baptise; *exempt*, exempt; *exempter*, to exempt; *compte*, reckoning; *compter*, to reckon; *dompter*, to subdue; *indomptable*, indomitable; *corps*, body; *temps*, time; *sept*, seven, and its derivatives; *sculpture*, sculpture, *prompt*, ready (of course the last *p* is not sounded), and in the three persons singular of the present indicative of *rompre*, to break.

ph is sounded like *f*, as in *philosophe*, philosopher; *phare*, lighthouse.

q is sounded like *kou* in *aquatique*, aquatic; *aquatile*, aquatic; *aquarelle*, water-colour drawing; *équateur*, equator; *équation*, equation; *in-quarto*, quarto size; *loquacité*, talkativeness; *quaker*, quaker; *quadrupède*, quadruped; *quadruple*, quadruple; *quaterne*, quaternion; *quadragénaire*, a man of forty; *quadrature*, quadrature.

q sounds like *ku* before *i* and *e*, as: *équitation*, horsemanship; *équestre*, equestrian; *questeur*, questor; *questure*, questorship; *quintuple*, five-fold, and a few other words.

r should always be heard at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end of words, as: *trésor*, treasure; *futur*, future; *désir*, desire; *garçon*, boy; *rouge*, red; *rural*, rural; *rare*, seldom, etc. But the final *r* is silent at the end of verbs ending in *er*, except when these verbs are followed by a vowel, as: *parler*, to speak; *parler en vain*, to speak in vain. The final *r* is also not pronounced in words of more than one syllable ending in *ier*, *iers*, *ger*, and *cher*, as: *grenadier*, grenadier; *volontiers*, willingly; *loger*, to lodge; *chercher*, to seek.

Though the *r* is silent in verbs ending in *er*, it is pronounced in the following words. *Alger*, *alger*; *amer*, better; *cancer*, cancer; *cher*, dear; *enfer*, hell; *ether*, ether; *fer*, iron; *fier*, proud; *hier*, yesterday; *magister*, schoolmaster; *mer*, sea; *Niger*, Niger; *frater*, brother; *Lucifer*; *Jupiter*; *Esther*; *Munster*; *stathouder*, stadtholder; *ver*, worm, and in words ending in *erd*, *ers*, and *ert*.

s at the beginning of a word has the same sound as in English, as in *soldat*, soldier; *sage*, wise; *séjour*, abode. When placed between two vowels it has the sound of *z*, as in *rose*, rose; *oser*, to dare, etc., except in a few compound words, as: *parasol*, parasol; *vraisemblance*, likelihood; *monosyllabe*, monosyllable.

s final is heard in *agnus*, *âgnus*; *aloès*, aloe; *as*, ace; *atlas*, atlas; *bis*, again, encore; *blocus*, blockade; *chorus*, chorus; *gratis*, gratis; *hélas*, alas; *hiatus*, hiatus; *jadis*, formerly; *iris*, iris; *laps*, lapse; *lis*, lily; *mœurs*, manners; *ours*, bear; *pathos*, pathos; *prospectus*, prospectus; *rebus*, rebus; *tournevis*, turnscrew; *vis*, screw; *os*, bone, etc.; also in *tous*, used substantively, and in many foreign proper names, as: *Léonidas*, *Venus*, *Gil-Bilas*, etc.

t has two sounds: the first as in the English word *tactic*; the second like *s* in *sound*. In words ending in *ion*, *t* has the sound of *s*, when the ending *tion*, is not directly preceded by *s* or *x*, as: *action*, action; *imitation*, imitation; *bastion*, etc.

t has the sound of *s* in words ending in *tial*, *tiel*, *tient*, *tieux*, as: *partial*, partial; *essentiel*, essential; *patient*, patient; *ambitieux*, ambitious; also in many words ending in *tie*, as: *démocratie*, democracy; *prophétie*, prophecy, etc.

t is also sounded like *s* in the verbs *balbutier*, to stammer; *initier*, to initiate; *différentier*, to differentiate, and in many proper names, as: *Curtius*, *Latium*, *Domitien*, etc.

t is heard in *le Christ* (in *Jésus-Christ* the two last letters are not sounded) and in *dot*, dowry. It is never heard in the conjunction *et*, and.

v has the same sound in French as in English.

w is only heard in sounds derived from foreign languages, as: *Westphalie*, *Wéser*, *Westminster*.

x has the five following different sounds:—

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------|---|
| <i>ks</i> or <i>es</i> , | as in | <i>maxime</i> , maxim; <i>excuse</i> , excuse. |
| <i>gz</i> , | „ | <i>exemple</i> , exemple; <i>examen</i> , examination. |
| <i>ss</i> , | „ | <i>Bruzelles</i> , Brussels; <i>soixante</i> , sixty. |
| <i>k</i> or <i>c</i> , | „ | <i>excellent</i> , excellent; <i>exception</i> , exception. |
| <i>b</i> , | „ | <i>deuxième</i> , second; <i>dixième</i> , tenth. |

z is generally sounded as in English, except in *assez*, enough; *chez*, at; *nez*, nose, etc. It is sounded when final, and followed by a vowel or *h* mute, as: *allez à Paris*, go to Paris.

Observe that as a general rule final consonants, unless followed by a vowel, are always silent in French, except sometimes *c*, *f*, *l*, and *r*, and *s* at the end of words derived from dead or foreign tongues.

UNION OF WORDS.

As a general rule the final consonant of a word is sounded with the initial vowel of the next, whenever the two words must be pronounced together. Before a vowel or *h* mute *s* and *x* have the sound of *z*; *d* has the sound of *t*; *g* has the sound of *k*, and *f* that of *v*, as:—

| | | |
|--|-----------|-----------------------|
| <i>Les amis</i> , the friends, | pronounce | <i>lè-zamis</i> |
| <i>vous avez</i> , you have, | „ | <i>vou-zavez</i> |
| <i>six enfants</i> , six children, | „ | <i>si-zenfants</i> |
| <i>grand homme</i> , great man, | „ | <i>gran-tomme</i> |
| <i>rang inférieur</i> , inferior rank, | „ | <i>ran-kinférieur</i> |
| <i>neuf heures</i> , nine hours, | „ | <i>neu-veures</i> . |

ELISION OF *E* MUTE.

In conversation, and in reading, (except in the pulpit or on the stage) the *e* unaccented is often omitted, as:—

| | | |
|--|-----------|----------------------------|
| <i>Je ne veux rien</i> , I don't wish anything, | pronounce | <i>jen veux rien</i> |
| <i>petit à petit</i> , little by little, | „ | <i>pti tap ti</i> |
| <i>jeune homme</i> , young man | „ | <i>jeu-nomme</i> |
| <i>si je vous le donne</i> , if I give it to you; | „ | <i>sij voul donne</i> |
| <i>tenez le auprès de vous</i> , keep it near you, | „ | <i>tenel auprèd vous</i> . |

TABLE OF THE TERMINATION OF FRENCH REGULAR VERBS.

INFINITIVE.

1. —er; 2. —ir; 3. —oir; 4. —re.

PRESENT PARTICIP.

1 Conj. —ant.
2 „ —issant.
3 „ —ant.
4 „ —ant.

PAST PARTICIP.

1 Conj. —é.
2 „ —i.
3 „ —u.
4 „ —u.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Singular.

1 Conj. —e, —es, —e;
2 „ —is, —is, —it;
3 „ —ois, —ois, —oit;
4 „ —ûs, —ds, —d;

Plural.

—ons, —ez, —ent.

IMPERFECT.

—ais, —ais, —ait, —ions, —iez, —aient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Singular.

1 Conj. —ai, —as, —a;
2 „ —is, —is, —it;
3 „ —us, —us, —ut;
4 „ —is, —is, —it;

Plural.

—âmes, —âtes, —èrent.
—îmes, —îtes, —irent,
—ûmes, —ûtes, —urent.
—îmes, —îtes, —irent.

FUTURE.

—rai, —ras, —ra; —rons, —rez, —ront.

CONDITIONAL.

—rais, —rais, —rait; —rions, —riez, —raient.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | | | |
|---|-------|----|-------|--------|--------------------|
| 1 | Conj. | —, | —e, | —e; | } —ons, —ez, —ent. |
| 2 | „ | —, | —ie, | —isse; | |
| 3 | „ | —, | —ois, | —oive; | |
| 4 | „ | —, | —ds, | —de; | |

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|-------|--------|---------|--------|----------------------|
| 1 | Conj. | —e, | —es, | —e; | } —ions, —icz, —ent. |
| 2 | „ | —isse, | —isses, | —isse; | |
| 3 | „ | —oive, | —oives, | —oive; | |
| 4 | „ | —e, | —es, | —o; | |

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|-----|--------|---------|------|-----------|----------|----------|
| 1 | Con | —asse, | —asses, | —ât; | —assions, | —assiez, | —assent. |
| 2 | „ | —isse, | —isses, | —ît; | —issions, | —issiez, | —issent. |
| 3 | „ | —usse, | —usses, | —ût; | —ussions, | —ussiez, | —ussent. |
| 4 | „ | —isse, | —isses, | —ît; | —issions, | —issiez, | —issent. |

TABLE OF THE CONJUGATION

PRIMITIVE TENSES.

| INFINITIVE PRES. | PART. PRES. | PART. PAST. | IND. PRES. | PRET. DEF.. |
|--|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| FIRST | | | | |
| FIRST | | | | |
| SECOND | | | | |
| aller, <i>to go</i> | allant | allé | je vais | j'allai |
| envoyer, <i>to send</i> | envoyant | envoyé | j'envoie | j'envoyai |
| SECOND | | | | |
| FIRST | | | | |
| assaillir, <i>to assault</i> | assaillant | assailli | j'assaille | j'assailis |
| Conjugate like <i>assaillir</i> , <i>tressaillir</i> , to shudder. | | | | |
| bouillir, <i>to boil</i> | bouillant | bouilli | je bous | je bouillis |
| ouvrir, <i>to open</i> | ouvrant | ouvert | j'ouvre | j'ouvris |
| Conjugate like <i>ouvrir</i> , <i>offrir</i> , to offer; <i>souffrir</i> , to suffer, and verbs formed from these. | | | | |
| sentir, <i>to feel</i> | sentant | senti | je sens | je sentis |
| Conjugate like <i>sentir</i> , <i>dormir</i> , to sleep; <i>partir</i> , to set out; <i>mentir</i> , to lie; <i>servir</i> , to serve; <i>sortir</i> , to go out; <i>se repentir</i> , to repent, and verbs formed from these. <i>Asservir</i> , to enslave, and <i>répartir</i> , to distribute, are conjugated like <i>finir</i> . | | | | |
| vêtir, <i>to clothe</i> | vêtant | vêtu | je vêts | je vêtis |
| SECOND | | | | |
| acquérir, <i>to acquire</i> | acquérant | acquis | j'acquiers | j'acquis |
| Conjugate like <i>acquérir</i> all verbs ending in <i>quéri</i> . | | | | |
| courir, <i>to run</i> | courant | couru | je cours | je courus |
| cueillir, <i>to gather</i> | cueillant | cueilli | je cueille | je cueillis |
| fuir, <i>to flee</i> | fuyant | fui | je fuis | je fus |
| mourir, <i>to die</i> | mourant | mort | je meurs | je mourus |
| tenir, <i>to hold</i> | tenant | tenu | je tiens | je tins |
| Conjugate like <i>tenir</i> , <i>venir</i> , to come, and all verbs formed from these. | | | | |

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

DERIVATIVE TENSES,

EITHER WHOLLY OR PARTLY IRREGULARLY FORMED.

CONJUGATION.

CLASS. *Nons.*

CLASS.

{ Pres. Indic.—*Je vas, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.* Fut.—*J'irai, etc.* Cond.—*J'irais, etc.* Imp.—*Va, allons, allez.* Pres. Subj.—*Que j'aie que tu aies qu'il aie, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.* Fut.—*J'enverrai, etc.* Cond.—*J'enverrais, etc.*

CONJUGATION.

CLASS.

CLASS.

{ Pres. Indic.—*J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons vous acquérez, ils acquièrent, etc.* Fut.—*J'acquerrai, etc.* Cond.—*J'acquerrais, etc.* Pres. Subj.—*Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent.*

Fut.—*Je courrai, etc.* Cond.—*Je courrais, etc.*
 Fut.—*Je cueillerai, etc.* Cond.—*Je cueillerais, etc.*
 { Pres. Indic.—*Ils fuient.* Pres. Subj.—*Que je fuie, que tu fuies, qu'il fuie, que nous fuyions, que vous fuyiez, qu'ils fuient.*
 { Pres. Indic.—*Ils meurent.* Fut.—*Je mourrai, etc.* Cond.—*Je mourrais, etc.*
 { Pres. Subj.—*Que je meure, que tu meures, qu'il meure, que nous mourrions, que vous mourriez, qu'ils meurent.*
 { Pres. Indic.—*Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent.* Fut.—*Je tiendrai, etc.* Cond.—*Je tiendrais, etc.* Pres. Subj.—*Que je tienne, que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne, que nous tenions, que vous teniez, qu'ils tiennent.*

PRIMITIVE TENSES.

| INFINITIVE PRES. | PART. PRES. | PART. PAST. | IND. PRES. | PRET. DEF. |
|----------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| THIRD | | | | |
| FIRST | | | | |
| SECOND | | | | |
| asseoir, <i>to sit</i> | asseyant | assis | j'assis | j'assis |
| mouvoir, <i>to move</i> | mouvant | mu | je meus | je mus |
| pouvoir, <i>to provide</i> | pourvoyant | pourvu | je pourvois | je pourvus |
| pouvoir, <i>to be able</i> | pouvant | pu | je peux | je pus |
| savoir, <i>to know</i> | sachant | su | e sais | je sus |
| valoir, <i>to be worth</i> | valant | valu | je vaux | je valus |
| voir, <i>to see</i> | voyant | vu | je vois | je vis |

Conjugate like *voir*, *prévoir*, *to foresee*, except the fut. and cond., which are *je prévoirai*, *je prévoirais*, etc.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------|-------|---------|-----------|
| vouloir, <i>to be willing</i> | voulant | voulu | je veux | je voulus |
|-------------------------------|---------|-------|---------|-----------|

FOURTH

| | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------|--------|------------|------------|
| FIRST | | | | |
| battre, <i>to beat</i> | battant | battu | je bats | je battis |
| conclure, <i>to conclude</i> | concluant | conclu | je conclus | je conclus |

Conjugate like *conclure*, *exclure*, *to exclude*.

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------|---------|------------|--------------|
| conduire, <i>to conduct</i> | conduisant | conduit | je conduis | je conduisis |
|-----------------------------|------------|---------|------------|--------------|

Conjugate like *conduire*, all verbs ending in *uire*; but *luire*, *to shine*, *nuire*, *to hurt*, and *reluire*, *to glitter*, take in the part. past *lui*, *nu*, and *relui*. *Luire* and *reluire* have no pret. def. and no imp. subj.

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------|--------|-----------|-------------|
| coudre, <i>to sew</i> | cousant | cousu | je couds | je cousis |
| craindre, <i>to fear</i> | craignant | craint | je crains | je craignis |

Conjugate like *craindre* all verbs ending in *aindre*, *eindre*, and *oindre*.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------|-------|---------|-----------|
| écrire, <i>to write</i> | écrivait | écrit | j'écris | j'écrivis |
|-------------------------|----------|-------|---------|-----------|

Conjugate like *écrire* all verbs ending in *crire*.

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| lire, <i>to read</i> | lisant | lu | je lis | je lus |
| maudire, <i>to curse</i> | maudissant | maudit | je maudis | je maudis |
| médire, <i>to slander</i> | médissant | médit | je médis | je médis |

Conjugate like *médire* all compounds of *dire* (except *redire*); also *confire*, *to preserve*; *circoncire*, *to circumcise*, and *suffire*, *to suffice*; the past part. of the two last verbs is *circoncis* and *suffi*.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-------|----------|-----------|
| mettre, <i>to put</i> | mettait | mis | je mets | je mis |
| moudre, <i>to grind</i> | moulant | moulu | je mouds | je moulus |

DERIVATIVE TENSES,

EITHER WHOLLY OR PARTLY IRREGULARLY FORMED.

CONJUGATION.

CLASS. *None.*

CLASS.

{ Pres. Indic.—J'assieds, tu assieds, il assied, nous asseyons, vous asseyez, ils asscient. Fut.—J'assiérai, etc. We say also, j'asseierai, etc. Cond.—J'assnérais, etc. We say also, j'asseierais.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent. Pres. Subj.—Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.

Fut.—Je pourvoirai, etc. Cond.—Je pourvoirais, etc.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je peux or je puis, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent. Fut.—Je pourrai, etc. Cond.—Je pourrais, etc. Pres. Subj.—Que je puisse, etc.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent. Imperf. Indic.—Je savais, etc. Fut.—Je saurai, etc. Cond.—Je saurais, etc. Imper.—Sache, sachez, sachez.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je vauz, tu vauz, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent. Fut.—Je voudrai, etc. Cond.—Je voudrais, etc. No Imperative. Pres. Subj.—Que je vaille que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils valissent. The Pres. Subj. of *présaloir* is regularly formed.

Fut.—Je verrai, etc. Cond.—Je verrais, etc.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent. Fut.—Je voudrai, etc. Cond.—Je voudrais, etc. Imperative.—Veuille, veuillez, only used in the sense of *be so kind as*. Pres. Subj.—Que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veussent.

CONJUGATION.

CLASS.

PRIMITIVE TENSES.

| INFINITIVE PRES. | PART. PRES. | PART. PAST. | IND. PRES. | PRET. DEF. |
|--|------------------------|-------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| naitre, <i>to be born</i> paraître, <i>to appear</i> | naissant paraissant | né paru | je nais je paraïs | je naquis je parus |
| Conjugate like <i>paraître</i> , <i>connaître</i> , to know; <i>croître</i> , to grow; <i>paître</i> , to graze, and their compounds. | | | | |
| plaire, <i>to please</i> | plaisant | plu | je plais | je plus |
| Conjugate like <i>plaire</i> , <i>taire</i> , to conceal, and their compounds. | | | | |
| résoudre, <i>to resolve</i> | résolvant | résolu | je résous | je résolus |
| Conjugate like <i>résoudre</i> , <i>absoudre</i> , to absolve, and <i>dissoudre</i> , to dissolve; the past part. of the two last verbs is <i>absous</i> and <i>dissous</i> , and in the feminine <i>absoute</i> and <i>dissoute</i> . | | | | |
| rire, <i>to laugh</i> | riant | ri | je ris | je ris |
| rompre, <i>to break</i> | rompant | rompu | je romps | je rompis |
| suivre, <i>to follow</i> | suisant | suivi | je suis | je suivis |
| vaincre, <i>to conquer</i> | vainquant | vaincu | je vaincs | je vainquis |
| vivre, <i>to live</i> | vivant | vécu | je vis | je vécus |

SECOND

| | | | | |
|--|---------|------|-----------|---------|
| boire, <i>to drink</i> | buvant | ou | je bois | je bus |
| croire, <i>to believe</i> | croyant | cru | je crois | je crus |
| dire, <i>to say</i> | disant | dit | je dis | je dis |
| <i>Redire</i> , to repeat, is the only one of the compounds of <i>dire</i> conjugated like it. | | | | |
| faire, <i>to do</i> | faisant | fait | je fais | je fis |
| prendre, <i>to take</i> | prenant | pris | je prends | je pris |

Observe that all compounds of verbs are conjugated like the verb from which they are formed, as, *promettre* which is conjugated like *mettre*; *réparer*, like *paraître*, etc. If there are any exceptions, like the compounds of *dire*, they are to be found in the TABLE above. For the defective verbs, see §§ 196-223.

DERIVATIVE TENSES,

EITHER WHOLLY OR PARTLY IRREGULARLY FORMED.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je romps, tu romps, *il rompt*, nous rompons, vous rompez, ils rompent.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je vainc, tu vainc, *il vainc*, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.

CLASS.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, *ils boivent*.
 { Pres. Subj.—*Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive*, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, *qu'ils boient*.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, *ils croient*.
 { Pres. Subj.—*Que je croie, que tu croies, qu'il croie*, que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, *qu'ils croient*.

Pres. Indic.—Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, *vous dites*, ils disent.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons *or faisons*, vous faites, *ils font*. Fut.—*Je ferai*, etc. Cond.—*Je ferais*, etc. Pres. Subj.—*Que je fasse*, etc.

{ Pres. Indic.—Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, *ils prennent*. Pres. Subj.—*Que je prenne, que tu prennes, qu'il prenne*, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, *qu'ils prennent*.

THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

OF THE MASCULINE GENDER.

RULE I.—Substantives of *things*, ending in a *consonant*, are *masculine*.

EXAMPLES.

| | | | |
|--------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------|
| <i>un palais,</i> | a palace | <i>un présent,</i> | a present |
| <i>un bosquet,</i> | a grove | <i>un fruit,</i> | a fruit. |

EXCEPTIONS.

1.—Out of many thousand words, the following *twenty-eight* substantives are *feminine*, viz. :—

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------|
| <i>la boisson,</i> | drink | <i>la hart,</i> | the halter |
| <i>la chair,</i> | flesh | <i>une leçon,</i> | a lesson |
| <i>une chanson,</i> | a song | <i>la main,</i> | the hand |
| <i>une clef,</i> | a key | <i>la mer,</i> | the sea |
| <i>la cour,</i> | the yard or court | <i>la mort,</i> | death |
| <i>une cuillère,</i> | a spoon | <i>la moisson,</i> | harvest |
| <i>la cuisson,</i> | cooking | <i>la nef,</i> | the nave |
| <i>une dent,</i> | a tooth | <i>la nuit,</i> | night |
| <i>une dot,</i> | a portion | <i>la part,</i> | the part |
| <i>la façon,</i> | way or fashion | <i>la rançon,</i> | ransom |
| <i>la faim,</i> | hunger | <i>la soif,</i> | thirst |
| <i>la fin,</i> | the end | <i>une souris,</i> | a mouse |
| <i>une fois,</i> | once | <i>une tour,</i> | a tower |
| <i>une forêt,</i> | a forest | <i>une vis,</i> | a screw. |

And under this same exception must be included the follow

stantives, which, out of the numerous terminations of substantives in our (900), are the only sixty-nine feminine:—

| | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>une aigreur,</i> | an acidity | <i>la lueur,</i> | glimmering |
| <i>une ampleur,</i> | a fulness | <i>la maigreur,</i> | leanness |
| <i>une ardeur,</i> | an ardour | <i>la moiteur,</i> | moistness |
| <i>la blancheur,</i> | whiteness | <i>la noirceur,</i> | blackness |
| <i>la candeur,</i> | candour | <i>une odeur,</i> | a smell |
| <i>la chaleur,</i> | heat | <i>la pâleur,</i> | pallidness |
| <i>la Chandeleur,</i> | candlemas-day | <i>la pesanteur,</i> | weight |
| <i>une clameur,</i> | a clamour | <i>la peur,</i> | fear |
| <i>la couleur,</i> | colour | <i>la primeur,</i> | early things |
| <i>la douceur,</i> | sweetness | <i>la profondeur,</i> | depth |
| <i>la douleur,</i> | pain | <i>la puanteur,</i> | offensive smell |
| <i>une épaisseur,</i> | a thickness | <i>la pudeur,</i> | modesty |
| <i>une erreur,</i> | an error | <i>cette impudeur,</i> | this impudence |
| <i>le fadeur,</i> | insipidity | <i>la rigueur,</i> | rigour |
| <i>la défaveur,</i> | disfavour | <i>la roideur,</i> | stiffness |
| <i>la ferveur,</i> | fervour | <i>la rondeur,</i> | roundness |
| <i>une fleur,</i> | a flower | <i>la rougeur,</i> | redness |
| <i>une passe-fleur,</i> | an anemone | <i>la rousseur,</i> | a sandy colour |
| <i>une sans-fleur,</i> | { a kind of apple and fig | <i>une rumeur</i> | a rumour |
| <i>la fraîcheur,</i> | coolness, freshness | <i>la saveur,</i> | savour |
| <i>la frayeur,</i> | fright | <i>la senteur,</i> | smell |
| <i>la froideur,</i> | coldness | <i>une sœur,</i> | a sister |
| <i>la fureur,</i> | fury | <i>la splendeur,</i> | splendour |
| <i>la grandeur,</i> | grandeur | <i>la sueur,</i> | perspiration |
| <i>la grosseur,</i> | size | <i>la teneur,</i> | tenor |
| <i>la hauteur,</i> | height | <i>la terreur,</i> | terror |
| <i>une horreur,</i> | a horror | <i>la tiédeur,</i> | coolness, coldness |
| <i>une humeur,</i> | a temper | <i>la torpeur,</i> | torpor |
| <i>la laideur,</i> | ugliness | <i>une tumeur,</i> | a tumour |
| <i>la langueur,</i> | langour | <i>la valeur,</i> | valour, value |
| <i>la largeur,</i> | breadth | <i>la non-valeur,</i> | no value |
| <i>la lenteur,</i> | slowness | <i>la vapeur,</i> | vapour |
| <i>la liqueur,</i> | the cordial | <i>la vigueur,</i> | vigour |
| <i>la longueur,</i> | length | <i>les mœurs,</i> | { morals or man- ners. |
| <i>la lourdeur,</i> | heaviness | | |

2.—Substantives ending in *x* or *ion*, and in *son*, the *s* being preceded by a vowel, are *feminine*; as *la paix*, peace; *la nation*, nation; *la maison*, the house.

Except in *x* :—

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>l'anthélix,</i> | the circle of the ear | <i>les marsupiaux,</i> | { the marsupials |
| <i>l'anthrax,</i> | the anthrax (med.) | | { (nat. hist.) |
| <i>les appareils,</i> | { the appurtenances | <i>les matériaux,</i> | the materials |
| | of a ship | <i>le murex,</i> | the murex (fish) |
| <i>le borax,</i> | the borax | <i>l'onyx,</i> | the onyx |
| <i>les carteaux,</i> | the sea charts | <i>l'opopanax,</i> | { the opopanax (a |
| <i>le cérambyx,</i> | the cérambyx (ent.) | | kind of gum). |
| <i>le choix,</i> | the choice | <i>les paraphernaux,</i> | the paraphernalia |
| <i>les choraux,</i> | the choir people | <i>le pharynx,</i> | the pharynx (med.) |
| <i>le cocatrix,</i> | the cockatrice | <i>le phénix,</i> | the phenix |
| <i>le coccyx,</i> | the coccyx | <i>le preux,</i> | the brave |
| <i>un crucifix,</i> | a crucifix | <i>le prix,</i> | the price or prize |
| <i>le courroux,</i> | wrath | <i>le queux,</i> | the master-cook |
| <i>le dix,</i> | the ten | <i>les rayaux,</i> | the moulds |
| <i>le dropax,</i> | the depilatory | <i>le reflux,</i> | the reflux |
| <i>les échaux,</i> | { the channels or fur- | <i>le sain doux,</i> | the hog's lard |
| | rows of a meadow | <i>les sapientiaux,</i> | { the books of |
| <i>l'époux,</i> | the husband | | wisdom |
| <i>l'éryx,</i> | the snake | <i>le silex,</i> | the flint |
| <i>le faix,</i> | the burden | <i>le six,</i> | the six |
| <i>le faux,</i> | the forgery | <i>le sphinx,</i> | the sphinx |
| <i>le flux,</i> | the flux | <i>le storax,</i> | the storax |
| <i>le gabeloux,</i> | the gabel-officer | <i>le styx,</i> | the styx |
| <i>les gémaux,</i> | the twins, gemini | <i>le taux,</i> | the rate |
| <i>les houeaux,</i> | the spatterdashes | <i>le thorax,</i> | the thorax (med.) |
| <i>le houx,</i> | the holly | <i>les universaux,</i> | the universal |
| <i>l'index,</i> | the index | <i>le vertex,</i> | { the summit of |
| <i>le larynx,</i> | the larynx (med.) | | { the head |
| <i>le laryx,</i> | the larch tree | <i>le vitez.</i> | the agnus-castus |
| <i>le lynx,</i> | the lynx | <i>les vitraux,</i> | { the windows of |
| <i>les maïment-</i> | { the ornamental | | a church |
| <i>eaux,</i> | trees | | |

Except in *ion* :—

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|------------------------|--------------|
| <i>un bastion,</i> | a bastion | <i>un pion,</i> | a pawn |
| <i>un brimborion,</i> | a bauble | <i>un scion,</i> | a shoot |
| <i>un champion,</i> | a champion | <i>un scorpion,</i> | a scorpion |
| <i>un gabion,</i> | a gabion | <i>le septentrion,</i> | the north |
| <i>un galion,</i> | a galleon | <i>un stellion,</i> | a lizard |
| <i>un lampion,</i> | a lamp | <i>un tabellion,</i> | a notary |
| <i>un lion,</i> | a lion | <i>le talion,</i> | the requital |
| <i>un million,</i> | a million | | |

Except in *son* :—

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------|
| <i>un oison,</i> | a gosling | <i>le poison,</i> | poison |
| <i>un pison,</i> | a steel-yard | <i>un tison,</i> | a brand. |

RULE II.—Substantives which end in any of the five vowels *a, e, i, o, u*, are *masculine*, provided the *é* be accented.

EXAMPLES.

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>un opéra,</i> | an opera | <i>un duo,</i> | a duet |
| <i>le thé,</i> | tea | <i>un chapeau,</i> | a hat or bonnet |
| <i>un oubli,</i> | a forgetfulness | <i>un tableau,</i> | a picture. |

EXCEPTIONS.

1.—In the termination of the vowel *i*, six words are excepted; and five of the vowel *u*, viz :—

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|-------------------|------------|
| <i>la foi,</i> | faith | <i>cette eau,</i> | this water |
| <i>la loi,</i> | the law | <i>la peau,</i> | skin |
| <i>une après-midi,</i> | an afternoon | <i>la glu,</i> | bird-lime |
| <i>une fourmi,</i> | an ant | <i>une tribu,</i> | a tribe |
| <i>à la merci,</i> | at the mercy | <i>la vertu,</i> | virtue. |
| <i>la paroi,</i> | the partition | | |

2.—In the vowel *é* accented, whenever that *é* is preceded by *t* or *te*, as :—

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------|-------------------|-----------|
| <i>la bonté,</i> | kindness | <i>la pitié,</i> | pity |
| <i>la vérité,</i> | truth | <i>la moitié,</i> | the half. |

Except, however the *ten* following words :—

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--|
| <i>le bénévolé,</i> | { grace (before meals) | <i>un té,</i> | { a furnace (used in war) |
| <i>un comité,</i> | a committee | <i>un aparté,</i> | { aside (when an actor speaks aside) |
| <i>un comté,</i> | a county | | { a resolution or balance of an account. |
| <i>le côté,</i> | the side | <i>un arrêté,</i> | |
| <i>un été,</i> | a summer | | |
| <i>un pâté,</i> | a pie | | |
| <i>un traité,</i> | a treaty | | |

RULE III. The *ten* following terminations, though they have their final in *e* mute, are masculine in every substantive; viz. :—

| | | |
|-------|---------------------|-----------------|
| ABRE, | as <i>un sabre,</i> | a sabre |
| ACLE, | <i>un miracle</i> | a miracle |
| ACRE, | <i>un fiacre,</i> | a hackney-coach |

| | | |
|--------|------------------------|-------------|
| ACTE, | as <i>un acte</i> , | an act |
| ATRE, | <i>un théâtre</i> , | a theatre |
| EGE, | <i>un collège</i> , | a college |
| UGE, | <i>un déluge</i> , | a deluge |
| ISME, | <i>un catéchisme</i> , | a catechism |
| ISTRE, | <i>un ministre</i> , | a minister |
| OME, | <i>un tome</i> , | a volume. |

However, *cataracte*, waterfall, is *feminine*.

RULE IV.—The following substantives are *masculine*, whatever may be their terminations, viz. :—

TREES AND SHRUBS ; except *une yeuse*, a holm-oak ; *une vigne*, a vine ; *épine-vedette*, barberry-tree ; *une épine*, a thorn ; *une aubépine*, a hawthorn ; *une charmille*, a hedge of yoke elm-trees ; *une ronce*, a blackberry-bush ; *une lambruche*, a wild vine ; and *la bourdaine* or *bourgène*, black alder.

METALS ; except *la couperose*, copperas ; and *une ochre*, an ochre.

MINERALS ; a few excepted.

COLOURS ; without even excepting *le feuille-morte*, dead-leaf colour, though the adjective *morte* is used in the feminine.

MOUNTAINS ; except those chairs which have no singular, as *les Alpes*, the Alps ; *les Pyrénées*, the Pyrenees, etc.

WINDS except *la brise*, breeze ; *la bise*, north-east wind ; *la tramontane*, a north-wind ; and *les moussons*, monsoons.

TOWNS ; except those French towns which always have the feminine article *la* prefixed to them, as *la Ferté-sur-Aube*, *la Rochelle*, etc., etc. ; those which end in *e mute* ; also *Jérusalem*, *Sion*, *Albion*, *Ilion*, and every town *personified*.

PAYS, MONTHS, AND SEASONS ; except *automne*, autumn, which is of both genders, though now generally used in the *masculine*.

And every *adjective* and *verb* or other word used *substantively*, as *un impie*, an impious person ; *le boire*, drinking.

EXCEPTIONS.

The names of *months* become *feminine*, when the word *mi*, half, is prefixed to them, as *la mi-Aût*, the middle of August; *la mi-Septembre*, the middle of September; and under this exception may be included the names of *saints'-days* or *holy-days*, as *la Saint-Jean*, Midsummer; *la Saint-Michel*, Michaelmas, *la Toussaint*, All Saints-day, etc.

REMARK.—The names of *states*, *empires*, *kingdoms*, *provinces*, follow the gender of their termination; that is to say, they are *feminine*, if they end in *e mute*; and *masculine* if they end in any other termination, except *le Bengale*, *le Mexique*, *le Péloponnèse*, *le Maine*, *le Rouergue*, *le Bigorre*, *le Vallage*, and *la Franche-Comté*.

SECOND REMARK.—The names of *rivers* follow likewise the gender of their termination: *la Tamise*, the Thames, *le Shannon*, the Shannon, except the names of those large rivers which in French take the name of *fleuve*, and which are always *masculine*, whatever may be their termination: *le Danube*, *le Rhône*, *le Tage*, the Tagus, etc.

OF THE FEMININE GENDER.

GENERAL RULE.—Substantives which end in *e mute*, are *feminine*. (See, however, Rule 3, p. 139.)

EXAMPLES.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------------|------------|
| <i>la tête</i> , | the head | <i>la poitrine</i> , | the breast |
| <i>la bouche</i> , | the mouth | <i>la jambe</i> , | the leg. |

EXCEPTIONS.

1.—The sixteen following terminations, though they constitute the *feminine* gender, have the following exceptions:—

In ACE, except *un espace*, a space.

ADE, except *un grade*, a rank.

ANCE,

ANSE,

ENCE,

ENSE,

} except *le silence*, silence.

EE,

} except *un athée*, an atheist; *un hyménée*, a marriage; *un trophée*, a trophy; and every word derived from the Greek and Latin languages, as: *Athénée*, Athenæum; *apogée*, apogee; *caducée*, caduceus; *coryphée*, corypheus; *Lycee*, Lycæum; *mausolée*, mausoleum; *musée*, museum; *Pyrée*, Pyræum; and *Prytanée*, Prytaneum.

| | |
|-------|---|
| IE, | { except <i>le génie</i> , genius; <i>un incendie</i> , a conflagration; and <i>un parapluie</i> , an umbrella. |
| IÈRE, | except <i>un cimetière</i> , a churchyard; and <i>le derrière</i> , the back. |
| OIE, | except <i>le foie</i> , the liver. |
| UDE, | except <i>un prélude</i> , a prelude. |
| URE, | { except <i>un augure</i> , an omen; <i>un murmure</i> , a murmur; and <i>un parjure</i> , a perjury. |
| LLE, | { except <i>un codicille</i> , a codicil; <i>un intervalle</i> , an interval; and <i>un libelle</i> , a libel. |
| BRE, | { except <i>le beurre</i> , butter; <i>un parterre</i> , a flower-garden or a pit; <i>le tonnerre</i> , thunder; <i>un cimetière</i> , a scymetar; and <i>un verre</i> , a glass. |
| SSE, | except <i>un carrosse</i> , a carriage; and <i>un colosse</i> , a colossus. |

REMARK.—The names of *virtues* are *feminine*, except *le courage*, courage, and *le mérite*, merit.

2.—The *sixteen* following terminations, though ending in *e* mute, constitute the *masculine gender*, with a few exceptions, viz. :—

| | |
|---------|---|
| In ABE, | except <i>une syllabe</i> , a syllable. |
| AGE, | { except six words, viz., <i>une cage</i> , a cage; <i>une image</i> , an image; <i>la nage</i> , swimming; <i>une page</i> , a page of a book; <i>une plage</i> , a flat and low shore; and <i>la rage</i> , rage. |
| APHE, | { except <i>une épigraphe</i> , an epigraph; <i>une épitaphe</i> , an epitaph; and <i>une orthographe</i> , an orthography. |
| AIRE, | { except <i>une affaire</i> , an affair; <i>une aire</i> , a threshing floor; <i>la chaire</i> , the pulpit; <i>une éciaire</i> , a celandine; <i>la haire</i> , hair-cloth; <i>la grammaire</i> , the grammar; <i>une paire</i> , a pair; <i>la pariétaire</i> , pellitory, and other plants ending in <i>aire</i> . |
| AMME, | except <i>la gamme</i> , gamut; and <i>une épigramme</i> , an epigram. |
| AUME, | { except <i>la paume</i> , the palm of the hand, or a game called Tennis. |
| AVE, | { except <i>une betterave</i> , a beet-root; <i>une cave</i> , a cave; and <i>une rave</i> , a radish; <i>entraves</i> , shackles. |
| ÊME, | except <i>la crème</i> , cream; and <i>la mi-carême</i> , mid-lent. |
| ERME, | except <i>une ferme</i> , a farm. |

| | | |
|-----------|---|----|
| ÊTRE, | except <i>une fenêtre</i> , a window; and <i>une gaitre</i> , a gaiter. | • |
| FILE, | { except six words, viz.: <i>une argile</i> , potter's earth; <i>la bile</i> , bile; <i>une file</i> , a file; <i>une pile</i> , a pile, <i>une île</i> , an island; <i>une presqu'île</i> , a peninsula; and <i>une tuile</i> , a tile. | • |
| LISTE, | { except <i>une modiste</i> , a milliner; <i>la batiste</i> , cambric; <i>la liste</i> , the list; and <i>la piste</i> , track. | • |
| ÉCLOGUE, | { except four words, viz.: <i>une drogue</i> , a drug; <i>une églogue</i> , an eclogue; <i>une synagogue</i> , a synagogue; and <i>la vogue</i> , the vogue. | • |
| COULOIRE, | { except nine words, viz.: <i>une armoire</i> , a closet; <i>une écritoire</i> , an inkstand; <i>la gloire</i> , glory; <i>une histoire</i> , a history; <i>la mâchoire</i> , the jaw; <i>une nageoire</i> , a fin; <i>une passoire</i> , a colander; <i>une racloire</i> , a strike; and <i>la victoire</i> , victory. | •• |
| FOUR, | { except <i>une aurore</i> , a dawn; <i>une métaphore</i> , a metaphor; and <i>une pécote</i> , a stupid fellow. | • |

THIRD EXCEPTION,

OR,

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF SUBSTANTIVES,

Which though ending in e mute, are all masculine.

A.

| | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| <i>un abyme</i> , | an abyss | <i>un antipode</i> , | antipode |
| <i>un adepte</i> , | an adept | <i>un antre</i> , | a cave, a cavern |
| <i>un adverbe</i> , | an adverb | <i>un arbitre</i> , | an arbitrator |
| <i>un acrostiche</i> , | an acrostic | <i>un arbre</i> , | a tree |
| <i>un alvéole</i> , | { a cell of bees, socket | <i>un arbuste</i> , | a shrub |
| <i>un amalgame</i> , | an amalgam | <i>un article</i> , | an article |
| <i>cet ambre</i> , | that amber | <i>un artifice</i> , | an artifice |
| <i>un anapest</i> , | an anapest | <i>un astérique</i> , | an asterisk |
| | an angel | <i>un asthme</i> , | an asthma |
| <i>un angle</i> , | an angle | <i>un astre</i> , | a star |
| <i>un animalcule</i> , | smallest insect | <i>un auspice</i> , | an auspice |
| <i>un anonyme</i> , | anonymous person | <i>un automate</i> , | an automaton |
| <i>un antidote</i> , | an antidote | <i>un axe</i> , | an axis |

B

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------|--------|
| <i>un bénéfice,</i> | a benefice | <i>le branle,</i> | motion |
| <i>le blâme,</i> | blame | <i>un buste,</i> | a bust |

C

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| <i>un cable,</i> | a cable | <i>le cilice,</i> | hair-cloth |
| <i>un cadavre,</i> | a corpse | <i>un cloître,</i> | a cloister |
| <i>un cadre,</i> | a frame | <i>un code,</i> | a coda |
| <i>le calibre,</i> | the size | <i>un coffre,</i> | a trunk |
| <i>un calice,</i> | a chalice | <i>un colloque,</i> | a conference |
| <i>le calme,</i> | calm | <i>le commerce,</i> | trade |
| <i>un calque,</i> | a counter-drawing | <i>un concombre,</i> | a cucumber |
| <i>le camphre,</i> | camphor | <i>un cône,</i> | a cone |
| <i>un cantique,</i> | a spiritual song | <i>un congre,</i> | a conger |
| <i>un caprice,</i> | a whim | <i>un compte,</i> | an account |
| <i>le caractère,</i> | character | <i>un comte,</i> | a count |
| <i>un casque,</i> | a helmet | <i>un conte,</i> | a tale |
| <i>un cautère,</i> | a cautery | <i>un contraste,</i> | a contrast |
| <i>un centime,</i> | tenth of a penny | <i>le coude,</i> | the elbow |
| <i>le centre,</i> | the centre | <i>un couvercle,</i> | a lid |
| <i>un cercle,</i> | a circle | <i>le crépuscule,</i> | twilight |
| <i>le change,</i> | change | <i>un crible,</i> | a sieve |
| <i>le chanvre,</i> | hemp | <i>un crime,</i> | a crime |
| <i>un chapitre,</i> | a chapter | <i>un cube,</i> | a cube |
| <i>un chiffre,</i> | a cypher | <i>le culte,</i> | worship |
| <i>le cidre,</i> | cider | <i>un cycle,</i> | a cycle |
| <i>un cierge,</i> | wax taper | <i>un cygne,</i> | a swan |
| <i>un cigare,</i> | a cigar | <i>un cylindre,</i> | a cylinder |

D .

| | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|------------|
| <i>le décompte,</i> | the deduction | <i>un dialecte,</i> | dialect |
| <i>un dactyle,</i> | dactyle | <i>un diamètre,</i> | a diameter |
| <i>un décime,</i> | a penny | <i>un diocèse,</i> | a diocese |
| <i>débris, pl.</i> | rubbish | <i>un disque,</i> | a disk |
| <i>un dédale,</i> | a maze | <i>un distique,</i> | distich |
| <i>le délire,</i> | delirium | <i>un divorce,</i> | a divorce |
| <i>le démerite,</i> | demerit | <i>un dogme,</i> | a dogma |
| <i>un désastre,</i> | a disaster | <i>un domaine,</i> | a domain |
| <i>le désordre,</i> | disorder | <i>un doute,</i> | a doubt |
| <i>le diable,</i> | devil | <i>un drame,</i> | a drama |

E

| | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>un échange,</i> | an exchange | <i>un équilibre,</i> | an equilibrium |
| <i>un édifice,</i> | an edifice | <i>un équinoxe,</i> | an equinox |
| <i>un éloge,</i> | a praise | <i>un erysipèle,</i> | erysipelas |
| <i>un émétique,</i> | an emetic | <i>un esclandre,</i> | a disaster |
| <i>un empire,</i> | an empire | <i>un escompte,</i> | a discount |
| <i>un encombre,</i> | an obstruction | <i>un éventaire,</i> | a flat basket |
| <i>un enthousiasme,</i> | an enthusiasm | <i>un exercice,</i> | an exercise |
| <i>un entr'acte,</i> | an interlude | <i>un évangile,</i> | a gospel |
| <i>un épisode,</i> | an episode | <i>un exorde,</i> | an exordium. |

F

| | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>le faite,</i> | the top | <i>un fleuve,</i> | a great river |
| <i>le faste,</i> | ost ntation | <i>un frontispice,</i> | a frontispiece |
| <i>le flegme,</i> | phlegm | <i>un fratricide,</i> | a fratricide. |

G

| | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <i>le genièvre,</i> | juniper-berry | <i>un glaive,</i> | a sword |
| <i>e genre,</i> | gender | <i>un globe,</i> | a globe |
| <i>le germe,</i> | bud | <i>un globule,</i> | a globule |
| <i>un geste,</i> | a gesture | <i>un gouffre,</i> | a gulph, whirlipool. |

H

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>un hâvre,</i> | haven | <i>un hiéroglyphe,</i> | a hieroglyphic. |
| <i>un hectomètre,</i> | a hundred metres | <i>un holocauste,</i> | a holocaust |
| <i>un hectare,</i> | about two acres | <i>un homicide,</i> | a homicide |
| <i>un hémisphère,</i> | a hemisphere | <i>un horoscope,</i> | a horoscope |
| <i>un hémistich,</i> | an hemistich | <i>un hôte,</i> | a landlord. |

I, J

| | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| <i>un indice,</i> | a sign | <i>un isthme,</i> | an isthmus |
| <i>un infanticide,</i> | an infanticide | <i>un intermède,</i> | interlude |
| <i>un insecte,</i> | an insect | <i>un interstice,</i> | an interstice |
| <i>un interrègne,</i> | an interregnum | <i>le jeûne,</i> | fast. |

L

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>un labyrinthe,</i> | a labyrinth | <i>le linge,</i> | linen |
| <i>le légume,</i> | vegetable | <i>un lustre,</i> | a lustre |
| <i>un lièvre</i> | a hare | <i>le luxe,</i> | luxury, pomp. |

M

| | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>le mâle,</i> | the male | <i>un meuble,</i> | a piece of furniture |
| <i>le maléfice,</i> | witchcraft | <i>un meurtre,</i> | a murder |
| <i>mânes, pl.</i> | manes | <i>le ministère,</i> | ministry |
| <i>un manifeste,</i> | a manifesto | <i>un ministre,</i> | a minister |
| <i>le marbre,</i> | marble | <i>le mobile,</i> | motion |
| <i>un martyr,</i> | a martyrdom | <i>un modèle,</i> | a model |
| <i>un masque,</i> | a mask | <i>un monarque,</i> | a monarch |
| <i>un membre,</i> | a member, limb | <i>le monde,</i> | the world |
| <i>un mélange,</i> | a mixture | <i>un monastère,</i> | a monastery |
| <i>un mélodrame,</i> | a melodrama | <i>le monopole,</i> | monopoly |
| <i>un mensonge,</i> | a falsehood | <i>un monstre,</i> | a monster |
| <i>un merle,</i> | a blackbird | <i>un monticule,</i> | a hillock |
| <i>un mètre,</i> | metre, a measure | <i>un mystère,</i> | a mystery. |

N

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|------------|
| <i>un navire,</i> | a ship | <i>un nautilé,</i> | a nautilus |
| <i>le négoce,</i> | trade | <i>le nombre,</i> | number. |

O

| | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------|
| <i>un obélisque,</i> | an obelisk | <i>un orchestre,</i> | an orchestra |
| <i>l'Olympe,</i> | olympus, sky | <i>un ordre,</i> | an order. |
| <i>un ongle,</i> | a nail | <i>un organe,</i> | an organ |
| <i>un opprobre,</i> | an infamy | <i>un orifice,</i> | an orifice |
| <i>un opuscule,</i> | a little work | <i>un ovale,</i> | an oval. |

P

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| <i>un pacte,</i> | an agreement | <i>le poivre,</i> | pepper - |
| <i>un pampre,</i> | a vine-branch | <i>le pôle,</i> | the pole |
| <i>un paradoxe,</i> | a paradox | <i>un portique,</i> | a portico |
| <i>un paragphe,</i> | a flourish | <i>le pouce,</i> | the thumb |
| <i>un parricide,</i> | a parricide | <i>un précepte,</i> | a precept |
| <i>un participe,</i> | a participle | <i>un précipice,</i> | a precipice |
| <i>un patrimoine,</i> | a patrimony | <i>un préjudice,</i> | a prejudice |
| <i>le pécule,</i> | small sum | <i>un presbytère,</i> | a vicarage |
| <i>le pétale,</i> | the petal | <i>un prestige,</i> | an illusion |
| <i>un peigne,</i> | a comb | <i>un prétexte,</i> | a pretence |
| <i>un pêne,</i> | a bolt | <i>un principe,</i> | a principle |
| <i>le peuple,</i> | people | <i>un prodige,</i> | a prodigy |
| <i>un phénomène,</i> | a phenomenon | <i>un proverbe,</i> | a proverb |
| <i>le Pindé,</i> | Pindus | <i>un pupitre,</i> | a desk. |

R

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>le régicide,</i> | a regicide | <i>un renne,</i> | a rein-deer |
| <i>un régime,</i> | diet, an object | <i>un reproche,</i> | a reproach |
| <i>un règne,</i> | a reign | <i>le reste,</i> | rest, remainder |
| <i>un remède,</i> | a remedy | <i>un rôle,</i> | a part, a character |
| <i>un reptile,</i> | a reptile | <i>un rêve,</i> | a dream |
| <i>le risque,</i> | risk | <i>un rhume,</i> | a cold |

S

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>le sable,</i> | sand | <i>le solstice,</i> | the solstice |
| <i>un sacrifice,</i> | a sacrifice | <i>un songe,</i> | a dream |
| <i>le sacerdoce,</i> | priesthood | <i>le souffle,</i> | breath |
| <i>le salpêtre,</i> | saltpetre | <i>un spectre,</i> | a ghost |
| <i>le scandale,</i> | scandal | <i>un squelette,</i> | a skeleton |
| <i>un sceptre,</i> | a sceptre | <i>un stade,</i> | a stade, furlong |
| <i>un scrupule,</i> | a scruple | <i>le style,</i> | style |
| <i>le seigle,</i> | rye | <i>un subside,</i> | a subsidy |
| <i>un service,</i> | a service | <i>le sucre,</i> | sugar |
| <i>le sexe,</i> | sex | <i>un suicide,</i> | a suicide |
| <i>un siècle,</i> | a century, an age | <i>un supplice,</i> | a torment |
| <i>un signe,</i> | a sign | <i>un sylphe,</i> | a sylph |
| <i>un simple,</i> | simple | <i>le symbole,</i> | the symbol |
| <i>un site,</i> | a site | <i>un synode,</i> | a synod |
| <i>un socque,</i> | wooden patten | <i>un synonyme,</i> | a synonym. |

T

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------|----------------------|------------|
| <i>un télescope,</i> | a telescope | <i>le tropique,</i> | the tropic |
| <i>le terme,</i> | term | <i>le trouble,</i> | trouble |
| <i>un tertre,</i> | a hillock | <i>un tube,</i> | a tube |
| <i>le texte,</i> | text | <i>un tubercule,</i> | tubercle |
| <i>un triangle,</i> | a triangle | <i>le tumulte,</i> | tumult |
| <i>un trône,</i> | a throne | <i>le type,</i> | the type. |

U

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>un ulcère,</i> | an ulcer | <i>un uniforme,</i> | regimental dress |
| <i>un ukase,</i> | an ukase | <i>un utensile,</i> | a utensil. |

V

| | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------|
| <i>un vampire,</i> | a blood-sucker | <i>le ventre;</i> | the stomach |
| <i>un vacarme,</i> | an uproar | <i>un verbe,</i> | a verb |
| <i>un véhicule,</i> | a vehicle | <i>un vertige,</i> | a vertigo |

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------|
| <i>un vestibule,</i> | a hall | <i>le vinaigre,</i> | |
| <i>un vestige,</i> | footstep, remnant | <i>les vivres, pl.</i> | provisions |
| <i>le vice,</i> | vice | <i>un volume,</i> | a volume. |

Z

| | | | |
|-----------------|------|--------------------|---------|
| <i>le zèle,</i> | zeal | <i>le zéphyre,</i> | zephyr. |
|-----------------|------|--------------------|---------|

N.B.—There are a few more, but very little used.

SUBSTANTIVES, MASCULINE IN ONE SIGNIFICATION, AND FEMININE IN ANOTHER.

| MASCULINE IN THE SENSE OF | FRENCH. | FEMININE IN THE SENSE OF |
|---|-------------------|---|
| assistant, helper | <i>aide,</i> | aid, help, support |
| eagle, a great genius | <i>aigle,</i> | a standard |
| love, when used in the singular, or even in the plural, in speaking of little gods | <i>amour,</i> | { love, when used in the plural, if not speaking of little gods |
| an angel | <i>ange,</i> | a kind of thornback |
| an alder-tree | <i>aune,</i> | an ell, a yard |
| a barb, a Barbary horse | <i>barbe,</i> | beard |
| bard, a poet | <i>barde,</i> | { a slice of bacon, 'horse-armour |
| red-breast | <i>berce,</i> | cow-parsnip |
| a sort of privateer | <i>câpre,</i> | caper (a fruit) |
| a scroll or ornament in painting | <i>cartouche,</i> | cartouch, cartridge |
| a caravan, a hoy | <i>coche,</i> | a notch, a sow |
| cornet, a standard-bearer | <i>cornette,</i> | a woman's head-dress |
| when it indicates a particular colour; <i>le couleur de feu</i> , a fiery red; <i>un beau couleur de chair</i> , a beautiful flesh colour | <i>couleur,</i> | { when it is used in its general sense; <i>les couleurs primitives</i> , the primitive colours; <i>une belle couleur</i> , a beautiful colour |
| male and female, man and wife | <i>couple,</i> | a brace, a pair |
| Croat, a Croatian soldier —now we say, <i>Croate</i> | <i>cravate,</i> | a cravat, neckcloth |

| MASCULINE. | FRENCH. | FEMININE. |
|---|--------------------|--|
| a crape | <i>crêpe,</i> | a pancake |
| delight, when used in the singular } | <i>délice,</i> | { delight, when used in the plural |
| an echo | <i>écho,</i> | Echo, a nymph |
| an ensign, an officer | <i>enseigne,</i> | a sign post |
| space of time | <i>espace,</i> | space in printing |
| example, model, instance | <i>exemple,</i> | a copy for writing |
| gimlet, a piercer; <i>foret,</i> } | <i>forêt,</i> | a wood, a forest |
| without accent } | | |
| a large vat, a great war- rior, a great orator } | <i>foudre,</i> | lightning, thunderbolt |
| a cheat, imposter | <i>fourbe,</i> | cheating, imposture |
| keeper, warden | <i>garde,</i> | watch, hilt, nurse |
| hoar frost | <i>givre,</i> | a snake (in heraldry) |
| the rolls, a register | <i>griffe,</i> | a graft |
| gules in heraldry | <i>gueule,</i> | the mouth of beasts |
| guide, director | <i>guide,</i> | reins in driving |
| heliotrope, sunflower | <i>héliotrope,</i> | heliotrope, jasper |
| any song but religious | <i>hymne,</i> | hymn, religious song |
| interline | <i>interligne,</i> | { space between the lines of a book |
| iris, the rainbow, iris of the eye } | <i>iris,</i> | sprig, crystal, a proper name |
| lacker, a kind of varnish | <i>laque,</i> | lacca, gum-lac |
| lily | <i>lis,</i> | <i>lys,</i> a river |
| a book | <i>livre,</i> | a pound |
| a hat of otter's hair | <i>loutre,</i> | an otter |
| handle of a tool | <i>manche,</i> | a sleeve, sea, channel |
| a labourer | <i>manœuvre,</i> | the working of a ship |
| memoir, a bill | <i>mémoire,</i> | memory |
| thanks | <i>merci,</i> | pity, mercy |
| mood, mode | <i>mode,</i> | fashion |
| a pier, or mound | <i>môle,</i> | mole, mooncalf |
| mould, cast, form | <i>moule,</i> | muscle, a shell-fish |
| tackle of pulley | <i>moufle,</i> | mitten, now <i>mitaine</i> |
| a shipboy | <i>mousse,</i> | moss, a plant |
| the philosopher's stone, the work of a musician or of an engraver } | <i>œuvre,</i> | action, an author's work |
| office, business, prayers | <i>office,</i> | pantry, larder, buttery |
| ombre, a game at cards | <i>ombre,</i> | shade, shadow |

| MASCULINE. | FRENCH. | FEMININE. |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>orge mondé</i> , peeled barley, } | <i>orge</i> , | { barley, neither <i>peeled</i> nor |
| <i>orge perlé</i> , pearl barley } | | { <i>pearl</i> |
| organ, when used in the | <i>orgue</i> , | { organ, when used in the |
| singular } | | { plural |
| page of a prince | <i>page</i> , | page in a book |
| a clown | <i>paillasse</i> , | a straw-bed |
| a hand's breadth | <i>palme</i> , | { the branch of a palm-tree, |
| | | { victory |
| pantomime | <i>pantomime</i> , | a dumb show |
| Easter, we oftener write } | <i>pâque</i> , | { the passover, the Lord's |
| <i>pâques</i> : — <i>Pâques est</i> } | | { supper, <i>pâques fleuries</i> , |
| <i>passé</i> , Easter is gone } | | { Palm Sunday |
| a comparison | <i>parallèle</i> , | a parallel |
| a pendulum | <i>pendule</i> , | a clock |
| <i>le Perche</i> , a French province | <i>perche</i> , | pole, perch, a fish |
| summit, highest pitch | <i>période</i> , | period, epoch |
| anybody, nobody (a pronoun) | <i>personne</i> , | a person (a noun) |
| physiognomy | <i>physique</i> , | physics |
| spade, at cards | <i>pique</i> , | a pike |
| gnatsnapper, a bird | <i>pivoine</i> , | peony, a flower |
| a plane-tree | <i>plane</i> , | plane, an instrument |
| platina | <i>platine</i> , | the scutcheon of a lock |
| a stove, a veil | <i>poêle</i> , | a frying-pan |
| post, a military station | <i>poste</i> , | the post for letters |
| punto at cards | <i>ponte</i> , | the laying of eggs |
| purple colour, purples, a } | <i>pourpre</i> , | purple fish, purple dye |
| disease } | | |
| a pretence | <i>prétexle</i> , | pretext, a Roman gown |
| quadrille at cards | <i>quadrille</i> , | { party of horse in a tour- |
| | | { nament |
| the calling back a hawk | <i>réclame</i> , | a catch-word (in printing) |
| rest, relaxation | <i>relâche</i> , | harbour |
| a glass coach | <i>remise</i> , | coach-house, remittance |
| a sort of pear-tree | <i>sans-peau</i> , | a sort of pear |
| Satyr, a sylvan god | <i>satyre</i> , | a satire (ancient), a lampoon |
| scholium, in geometry | <i>scolie</i> , | scholium, commentary |
| serpentarius | <i>serpenteaire</i> , | snake-root, dragon's wort |
| sextus | <i>sextle</i> , | sextle |
| the balance of an account | <i>solde</i> , | soldier's pay |
| nap, slumber | <i>somme</i> , | sum, load, name of a river |
| a smile | <i>souris</i> , | a mouse |

| MASCULINE. | FRENCH. | FEMININE. |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| a porter, a Swiss | <i>suisse,</i> | *Switzerland |
| holder, a book-keeper | <i>teneur,</i> | • tenor, purport, content |
| a tour, turn, trick | <i>tour,</i> | tower, rook at chess |
| triumph | <i>triomphe,</i> | a trump |
| trumpeter | <i>trompette,</i> | trumpet |
| space | <i>vague,</i> | a wave, surge |
| a vase, vessel | <i>vase,</i> | the slime in ponds, lakes, etc. |
| a hat of vigonia wool | <i>vigogne,</i> | a vigon or llama |
| a veil | <i>voile.</i> | a sail |

REMARK.—*Gent*, people, tribe, is feminine in the singular, as *la gent savante*, the learned tribe. *Gens*, people, requires the adjectives which precede it to be put in the feminine gender, and those which follow it to be put in the masculine, as *les vieilles gens sont craintifs*, old people are timorous; *toutes les méchantes gens*, all wicked persons. However, *tous*, all, is used in the masculine, 1st, when it is the only adjective which precedes *gens*, as *tous les gens d'esprit*, every man of talent; 2nd, when the other adjective which precedes *gens* has but one termination for both genders, as *aimable, brave, honnête*, etc., etc.; *tous les honnêtes gens*, every honest man.

SECOND REMARK.—*Chose*, a thing, is generally feminine; *une chose excellente*, an excellent thing. But used with *quelque*, some, it becomes masculine; *Il y a quelque chose de bon*, this is something good. Yet, if *quelque chose* is used in the sense of *quelle que soit la chose*, whatever may be the thing, then *chose* resumes its proper gender, that is to say, it is feminine; *quelque chose qu'il ait dite, on ne l'a pas cru*, whatever thing he may have said, they have not believed him.

PART II.

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

THE ARTICLE.

In the ACCIDENCE (§ 5) we have already mentioned that there are three different sorts of articles, the *definite*, the *indefinite*, and the *partitive*. We will now consider:—

- I. When the definite article is used in French.
- II. When the indefinite is used.
- III. When the partitive is used.
- IV. When no article is used.
- V. Repetition of the article.

I.—THE DEFINITE ARTICLE USED IN FRENCH.

§ 2. The definite article is used in French before all nouns taken in a general as well as in an individual sense:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Le vinaigre est utile dans les maladies</i> | Vinegar is useful in illness |
| <i>L'honneur, la probité, le sens et la raison demandent qu'on s'applique à remplir ses devoirs (Voltaire)</i> | Honour, honesty, good sense, and reason require that one should do one's best to fulfil one's duties. |

§ 3. It follows therefore that the article must be used before names of arts, sciences, virtues, vices, and metals;—

Après le fer, le cuivre est le métal Next to iron, copper is the most
le plus difficile à fondre (Buffon) difficult metal to melt.

§ 4. The article is used before nouns of dignity, title, or profession (when it is generally not used in English):—

Le général Yusuf et le docteur General Yusuf and Doctor
Cabrol descendirent à terre Cabrol landed.
 (de Bazancourt)

§ 5. The definite article is used before the names of countries, provinces, rivers, seas, lakes, mountains, winds, and also before the five divisions of the globe:—

La France, l'Allemagne, la France, Germany, Belgium
Belgique
Les Pyrénées, les Alpes, le The Pyrenees, the Alps, Ve-
Vésuve suvius.

§ 6. REMARK 1.—Some names of islands take also the article, as: *la Sardaigne, la Corse, l'Irlande, les Hébrides, les Antilles*, Sardinia, Corsica, Ireland, etc.; others must have the word *île*, island, placed before them, as: *l'île Saint Thomas, l'île Maurice, les îles Philippines*.

§ 7. REMARK 2.—Generally towns do not take the article, but the following are an exception to the general rule: *l'Orient, la Rochelle, la Ferté, la Haye, la Corogne, la Mecque, le Havre*, etc. (see § 43).

Observe that when countries, used in a general sense, bear the same name as their capital, neither takes the article, as: *j'ai visité Naples, Venise, et Rome*.

§ 8. **Exceptions.**—Names of countries used in an indefinite sense and governed by *en*, or by the verbs *être, aller, venir, sortir, retourner, arriver, and partir* (with *de*); also those used adjectively and governed by *de*, do not take the article:—

Une foule d'objets précieux A great many costly objects
que je n'ai jamais vus en which I have never seen in
France (Vaillant) France
Il a acheté des fruits d'Es- He has bought Spanish fruits
pagne et du fer de Suède and Swedish iron

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Quand Napoléon revint d'E-</i> | When Napoleon returned |
| <i>gypte (Ségur)</i> | from Egypt |
| <i>Le comte d'Artois et ses deux</i> | The Count of Artois and his |
| <i>fil's sortirent de France</i> | two sons left France. |
| (Mignet) | |

§ 9. REMARK 1.—If the name of the country is not used adjectively, the article has again to be used, as : *les fruits de l'Espagne et le fer de la Suède sont les sources les plus fécondes de la richesse de ces pays.* The fruits from Spain and the iron from Sweden are the chief causes of the wealth of those countries.

§ 10. REMARK 2.—But the article is always placed before names of countries in the plural, or before certain distant countries, the latter generally of the masculine gender, as : *le Canada, le Japon, les Indes, le Pérou, les Gaules, le Brésil,* etc., and observe that then, instead of *en*, the declension of the definite article is used, as : *il vient du Canada, nous allons au Japon.*

§ 11. REMARK 3.—In going from one country to another, *en* is used for the English word *to* ; in speaking of towns *à* is employed, as : *il est allé d'Italie en France,* he is gone from Italy to France ; but *il est allé de Londres à Paris.*

Observe that *de* is used in mentioning the setting out from countries as well as from towns.

Observe.—In general, the English national adjective is translated in French, when speaking of some commodity, production, or peculiarity, by the name of the country or city itself ; thus, in the example given, “he has bought Spanish fruits and Swedish iron,” instead of translating *Spanish* by *espagnol*, and *Swedish* by *suédois*, the French national adjective, we say *d'Espagne*, of Spain, and of Sweden, *de Suède*.

Observe that the national adjective never begins, in French, with a capital letter, as in English, except when it commences a sentence.

§ 12. The definite article is used before the names of the days of the week, when determined by some other word or incidental sentence, also before the names of religious festivals, and before the names of ships :—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Il faut sanctifier le dimanche</i> | One must keep holy the Sun- |
| (Académic) | day |

Le mercredi des Cendres

Ash Wednesday

*Le vendredi je partis de bonne
heure de Bruxelles (Jérnin)*

On Friday I left Brussels
early

*À midi l'amiral Hamelin en-
voyait le "Primauguet" avec
une lettre pour l'amiral
Dundas. À trois heures le
"Caton" revint (de Bazan-
court)*

At twelve o'clock admiral
Hamelin sent the "Pri-
mauguet" with a letter for
admiral Dundas. At three
o'clock the "Cato" re-
turned

*Entre ci et la Pentecôte (Mad.
de Sévigné)*

Between this time and Whit-
suntide.

§ 13. REMARK 1.—*Noël*, Christmas, and *Pâques*, Easter, are generally used in a vague sense, and therefore do not take the article. we say, however, *à la Noël*, at Christmas, and as a proverb. *Quand Noël est vert les Pâques seront blanches*, A green Christmas makes a frosty Easter.

REMARK 2.—The names of Saints' days are always preceded by *la*, as : *la St. Michel*, *la St. Jean*, Michaelmas, St. John's day. This *la* is placed there because the word *fête* is understood.

§ 14. The definite article is used before nouns of measure, weight, and, number, when mentioning the price or cost of things, whilst in English *a* or *an* are employed :—

*Ce chocolat se vend trois francs
la livre*

This chocolate is sold for
three francs a pound

*J'ai acheté ce drap trois schel-
lings l'aune*

I bought this cloth at three
shillings a yard.

§ 15. REMARK.—In speaking of what is paid for wages, attendance, admittance to public places, or in reckoning by time, we use in French sometimes the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, but generally in English *a* or *per*, and in French *par* : *cinq schellings par billet*, five shillings a ticket ; *dix fois par semaine*, ten times a week. **Observe** that if the price is not mentioned, the preposition *by* is generally translated by *à*, as : *je les paie à la journée*, *à la pièce*, I pay them by the day, by the piece.

§ 16. The definite article is used before all words employed as substantives :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Les absents</i> (adj.) <i>ont tort</i> (Académie) | Those who are absent are in the wrong |
| <i>Le cinq</i> (numer.) <i>de trèfle</i> (Académie) | The five of clubs |
| <i>Il est plein d'égards pour moi</i> <i>et pour les miens</i> (poss. pron.) (Académie) | He is full of consideration for me and mine |
| <i>Au doux tomber</i> (pres. inf.) <i>du</i> <i>jour</i> (Lamartine) | At the gentle decline of day |
| <i>Il a toujours les si, les mais</i> (conjunct.) (Académie) | He uses always "ifs" and "buts." |

Observe that all words substantively used are masculine.

II.—THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE USED IN FRENCH.

§ 17. The indefinite article is properly only a numeral adjective, and is used to denote a noun in the singular, but also often when nouns, in a general sense, are mentioned:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>César prend le premier une</i> <i>coupe à la main</i> (Racine) | Cæsar is the first to take a cup in his hand |
| <i>On ne saurait nier qu'un</i> <i>homme n'apprenne quand il</i> <i>voyage</i> (Fénelon) | One cannot deny that a man learns many things when he travels. |

§ 18. Sometimes the indefinite article is used with proper names when one person is mentioned as representing the whole race, or when the names of authors or artists are used in the place of their works:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>On y remarquait le comte de</i> <i>Dampierre, un Choiseul,</i> <i>un Castellane, un Colbert</i> (Daunou) | There might be seen the count of Dampierre, a Choiseul, a Castellane, a Colbert |
|--|--|

C'était là qu'on eût pu trouver non pas seulement un Longus, mais un Plutarque, un Diodôre, ou un Polybe (Cuvier) It was there one might have found not only a Longus, but a Plutarch, a Diodorus, a Polybius.

§ 19. The indefinite article can also be used with all parts of speech used as substantives :—

Un dix de carreau A ten of diamonds
Un rien le fâche A nothing makes him angry
Un tiens vaut mieux que deux A bird in the hand is better
, tu l'auras (La Fontaine) than two in the bush; literally, one *take it* is worth more than two *you shall get it*.

III.—THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE USED IN FRENCH.

§ 20. The partitive articles, *du, de la, de l', des*, are used before any noun or any part of speech substantively employed, and signifying a part or a portion of the whole :—

Vous ferez du bien à vous-même (Fénelon) You will do good to yourself
C'est un père qui a du bon et du mauvais (Académie) He is a father who has something good and something bad in him.

§ 21. We have already said in the ACCIDENCE (see § 10) that when an adjective precedes the noun, the preposition *de* only was used: as, *proposons-nous de grands exemples à imiter plutôt que de vains systèmes à suivre* (J. J. Rousseau), let us propose to ourselves great examples to imitate, rather than vain systems to follow. However, the partitive article must be used when we wish to represent the noun in a particular manner, and give a determined sense to it; also when the

adjective and substantive form a compound noun, or are inseparably united :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Ceux qui sont prêts à tout sacrifier sont des vrais amis</i> | Those who are ready to sacrifice everything are true friends |
| <i>Dans chaque pays on trouve des grands seigneurs et des misérables</i> | In every country there are great noblemen and starving people |
| <i>Je veux à la campagne du petit-lait, de bon potage</i> | I want in the country whey and good soup. |

Observe.—The compound nouns most generally used are *amour-propre*, self-love; *beaux-arts*, fine arts; *beaux-esprits*, wits; *belle-mère*, stepmother; *blanc-bec*, greenhorn; *bon-mot*, witticism; *grand-seigneur*, great lord; *jeunes-gens*, young men; *petit-lait*, whey; *petit-maitre*, fop; *petite-maitresse*; *petits-pois*, green peas; *plum-chant*, chant; *rouge-gorge*, robin red-breast.

§ 22. In a negative sentence *de* only is used instead of the partitive article :—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Il n'est point de fierté que le sort n'humilie</i> (Crébillon) | There is no pride which fate does not lower |
| <i>L'ambition, seigneur, n'a pas de limites</i> (Boursault) | Ambition, my lord, has no limits. |

§ 23. **REMARK.**—But when the sentence is not strictly negative, or when the complement is modified by an adjective, the partitive article is used, as : *N'avez-vous pas du pain ?* have you no bread ? meaning, you have bread ; *je n'ai pas des sentiments si bas*, I have not such low feelings.

§ 24. After adverbs of quantity, and collective nouns, generally preceded by *un, une, de* must be used instead of the partitive article :—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Combien de jours avez-vous mis pour faire ce voyage ?</i> (Académie) | How many days have you taken to make this voyage ? |
| <i>Il y avait une foule de spectateurs</i> | There was a crowd of spectators. |

‡ 25. REMARK 1.—When the noun, preceded by a collective substantive or adverb of quantity, is not used in a vague but in a definite sense, the partitive article must be used, as : *un grand nombre des personnes que j'ai vues hier*, a great number of the persons I saw yesterday. *Des* is used here and not *de*, because the noun *personnes* is defined by *que j'ai vues hier*.

REMARK 2.—*Bien* in the sense of *beaucoup*, *la plupart*, and *le plus grand nombre* take the partitive article, as : *bien du vin sera bu ce soir* (C. Delavigne), much wine will be drunk this evening. *Bien* followed by *autres* does not take the article, as : *bien d'autres vous le diront*, many others will tell you so.

IV.—CASES IN WHICH NO ARTICLE IS USED IN FRENCH.

• § 26. (1) No article is used in French before any noun used adjectively, that is, qualifying the noun or pronoun going before (see § 8). Such a noun is generally used with *de*, with *être*, or placed between two commas :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Il est fils de roi</i> | He is a king's son |
| <i>Les beaux-arts sont amis et les muses sont sœurs</i> (Delavigne) | The fine arts are friends and the Muses are sisters |
| <i>Le Phénicien, sacrificateur homicide de Molok</i> (Volney) | The Phœnician who offers up men as a sacrifice to Moloch |
| <i>Il est ministre</i> | He is a secretary of State. |

§ 27. REMARK 1.—But when the noun qualifying the preceding substantive is itself defined, then the article is again used :—

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <i>Le paon est le roi des oiseaux</i> (Buffon) | The peacock is the king of birds |
| <i>Le pain est l'aliment le plus sain</i> (Berquin) | Bread is the healthiest food. |

• § 28. REMARK 2.—The article is also used when the verb *être* has for its nominative the word *ce*, as : *c'est la mère des pauvres* (Académie), she is the mother of the poor.

§ 29. (2) Generally no article is used in proverbial sentences, or in certain old-fashioned phrases :—

Abandon fait larron

Neglect makes the thief

Femme sage est plus que femme

A good woman is better than

belle. (Voltaire)

a handsome woman.

§ 30. (3) No article is used in addressing persons, or things personified :—

*Paraissent, Navarrois, Maures
et Castillans* (Corneille)

Appear, Navarrese, Moors,
and Castilians

*Soldats et marins de l'armée
d'Orient* (Napoléon I^{er})

Soldiers and sailors of the
army in the east.

§ 31. REMARK 1.—Sometimes the article is used to show familiarity or inferiority, as : *L'ami, crois-moi, rentre chez toi* (Victor Hugo), Friend, believe me, go home; *La vieille ! où peut-on se cacher ici ?* (Balzac), Old woman, where can we hide ourselves here ?

REMARK 2.—It is also customary to prefix *monsieur, madame*, &c., to nouns of title or profession, when addressing persons, and then to use the article, as : *monsieur le baron, madame la princesse*.

§ 32. (4) The definite article is generally omitted in enumerations, in order to give more rapidity to the sentence :—

*On joue argent, bijoux, mai-
sons, contrats, honneurs*
(Regnard)

One gambles away money,
jewels, houses, title-deeds,
honours.

§ 33. (5) It is also omitted before ordinals indicating rank or order, also before the titles of books, their number, chapter, and page :—

Charles douze

Charles the Twelfth

Tome cinq, chapitre dix

The fifth volume, the tenth
chapter.

Poésies fugitives de Berquin

The light poetry of Berquin.

• § 34. REMARK 1.—Sometimes the article is used when the author wishes to specify in the title the subject particularly, as : "*Les Misérables*," "*La sorcière*."

REMARK 2.—With the names of sovereigns, and such words as *livre*, *chapitre*, *page*, we use generally *premier* and *second*, but beyond these two, the cardinal numbers *trois*, *quatre*, etc., as: *livre premier*, *Guillaume quatre*, *Henri cinq*, etc.

§ 35. (6) No article is employed after *quel*, *quelle*, what, in exclamations or interrogations:—

Quelle heure est-il ?

What o'clock is it?

Quel air ! quelle disgrâce !

What an air ! what 'a disgrace !

§ 36. (7) It is also omitted when nouns, used in a vague sense, are repeated and governed by a preposition:—

*De larrons à larrons il est bien
des degrés* (Neufchâteau)

There is a great difference be-
tween one thief and another

*Les voilà aux prises, pieds
contre pieds, mains contre
mains* (Fénelon)

Behold them grappling, feet
against feet, hands against
hands.

§ 37. (8) The noun, employed in an indefinite sense, takes no article, when it follows an adjective or participle requiring *de* (see § 89) or *en* (see § 40):—

Son sort est digne d'envie
(Académie)

His lot is enviable

Cet homme est riche en vertus

This man is rich in virtues.

§ 38. (9) It is also omitted when the noun, indefinitely used, is the indirect object of the verbs, *remplir*, to fill; *entourer*, to surround; *garnir*, to furnish; *orne*, to adorn; *border*, to line; *combler*, to load; *couvrir*, to cover; *peupler*, to people, etc.:—

*Cette nouvelle les remplira de
joie*

That news will fill them with
joy

Il est entouré de soldats

He is surrounded by soldiers.

§ 39. (10) The article is not used after such words as : *espèce*, sort; *faute*, fault; *forme*, form; *genre*, species; *mélange*, mixture; *sorte*, kind, etc., when the noun following these words is used in a vague sense :—

Une sorte de fruit qui est mûr A kind of fruit which is ripe
en hiver in winter

Une espèce de bois qui est fort dur A sort of wood which is very hard.

§ 40. (11) The article is suppressed after the words *ni* . . . *ni*, neither . . . *nor*; *soit* . . . *soit*, whether . . . *or*; *ne* . . . *que*, only; *jamais*, never (standing first in a sentence); *en*, as, like a; *entre*, between; *avec*, with; *pour*, for; *par* through; *sur*, upon; *sans*, without; and *comme*, as a, but only when the sense is indeterminate :—

La nature ne fait ni princes, Nature creates neither princes,
ni riches, ni grands seigneurs nor moneyed men, nor great lords.

Les cœurs remplis d'ambition Hearts filled with ambition
sont sans foi et sans honneur are without faith and without honour. •

§ 41. (12) In French as well as in English, the article is suppressed in such expressions as : *soir et matin*, evening and morning; *jour et nuit*, day and night; *corps et âme*, body and soul, etc.

§ 42. (13) No article is used when the verb and the noun form a phrase which expresses only one idea, as :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>ajouter foi</i> , to believe | <i>avoir envie</i> , to desire |
| <i>avoir besoin</i> , to want, to be in need of | <i>avoir faim</i> , to be hungry |
| <i>avoir carte blanche</i> , to have full power | <i>avoir soif</i> , to be thirsty |
| <i>avoir chaud</i> , to be warm | <i>avoir honte</i> , to be ashamed |
| <i>avoir froid</i> , to be cold | <i>avoir patience</i> , to have patience |
| <i>avoir compassion</i> , to have mercy | <i>avoir peur</i> , to be afraid |
| <i>avoir coutume</i> , to be accustomed to | <i>avoir pitié</i> , to pity |
| <i>avoir dessein</i> , to intend | <i>avoir raison</i> , to be in the right |
| | <i>avoir tort</i> , to be in the wrong |

avoir soin, to take care
donner carte blanche, to give full
 power
faire attention, to attend, to mind
faire peur, to frighten
faire plaisir, to oblige
faire semblant, to pretend, to feign
faire tort, to wrong
faire voile, to set sail
mettre fin, to put an end to
parler anglais, to speak English
parler français, to speak French

porter bonheur, to bring good luck
porter malheur, to bring bad luck
porter envie, to bear envy
prendre courage, to take courage
prendre garde, to take care
prendre jour, to appoint a day
prendre patience, to take patience
prendre plaisir, to delight
prendre racine, to take root
rendre visite, to pay a visit
tenir tête, to cope with one, etc.

§ 43. (14) Finally, no article is used before the names of deities, towns (for exceptions see § 7), places, and persons when taken in a general and indeterminate sense :—

Corneille, Racine, et Molière
ont illustré la scène fran-
çaise

Corneille, Racine, and Mo-
 lière have rendered the
 French stage renowned

Napoléon est parti de Valla-
dolid; le 18 il est arrivé à
Burgos et le 19 à Bayonne
 (A. Dumas)

Napoleon set out from Valla-
 dolid; the 18th he arrived
 at Burgos, and the 19th at
 Bayonne.

Exceptions.—But the names of persons do take the article :—

§ 44. 1st. When used as proper names of families, or when they are in the plural, as : *Burons à la santé des Henris* (Béranger), Let us drink the health of the Henrys; *La noble fille des Stuarts*, The noble daughter of the Stuarts.

§ 45. 2nd. To distinguish one individual from others of the same name; also before proper names preceded by an adjective : *le Cromwell de 1650 n'était pas le Cromwell de 1640* (Guizot), the Cromwell of 1650 was not the Cromwell of 1640; *le jeune Edmond*, the young Edmund; *la superbe Gènes*, proud Genoa. **Observe**, that if the adjective comes after a proper noun, the article is placed between, as : *Guillaume le Taciturne*, William the Silent; *Philippe le Bel*, Philip the Fair.

§ 46. 3rd. In speaking of the works of artists or authors, as : *l'Apollon de Pradier*, *le Télémaque de Fénelon*.

47. 4th. Before proper names, taken as specifying a whole class, as :
si tous les hommes étaient des Socrates, la science alors ne leur serait pas nuisible (J. J. Rousseau), if all men were like Socrates, science would then not do them any harm.

§ 48. 5th. The names of a few poets and painters take the article, as :
le Dante, le Tasse, le Camoëns, le Corrège, le Poussin.

Observe that the article remains unchanged in such names, as :
Lefort, Leroux, Lebrun, le Beau, le Vaillant, le Sage, Lamartine, La Touche, La Bruyère, La Fontaine, La Harpe, etc; therefore *j'ai lus les œuvres du Dante, du Tasse, de Lefort, de Lebrun, de le Beau et de le Sage.*

V.—REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE.

§ 49. The articles must be repeated in French before every noun :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Ils croient que les sorciers et les sorcières ont le pouvoir d'attirer les esprits</i> (La Harpe) | They believe that wizards and witches have the power of evoking phantoms. |
|--|---|

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Le cœur, l'esprit, les mœurs tout gagne à la culture</i> (Boileau) | The heart, the mind, the manners, everything gains by culture. |
|---|--|

§ 50. REMARK 1.—The article is not repeated when the same or synonymous objects are mentioned under different names, as : *il en était de même des ministres et grands officiers* (J. J. Rousseau), it was the same with the ministers and great officers of the crown.

REMARK 2.—In narrations the article is also often omitted, and then the last substantive is followed by such words as *personne, tout, rien*, etc., as : *vieillards, femmes, enfants, tout fut égorgé*, old men, women, children, everyone was killed.

§ 51. When two adjectives, united by *et* or *ou*, relate to more nouns than one, but when only one is expressed, the article has to be repeated :—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>L'ancien et le nouveau continent paraissent tous deux avoir été rongés par l'océan</i> (Buffon) | Both the old and the new continent appear to have been partly destroyed by the sea. |
|---|---|

§ 52. But if two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, the article is not repeated :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Voilà le digne et fidèle ami de son maître</i> | Behold the worthy and faithful friend of his master. |
|---|--|

§ 53. The article has to be repeated before superlatives where there are several qualifying one noun :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>La plus grande et la plus importante chose du monde a pour fondement la faiblesse</i> (Pascal) | The greatest and most important thing in the world has weakness for its foundation. |
|--|---|

Observe that this principle of repetition applies also to the words *un, mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, aucun, tout, plusieurs*, etc,

CHAPTER II.

THE SUBSTANTIVE.

IN the ACCIDENCE (§ 11-13) we have already given the rules for the formation of the plural of simple and compound substantives. We will now consider—

- I. The dependence of one substantive on another.
- II. Nouns of multitude.
- III. Nouns different in singular and plural.
- IV. Plural of proper nouns.

I.—ON THE DEPENDENCE OF ONE SUBSTANTIVE ON ANOTHER.

§ 54. THE 's, the sign of the possessive case in English, is always expressed in French by *de* (see ACCIDENCE, § 7):—

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Les livres de ma sœur</i> | My sister's books |
| <i>Le palais du roi</i> | The king's palace: |

REMARK.—When by the 's the words *house*, *dwelling*, etc., are understood, the French use *chez*, as: I was at Mr. Smith's, *j'étais chez M. Smith*; he is gone to his father's, *il est allé chez son père*.

§ 55. If in a compound noun, the first substantive in English expresses the matter, quality, contents, or origin, *de* is generally used, and the second noun in English comes first in French:—

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| -- <i>Des souliers de satin</i> | Satin shoes |
| <i>Du vin de Champagne</i> | Champagne (wine understood) |
| <i>Un chapeau d'été</i> | A summer hat. |

Observe.—*En* must be used when we wish to draw particular attention to the material of which the object is made. We say therefore, *une table d'acajou*, a mahogany table, to distinguish it from other tables, but *une table en acajou*, to show that it is made of mahogany.

§ 56. When the second noun in English expresses use

or purpose, *à* is employed between, and the second noun in English comes first in French :—

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Une chambre à coucher</i> | A bed-room |
| <i>Des armes à feu</i> | Fire-arms |
| <i>Une boîte à thé</i> | A tea-caddy. |

§ 57. *À* is also used when *with* or *having* can be understood :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Une voiture à quatre roues</i> | A four-wheeled carriage |
| <i>Un jardin à terrasses</i> | A garden with terraces |
| <i>Une chaise à porteurs</i> | A sedan-chair. |

§ 58. The article is employed with the preposition *à* (generally contracted in the masculine) before the noun representing some peculiarity of dress or appearance, and also what a person sells, or what is sold in a certain place :—

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>La dame au manteau rouge</i> | The lady with the red cloak |
| <i>L'homme aux yeux noirs</i> | The man with black eyes |
| <i>Le marché aux fleurs</i> | The flower-market. |

§ 59. REMARK.—Some words are simple in French and compound in English, as : *briqueterie*, brick-work ; *cahier*, copy-book ; *chandelier*, candlestick ; *écaillère*, oyster-woman ; *écolier*, school-boy ; *filature*, spinning-mill ; *moutardier*, mustard-pot ; *poirier*, pear tree (and the names of many other trees) ; *restaurant*, eating-house ; *ruche*, bee-hive ; *saladier*, salad-bowl ; *salon*, drawing-room ; *sourcil*, eye-brow, etc.

II.—NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

§ 60. Those nouns which represent the whole of the persons or things mentioned, as *le peuple*, the people ; *la forêt*, the forest ; *l'armée*, the army ; etc., are called *collective general* ; such nouns require that the verb which they govern (as also any adjective or pronoun referring to them) should always, in French, be put in the singular :—

L'armée des infidèles fut dé- faite The army of the infidels was defeated

Le peuple accourait en foule The people hastened in crowds.

§ 61. Such nouns as *une infinité*, a great number; *une foule*, a crowd; *un nombre*, a number; *un millier*, a thousand, etc., are called *partitive collective*, because they nearly always express a part of the whole, an indefinite number. If preceded by the definite article *le, la, les*, the verb of which they are the nominative, as also any adjective or pronoun having reference to them, is generally put in the singular; when preceded by the indefinite *un* or *une*, they usually take the verb in the plural:—

La foule des hommes est asservie à ses passions The generality of men are enslaved by their passions

Un millier d'épées sortiront des fourreaux (Dumas) A thousand swords will leap out of the scabbards.

III.—NOUNS DIFFERENT IN GENDER IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

§ 62. The rules on the gender, as well as a list of Substantives, masculine in one signification and feminine in another, will be found in the Appendix of the ACCIDENCE. In § 25 of the ACCIDENCE, a list of the nouns has been given which have a different meaning in the singular and plural. We now give those nouns which differ in gender and *not* in meaning, in the singular and plural:—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--|--|
| AMOUR, love, affection, masculine, as: <i>un fol amour, un amour insensé</i> | Feminine, as: <i>de folles amours</i> , except when speaking of Cupids |
| AUTOMNE, autumn, masculine and feminine, though the masculine is generally preferred | Must always be masculine, as: <i>des beaux automnes, des automnes pluvieux</i> |

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--|---|
| DÉLICE, delight, masculine, as : <i>c'est un vrai délice</i> | Feminine, as : <i>mes plus chères délices</i> |
| ENFANT, child, masculine and feminine, as : <i>un joli enfant, une belle enfant</i> | Masculine in the plural always, as : <i>ces jeunes filles sont de beaux enfants</i> |
| GENT, people, feminine, as : <i>la gent trotte-menu</i> (La Fontaine), the short-stepping race, the mice | Feminine with regard to the adjective preceding, as : <i>les vieilles gens sont craintifs</i> , old people are timorous. Observe : <i>vieilles</i> precedes and is made feminine, but not <i>craintifs</i> |
| Except when <i>gens</i> is preceded by <i>tous</i> , all, or by an adjective which does not alter in the feminine form, then <i>gens</i> remains masculine, as : <i>tous les habiles gens, tous les gens du pays</i> ; but if the adjective preceding <i>gens</i> has to alter its form for the feminine <i>tous</i> changes also, as : <i>toutes ces bonnes gens</i> . In speaking distinctly of men's business <i>gens</i> remains also masculine, as : <i>les gens d'armes</i> , the men-at-arms; <i>Quels bons gens de lettres!</i> What good literary men! | |
| ORGUE, organ, masculine, as : <i>orgue excellent</i> | Feminine, as : <i>les plus belles orgues, des orgues expressives</i> . N.B.—For the sake of harmony, the French say, <i>un des plus beaux orgues, un des plus grands délices</i> (see <i>Délíce</i>) |
| PÂQUE, the Jewish Passover, feminine, as : <i>la pâque des Juifs</i> | In the plural <i>pâques</i> means the Christian Easter, and is very seldom spelt without an <i>s</i> , as : <i>faire ses Pâques</i> , to take the Sacrament at Easter. If the adjective which follows it is used in the plural, it must always be feminine; if it is used in the singular, masculine, as : <i>à Pâques prochain</i> , but <i>Pâques fleuries</i> , Palm Sunday. |
| VÊPRE, eve, masculine, now obsolete, as : <i>Je donne le bon vêpre à toute la compagnie</i> (Molière), Good eve to all the company | Feminine, vesper, as : <i>les Vêpres Siciliennes</i> , the Sicilian vespers, the name given to the murder of the French in Sicily, in 1282, because it began at Vesper-time |

IV.—PLURAL OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 63. Proper names do not take the sign of the plural, as :—

Jamais les deux Caton n'ont Never have the two Catos
autrement voyagé. travelled in any other way.

Except—

§ 64. (1.) When speaking of an illustrious family, race, or tribe; or when individuals are mentioned who represent a class, as :—

La conjuration des Gracques The conspiracy of the Gracchi
Les Stentors des salons (De- The Stentors of the drawing-
lille) rooms.

§ 65. (2.) Works of engravers or printers, or collected editions of authors, also take the plural, as :—

Les Elzevirs sont toujours The Elzevirs are always much
très-estimés esteemed
J'ai les premiers Plines I have the first Plinys.

§ 66. REMARK 1.—Titles of books do not take the plural sign, as : *trois Virgile, dix La Fontaine, vingt Télémaque*; it would be better to say, *trois exemplaires de Virgile*, etc.

REMARK 2.—The gender of towns varies according to their termination, but when the adjective *tout* precedes a feminine name of a town it never changes, as : *tout Rome l'a vu*, all Rome has seen it.

CHAPTER III.

THE ADJECTIVE.

WE have already said in the ACCIDENCE (§ 32) that there are five classes of adjectives—viz., *qualificative*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *indefinite*, and *numeral*. We will now consider them more particularly:—

QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

- I. Agreement.
- II. Place.
- III. Government.
- IV. Dimension.
- V. Comparison.

I.—THE AGREEMENT OF QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 67. Adjectives and past participles, used as adjectives, agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which they relate:—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>La nature avait fait ce prince</i> | Nature had formed this prince |
| <i>probe et modéré</i> (Lamartine) | honest and not given to excess |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Une fois je (tém.) me serais</i> | For once I should have seen |
| <i>vue riche et parée</i> (Dumas) | myself rich and adorned. |

§ 68. But adjectives used adverbially do not agree:—

| | |
|---|--------------------------|
| <i>Ces livres coûtent cher</i> | These books are dear |
| <i>Ces femmes chantent juste</i> | These women sing in tune |
| <i>La belle</i> (See § 31), <i>tu ne peux</i> | Woman, you cannot walk |
| <i>marcher droit</i> (La Fontaine) | straight. |

§ 69. The adjectives *nu*, naked; *demi*, half; *supposé*, supposed; and *excepté*, excepted, when placed before a substantive, and the adjective *feu*, late, when followed by an article or a possessive adjective, remain also invariable. But if *nu*, *demi*, *supposé*, and *excepté* come after the noun, and if *feu* is preceded by an article, etc., they agree:—

Il était nu-tête et nu-jambes, He was bare-headed and bare-
or Il avait la tête nue et les legged
jambes nues

Hier à dix heures et demie Yesterday at half-past ten

On ne gouverne pas une nation A nation is not governed by
par des demi-mesures half measures

Feu ma sœur, or ma feu sœur My late sister.

Observe.—If *nu*, when placed before the noun, is accompanied by something describing the noun, it agrees, as: *la nue propriété d'un bien*.

§ 70. *Ci-inclus*, enclosed, and *ci-joint*, annexed, are invariable when they begin a phrase, or when they immediately precede a substantive used without an article or a possessive adjective; but they agree when the noun has an article. *Franc de port*, prepaid, is also invariable when preceding the noun:—

Vous trouverez ci-joint copie de You will find annexed a copy
ma lettre et ci-incluse la of my letter, and enclosed
copie du traité the copy of the treaty

Vous recevrez franc de port You will receive, prepaid,
les lettres the letters

Ces lettres sont franches de These letters are prepaid.
port

§ 71. When *possible*, possible, relates to a noun expressed, it agrees; when it relates to an infinitive understood, it is invariable:—

On peut réduire en trois classes One can reduce to three
tous les monstres possibles classes all possible mon-
 sters

Un conquérant exterminé le plus d'hommes possible (understood, qu'il soit possible d'exterminer) A conqueror destroys as many men as he can.

§ 72. An adjective or a past participle qualifying two or more substantives must be in the masculine plural if the nouns are masculine, in the feminine plural if the nouns are feminine, but in the masculine plural only when the substantives are of different genders:—

Pudeur (fem.), *sagesse* (fem.), Modesty, wisdom, laws,
lois (fem. plur.), *mœurs* (fem. plur.), morals, principles, virtues,
principes (masc. plur.), *vertus* (fem. plur.), what has become of you?
qu'étes-vous devenus? (Chamfort.)

Paul et Virginie étaient ignorants (B. de St. Pierre) Paul and Virginia were ignorant.

Exceptions—

§ 73. If the nouns are synonymous the adjective agrees with the last:—

Ulysse était d'une circonspection, d'une prudence étonnante Ulysses possessed an astonishing caution and prudence.

§ 74. If the nouns are connected with *ou*, or, the adjective agrees with the last.—

Ils obtinrent l'estime ou la confiance publique They obtained the public esteem or confidence.

Observe.—Sometimes the adjective takes the plural, as: *On demande un homme ou une femme âgés*, wanted an old man or woman. *Quel est le bon père qui ne gémit de voir son fils ou sa fille perdus pour la société* (Voltaire), every good father laments to see his son or his daughter lost for society.

§ 75. In poetical or oratorical style, when there is a climax:—

Le fer, le bandeau, la flamme The sword, the bandage, the
est toute prête (Racine) fire, are quite ready.

§ 78. Compound adjectives of colour are invariable, as well as the following nouns, used as adjectives of colour: *carmin*, carmine; *aurore*, gold-colour; *jonquille*, jonquil; *pourpre*, purple; *orange*, orange; *ponceau*, flame-colour; *marron*, chestnut-colour; *paille*, straw-colour; and *noisette*, nut-brown:—

Néron avait les cheveux *châtain-clair* Nero had light chestnut hair

*Elle porte toujours une robe
ponceau et des rubans noisette* She always wears a flame-
coloured dress and nut-
brown ribands.

Observe.—*Crimois*, crimson; *écarlate*, scarlet; *mordoré*, reddish-brown and *rose*, rose-pink, have become adjectives, and therefore are variable.

II.—THE PLACE OF QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

We will consider the place of adjectives under three heads:—

- (1). Those that come after the noun.
- (2). Those that precede the noun.
- (3). Those that vary in meaning according as they stand before or after the noun they qualify.

(1). *Qualificative Adjectives coming after the noun.*

§ 77. Adjectives of colour, form, taste, and other physical qualities, also those expressing nationality, are placed after the noun :—

*Une table ronde, un habit bleu,
une robe noire, un bâton
doré, un homme aveugle,
une dame française*

A round table, a blue coat,
a black dress, a gilt stick,
a blind man, a French
lady.

§ 78. All participles of verbs used adjectively are placed after the noun :—

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Un enfant instruit</i> | A well-informed child |
| <i>Une armée vaincue</i> | A conquered army |
| <i>Une pièce interdite</i> | A forbidden comedy. |

§ 79. Also, adjectives modified by an adverb or by something coming after it:—

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Un élève très-paresseux</i> | A very idle pupil |
| <i>Un malheur commun à tous</i> | A misfortune common to all men. |

Observe.—When two or more adjectives relate to the same noun they are usually placed after it, and a conjunction is put before the last, even if there is none in English: as, *un général vaillant, calme et fort*, a brave, calm, strong general.

§ 80. Adjectives of several syllables qualifying nouns of only one syllable:—

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Des lois sévères</i> | Severe laws |
| <i>Un chant délicieux</i> | A delightful song |
| <i>Un ton brusque</i> | An abrupt tone of voice. |

§ 81. Adjectives ending in *esque*, *ique*, and *ule*, as well as those polysyllabic adjectives which do not end in *e*, always come after the noun:—

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Une vue pittoresque</i> | A picturesque view |
| <i>Un esprit classique</i> | A classical mind |
| <i>Une chaise curule</i> | A curule chair |
| <i>Un homme barbu</i> | A bearded man. |

(2). *Qualificative Adjectives preceding the Noun.*

§ 82. Adjectives of one syllable are generally placed before the nouns they qualify:—

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Le vif éclat</i> | The brilliant splendour |
| <i>Un long bâton</i> | A long stick. |

Observe.—They follow when there are two or more monosyllabic adjectives united by the conjunction *et*.

§ 83. When the substantive has an object depending on it, the adjective generally precedes the noun:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>La misérable chaumière de mon domestique</i> | The miserable cottage of my servant |
| <i>Les différentes formes du gouvernement</i> (Chateaubriand) | The different forms of the government. |

§ 84. Adjectives of number, and also the following, generally precede the noun :—

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>bon</i> , good | <i>méchant</i> , wicked |
| <i>beau</i> , fine, handsome | <i>meilleur</i> , better |
| <i>célèbre</i> , celebrated | <i>moindre</i> , less, least |
| <i>cher</i> , dear | <i>nouveau</i> , new |
| <i>commun</i> , general | <i>petit</i> , little |
| <i>digne</i> , worthy | <i>prompt</i> , quick |
| <i>fou</i> , foolish | <i>saint</i> , holy |
| <i>grand</i> , great | <i>sot</i> , silly |
| <i>jeune</i> , young | <i>tel</i> , such |
| <i>joli</i> , pretty | <i>tout</i> , all |
| <i>malhonnête</i> , dishonest | <i>vieux</i> , old |
| <i>mauvais</i> , bad | <i>vilain</i> , ugly. |

§ 85. Adjectives relating to moral qualities may be placed before or after the substantives, as :—

| | |
|--|--------------------|
| <i>Un savoir profond</i> or <i>un profond savoir</i> | A deep knowledge |
| <i>Un ami fidèle</i> or <i>un fidèle ami</i> | A faithful friend. |

(3.) *Qualificative Adjectives which change their meaning according as they stand before or after the noun.*

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| § 86. <i>un bon homme</i> , | a man easily persuaded |
| <i>un homme bon</i> , | a kind, charitable man |
| <i>un brave homme</i> , | an honest man |
| <i>un homme brave</i> , ¹ | a courageous man |

¹ *Brave*, courageous, always precedes any noun, except *homme*, *femme*, *garçon*, etc., as : *ce brave général*, *les braves Amazones*.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>un digne homme,</i> | a worthy man |
| <i>un homme digne,</i> | a dignified man |
| <i>un galant homme,</i> | a complete gentleman |
| <i>un homme galant,</i> | a polite man (<i>gallant</i>) |
| <i>un grand homme,</i> | a great man |
| <i>un homme grand,</i> | a tall man |
| <i>un honnête homme,</i> | an honest man |
| <i>un homme honnête,</i> | a civil man |
| <i>un malhonnête homme,</i> | a dishonest man |
| <i>un homme malhonnête,</i> | an uncivil man |
| <i>un méchant homme,</i> | a dishonourable man |
| <i>un homme méchant,</i> | a wicked man |
| <i>une méchante épigramme,</i> | an epigram without wit |
| <i>une épigramme méchante,</i> | a wicked, sharp pointed epigram |
| <i>une certaine nouvelle,</i> | news requiring confirmation |
| <i>une nouvelle certaine,</i> | news to be depended upon |
| <i>une commune voix,</i> | unanimously |
| <i>une voix commune,</i> | a common voice |
| <i>un cruel homme,</i> | a tiresome, troublesome man |
| <i>un homme cruel,</i> | an inhuman man |
| <i>le droit chemin,</i> | the right road |
| <i>un chemin droit,</i> | a straight road |
| <i>tableau placé dans un faux jour,</i> | picture placed in a wrong light |
| <i>voici un jour faux dans ce tableau,</i> | here is a false light in this picture |
| <i>une fausse clef,</i> | a skeleton key |
| <i>une clef fausse,</i> | a wrong key (in music) |
| <i>une fausse porte,</i> | a back door |
| <i>une porte fausse,</i> | a sham door |
| <i>un furieux bavard,</i> | a great talker |
| <i>un lion furieux,</i> | a furious lion |
| <i>de fortes eaux,</i> | heavy seas |
| <i>des eaux fortes,</i> | acids for etching |
| <i>une forte femme,</i> | a stout woman |
| <i>une femme forte,</i> | a strong woman |

| | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>la dernière semaine,</i> | the last week of all | . |
| <i>la semaine dernière,</i> | the preceding week | |
| <i>avoir le grand air,</i> | to have a highly polished manner | |
| <i>avoir l'air grand,</i> | to look tall | • |
| <i>une grosse femme,</i> | a stout woman | |
| <i>la mer est grosse,</i> | the sea is high | |
| <i>prendre le haut ton,</i> | to assume an arrogant tone | |
| <i>prendre un ton haut,</i> | to speak loud | |
| <i>un jeune homme,</i> | a youth | |
| <i>un homme jeune,</i> | a man who is not old | |
| <i>une longue-vue,</i> | a telescope | |
| <i>une vue longue,</i> | a long sight | |
| <i>un maigre dîner,</i> | a wretched dinner | |
| <i>un dîner maigre,</i> | a fish dinner | |
| <i>la même vertu,</i> | the same virtue | |
| <i>la vertu même,</i> | virtue itself | • |
| <i>avoir un mauvais air,</i> | to have an awkward figure | |
| <i>avoir l'air mauvais,</i> | to look wicked, fierce | |
| <i>du mort bois,</i> | wood which cannot be worked | |
| <i>du bois mort,</i> | dead wood | |
| <i>de morte eau,</i> | dead water | |
| <i>de l'eau morte,</i> | standing water | |
| <i>de nouveau vin,</i> | newly tapped wine, other wine | |
| <i>du vin nouveau,</i> | newly-made wine | • |
| <i>des nouveaux livres,</i> | other books | |
| <i>des livres nouveaux,</i> | newly-printed books | • |
| <i>un nouvel habit,</i> | a new or another coat | |
| <i>un habit nouveau,</i> | a coat of a new fashion | |
| <i>un habit neuf,</i> | a coat just made, very little worn | |
| <i>un pauvre auteur,</i> | an author without genius | |
| <i>un auteur pauvre,</i> | a poor author | |
| <i>un petit homme,</i> | a man of small size | |
| <i>un homme petit,</i> | a mean man | |
| <i>un plaisant homme,</i> | a ridiculous fellow | |
| <i>un homme plaisant,</i> | a facetious man | |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>un plaisant personnage,</i> | an impertinent, despicable fellow |
| <i>un personnage plaisant,</i> | an actor with a merry and witty part |
| <i>un plaisant conte,</i> | a story without probability |
| <i>un conte plaisant,</i> | an amusing story |
| <i>la prochaine semaine,</i> | the following week |
| <i>la semaine prochaine,</i> | the next week |
| <i>un gentilhomme,</i> | a nobleman |
| <i>un homme gentil,</i> | a well-looking man |
| <i>une sage-femme,</i> | a midwife |
| <i>une femme sage,</i> | a virtuous, discreet woman |
| <i>les propres termes,</i> | the very same expressions, words |
| <i>les termes propres,</i> | the proper expressions, words |
| <i>un sale homme,</i> | an obscene man |
| <i>un homme sale,</i> | a dirty man |
| <i>un seul mot,</i> | nothing but a word |
| <i>un mot seul,</i> | a word standing by itself |
| <i>un simple soldat,</i> | a private |
| <i>un soldat simple,</i> | a foolish soldier |
| <i>de simples airs,</i> | tunes, without the words |
| <i>des airs simples,</i> | simple, easy tunes |
| <i>un triste homme,</i> | a bad fellow |
| <i>un homme triste,</i> | a sad man |
| <i>un unique tableau,</i> | one single picture |
| <i>un tableau unique,</i> | an incomparable picture |
| <i>un vilain homme,</i> | an ugly or disagreeable man |
| <i>un homme vilain,</i> | a niggardly man |
| <i>un vrai conte,</i> | a regular untruth |
| <i>un conte vrai,</i> | a true tale |
| <i>beau-père,</i> | father-in-law, step-father |
| <i>père beau,</i> | handsome father |
| <i>belle-mère,</i> | mother-in-law, step-mother |
| <i>mère belle,</i> | handsome mother |
| <i>beau-frère,</i> | brother-in-law, step-brother |
| <i>frère beau,</i> | handsome brother |

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <i>belle-sœur,</i> | sister-in-law, step-sister |
| <i>sœur belle,</i> | handsome sister |
| <i>beau-fils,</i> | son-in-law, step-son |
| <i>fils beau,</i> | handsome son |
| <i>belle-fille,</i> | daughter-in-law, step-daughter |
| <i>filie belle,</i> | handsome daughter or girl |
| <i>petit-fils, petite-fille,</i> | grandson, granddaughter |
| <i>fils petit, fille petite,</i> | son, daughter or girl of small stature |
| <i>grandpère, grand'mère,</i> | grandfather, grandmother |
| <i>père grand, mère grande,</i> | tall father or mother. |

Observe.—The above adjectives, when accompanied by others, resume their literal sense, as : *un grand homme sec*, a tall thin man ; except *beau*, *petit*, and *grand*, prefixed to the last five substantives.

III.—GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 87. Some adjectives require no government, because they have a distinct meaning by themselves ; others, which have a vague meaning, require some preposition before the substantive or noun following :—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Il aime les pommes mûres</i> | He likes ripe apples |
| <i>Nous sommes fâchés contre vous</i> | We are angry with you |
| <i>Il est toujours vertueux</i> | He is always virtuous. |

§ 88. Adjectives expressing aptness, fitness, habit, inclination, disposition, ease, readiness, resemblance, end, or tendency, require the preposition *à* before the complement, as :—

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------|-------------------|-----------|
| <i>accessible,</i> | accessible | <i>alerte,</i> | active |
| <i>adhérent,</i> | adhering | <i>antérieur,</i> | prior |
| <i>adonné,</i> | addicted | <i>âpre,</i> | eager |
| <i>adroit,</i> | clever | <i>ardent,</i> | fiercely |
| <i>agile,</i> | nimble | <i>attentif,</i> | attentive |
| <i>agréable,</i> | pleasant | <i>cher,</i> | dear |

| | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>conforme,</i> | conformable | <i>odieux,</i> | odious |
| <i>contraire,</i> | contrary | <i>pareil,</i> | alike |
| <i>enclin,</i> | inclined | <i>possible,</i> | possible |
| <i>étranger,</i> | foreign | <i>postérieur,</i> | posterior |
| <i>exact,</i> | punctual | <i>préférable,</i> | preferable |
| <i>fatal,</i> | fatal | <i>prêt,</i> | ready |
| <i>favorable,</i> | favorable | <i>prompt,</i> | speedy |
| <i>formidable,</i> | formidable | <i>propice,</i> | propitious |
| <i>funeste,</i> | hurtful, fatal | <i>propre,</i> | fit |
| <i>importun,</i> | importunate | <i>rebelle,</i> | rebellious |
| <i>indifférent,</i> | indifferent | <i>redoutable,</i> | redoubtable |
| <i>ingénieur,</i> | ingenious | <i>semblable,</i> | similar |
| <i>intrépide,</i> | intrepid | <i>sensible,</i> | sensible |
| <i>lent,</i> | slow | <i>sourd,</i> | deaf |
| <i>nécessaire,</i> | necessary | <i>sujet,</i> | subject |
| <i>nuisible,</i> | injurious | <i>vif,</i> | quick, etc., etc. |

§ 89. Adjectives expressing plenty or scarcity, want, capability, absence, satisfaction, desire, separation, require the preposition *de* before their complement, as:—

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>agréable,</i> | agreeable | <i>glorieux,</i> | vain |
| <i>aisé,</i> | easy | <i>gros,</i> | big |
| <i>affané,</i> | starved | <i>heureux,</i> | happy |
| <i>ambitieux,</i> | ambitious | <i>honteux,</i> | ashamed |
| <i>ami,</i> | friendly | <i>impatient,</i> | impatient |
| <i>avide,</i> | eager | <i>inconsolable,</i> | inconsolable |
| <i>capable,</i> | capable | <i>ivre,</i> | intoxicated |
| <i>certain,</i> | certain | <i>jaloux,</i> | jealous |
| <i>complice,</i> | accomplice | <i>joyeux,</i> | merry |
| <i>content,</i> | contented | <i>las,</i> | wearied |
| <i>coupable,</i> | guilty | <i>ménager,</i> | sparing |
| <i>curieux,</i> | curious | <i>mourant,</i> | dying |
| <i>dépendant</i> | dependent | <i>orgueilleux,</i> | proud |
| <i>désireux,</i> | desirous | <i>plein,</i> | full |
| <i>ennemi,</i> | enemy | <i>soigneux,</i> | careful |
| <i>envieux,</i> | envious | <i>soucieux,</i> | anxious |
| <i>esclave,</i> | slave | <i>sûr,</i> | certain |
| <i>exempt,</i> | exempt | <i>tributaire,</i> | tributary |
| <i>fier,</i> | proud | <i>victime,</i> | victim |
| <i>fou,</i> | very fond, mad | <i>vide,</i> | empty |
| <i>furieux,</i> | furious | <i>voisin,</i> | next, etc., etc. |

Observe.—Whenever the verb *être* used unpersonally is joined to an adjective, followed by an infinitive, that adjective takes generally *de*, as: *il est agréable de danser*, it is agreeable to dance (See § 170, Remark 2).

§ 90. Those denoting good or bad feeling towards a person require *envers* before their complement, as:—

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------|------------------------|-------------|
| <i>affable,</i> | affable | <i>ingrat,</i> | ungrateful |
| <i>bon,</i> | good | <i>juste,</i> | just |
| <i>charitable,</i> | charitable | <i>méchant,</i> | wicked |
| <i>clément,</i> | merciful | <i>miséricordieux,</i> | merciful |
| <i>coupable,</i> | guilty | <i>officieux,</i> | officious |
| <i>cruel,</i> | cruel | <i>prodigue,</i> | lavish |
| <i>dur,</i> | harsh | <i>reconnaissant,</i> | grateful |
| <i>généreux,</i> | generous | <i>responsable,</i> | responsible |
| <i>indulgent,</i> | indulgent | <i>sévère,</i> | severe. |

§ 91. The following require *en* before their complement:—

| | | | |
|------------------|----------|------------------|----------|
| <i>abondant,</i> | abundant | <i>ignorant,</i> | ignorant |
| <i>fécond,</i> | fertile | <i>expert,</i> | skilful |
| <i>fertile,</i> | fertile | <i>riche,</i> | rich. |

Observe.—Many adjectives take different prepositions before names of persons and names of things, such are: *redevable, responsable, prodigue, reconnaissant, assidu*, etc. Others do not take the same prepositions before nouns and before infinitives, as: *l'air est nécessaire à la vie, pour vivre; il est nécessaire de travailler*; but practice alone can enable the student to acquire the right use of these prepositions.

IV.—QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

§ 92. In English, adjectives of dimension, such as *long*, long; *large*, wide or broad; *épais*, thick; *haut*, high; *profond*, deep, come after the word of measure. They come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de*, as:—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Une tour haute de sept pieds</i> | A tower seven feet high |
| <i>Un chemin long de vingt pieds</i> | A road twenty feet long. |

We may also let the words remain in French, as in English, and put *de* before the number and before the word of measure or dimension. In this case, the substantive of dimension is often used instead of the adjective, as:—

Une tour de sept pieds de haut, A tower seven feet high
or *de hauteur*

Un chemin de vingt pieûs de A road twenty feet long.
long, or *de longueur* :

4 The French, in general, prefer using the verb *avoir*, the English *to be*, when expressing dimension. *De* is then left out before the number, and the phrase is rendered thus:—

Cette tour a sept pieds de haut, That tower is seven feet high.
or *de hauteur*

Observe.—When there are two or more dimensions mentioned, the conjunction *and* is elegantly expressed by *sur*, as: *une chambre de dix pieds de largeur sur vingt de longueur*, a room ten feet wide and twenty long. In preceding a word of dimension is usually expressed by *de* and not by *dans* or *en*.

V.—DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 93. If there are several adjectives in a sentence, and the first stands in the comparative or superlative degree, those that follow must take the same degree, as:—

Des maux encore plus longs Evils still longer and more
et plus cruels que les siens cruel than his.
(Fénelon)

§ 94. Adjectives in the comparative or superlative degree generally stand after the noun (except those mentioned § 84), as:—

Il se nourrit des légumes les He eats the tenderest and
plus tendres et les plus dé- daintiest vegetables.
licats

REMARK.—Sometimes the adjective in the superlative degree stands before the noun; in that case the article precedes it also, as: *la plus heureuse famille du monde*, the happiest family in the world.

§ 95. *By* after a comparative and before a noun of weight measure, or number must in French always be expressed by *de*, as:—

Il était plus grand de toute la tête, quoiqu'il fût plus jeune de dix ans (Villemain) He was by a whole head taller, though he was younger by ten years.

§ 96. In a comparison, *than* coming before an infinitive is expressed by *que de* or *qu'à*, as:—

Il vaut mieux que vous soyez heureux que de briller à la cour . It is better that you should be happy than to shine at court .

Il est plus disposé à vous nuire qu'à vous obliger He is more inclined to hurt than to oblige you.

§ 97. But after any tense of the indicative *than* is expressed by *que . . . ne* (see § 331), as:—

Il est plus vertueux que vous ne croyez He is more virtuous than you believe

Il est moins beau que vous ne pensez He is less beautiful than you think.

Observe.—The *ne* is omitted when the first part of the sentence is either interrogative or negative, as: *êtes-vous moins fatigué que vous l'étiez*, are you less fatigued than you were? *il n'est pas moins fatigué que vous l'étiez*; but if the subordinate proposition gives a negative meaning *ne* must again be used before the verb, as: *vous êtes moins fatigué que vous ne l'étiez*. *Ne* is also omitted when there is a conjunction between *que* and the verb, as: *je suis meilleur cavalier que quand j'étais en France*, I am a better horseman than when I was in France; *il est plus vertueux que lorsque vous l'avez connu*, he is more virtuous than when you knew him.

§ 98. In a comparison, *than* followed by a numeral adjective is always expressed by *de*, as:—

Nous avons reçu plus de dix livres . We have received more than ten pounds. .

§ 99. The article is not used in French in comparatives of proportion when *the more, the less, the sooner, the later, the longer, the shorter*, etc., are employed, as:—

Plus il a bu, plus il veut boire The more he drinks, the more (Arnault) he wishes to drink

Plus j'y réfléchis, et moins je The more I reflect on this
trouve cette scène naturelle scene, the less natural I
(Voltaire) consider it.

§ 100. The article is invariable in the superlatives *le plus*, *le moins*, *le mieux*, the most, the least, the best, when it modifies an adjective, a verb, or an adverb, as:—

C'est auprès de ses enfants She is most happy when with
qu'elle est le plus heureuse her children
C'est pour le dessin qu'ils They are most happily gifted
sont le plus heureusement for drawing.
doués

§ 101. But the article is variable, if the person or thing is compared to another person or thing, as:—

De toutes les femmes c'est la She is of all women the
plus heureuse happiest
Les arts les plus utiles ne sont The most useful arts are not
pas les plus considérés the most valued.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

We have already spoken of the possessive adjectives in the ACCIDENCE, § 62—§ 65; we shall now give a few more particulars about them.

§ 102. In French we generally use the possessive adjective when addressing any one, as:—

Venez, mes enfants (Berquin) Come, my children
Comptent, mon cher comte, vous What, dear count, you are
êtes marié ? (Scribe) married?

§ 103. But when speaking of any one with whom we are not intimate, *monsieur*, *madame*, *mademoiselle* must be used before the possessive adjective, as:—

Monsieur votre frère est-il chez Is your brother at home?
lui ?

§ 104. Whenever the sense clearly points out who is the

possessor, or whenever a reflexive verb is used, the definite article is employed instead of the possessive adjective, as:—

Ouvrez les yeux

Open your eyes

Il s'est blessé au bras

He has hurt his arm.

§ 105. REMARK 1.—When we want to give greater force to the expression we use the possessive adjective, as: *ouvrez vos yeux, songez qu'Oreste est devant vous* (Racine), open your eyes, think that Orestes is before you. We also employ the possessive adjective to speak of something happening often or periodically, or when we wish to draw attention to the object; there is thus a difference between *j'ai ma migraine*, I have my (habitual) headache, and *j'ai la migraine*; between *je souffre à mon bras*, my arm pains me, and *je souffre au bras*. Observe.—*À* is generally used when speaking of feeling produced in any part of the body, as in the above example: *il s'est blessé au bras; je souffre au bras*; also *il a froid aux mains*, he has cold hands. *Couper au doigt*, means to cut the finger slightly; *couper le doigt*, to cut the finger off.

§ 106. REMARK 2.—When we speak of a part of the body which is used as nominative or subject to the verb, the possessive adjective must generally be used, as: *son pied est enflé*, his foot is swollen.

§ 107. The definite article *le, la, les* is also used in speaking of an action over any part of the body or intellectual faculty, and the person on whom the action thus falls, is represented by a conjunctive pronoun in the dative case, as:—

*Un boulet de canon lui emporta
la jambe*

A cannon-ball carried away
his leg

Il m'a tâté le pouls

He felt my pulse.

§ 108. *Its* and *their*, relating to inanimate things, are always expressed by *en* before the verb, and by placing the article before the noun, as:—

*Londres est une grande ville;
la situation en est très-com-
mode pour le commerce*

London is a large town; its
situation is very convenient
for trade.

But when *its* and *their* are preceded in English by a preposition, or are nominative to any verb (except *être*) in a sentence of two or more members, *son, sa, ses, leur, or leurs* must be used, as:—

Londres est une grande ville ; London is a large town ; I
j'admire la largeur de ses admire the size of its
rues ; son commerce produit streets ; its trade produces
d'immenses ressources immense resources. ;

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 109. These adjectives always precede the substantive, and must be repeated before every noun, as :—

Cet encens, ces honneurs que le This incense, these honours
vulgaire admire (Soulié) which the plebs admire.

Observe not to mistake *ce*, the demonstrative adjective, for *ce*, the demonstrative pronoun ; the first always precedes a noun, the second always a verb, or *qui*, *que*, as : *ce monsieur ignore ce que je fais*, this gentleman does not know what I do.

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

§ 110. *Aucun*, none, forms its feminine regularly ; it takes *ne* before the verb, and is used in the plural when relating to a noun that has no singular (See ACCIDENCE, § 22), or when the sense requires it. This is also the case with *nul* which has the same meaning in English, though *nul* means *null*, *void*. These adjectives, as well as *pas un*, drop *ne* when used in sentences expressing doubt, in interrogations, or when there is no verb expressed. *Pas un* has no plural, but all three may be used without a substantive :—

Ne lui ferez-vous grâce au- Will you not show him any
cune ? (Molière) favour ?

Aucun n'est prophète chez soi No one is a prophet in his
 (La Fontaine) own country

Il l'a obtenu sans aucuns frais He has obtained it without
 (Académie) any expense

Nulle paix pour l'impie (Racine) No peace for the wicked

Pas un seul petit morceau (La Fontaine) Not a single little piece.

§ 111. *Autre*, other, agrees with the noun to which it relates, even when that noun is understood :—

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Connaissez-vous mon autre</i> | Do you know my other |
| <i>sœur</i> (Académie) | sister? |
| <i>C'est un autre moi-même</i> | He is my alter-ego |
| <i>Un autre cependant a fléchi</i> | Another has however sub- |
| <i>son audace</i> (Racine) | dued his boldness. |

It is also sometimes used in opposition, as: *autres sont les temps de Moïse, autres ceux de Josué et des Juges, autres ceux des Rots* (Bossuet).

§ 112. *Chaque*, each, is the same in the masculine and feminine, it has no plural, and is always followed by a substantive:—

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Chaque passion parle un dif-</i> | Each passion vents itself in |
| <i>férent langage</i> (Boileau) | a different way. |

Observe.—Do not mistake *chaque*, adjective, for *chacun* the indefinite pronoun; the former is always united to a noun, the indefinite pronoun never.

§ 113. *Maint*, many, takes an *e* for the feminine, and is used in the same sense as *plusieurs*:—

| | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Maint rocher écrase en tom-</i> | Many a rock crushes whilst |
| <i>bant</i> | falling |
| <i>Mainte femme qui raisonne</i> | Many a woman fond of argu- |
| | ing. |

§ 114. In French *même* is used as an adjective and as an adverb. It is an adjective:—

(1.) When it precedes the noun, which it then modifies with an idea of identity*:—

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Les peuples se ressemblent</i> | Nations are everywhere alike. |
| <i>partout, mêmes vices, mêmes</i> | the same vices, the same |
| <i>vertus</i> (Lemare) | virtues. |

(2.) *Même* is an adjective when it modifies the noun with an idea of similitude and resemblance †:—

Compare the Latin *idem*, as: *Semper idem*, Always the same.

Compare the Latin *similis*, as: *Similis patri*, Like his father.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Vailà les frères Martin, même</i> | There are the brothers |
| <i>taille, même figure, mêmes</i> | Martin, the same height, |
| <i>habitudes de corps (Paul-</i> | the same face, the same |
| <i>mier) ' "</i> | habits. |

(3.) *Même*,* when preceded by *moi, toi, lui*, etc., is an adjective:—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Nous ne voyons pas nous-mêmes</i> | We ourselves do not see our |
| <i>nos défauts</i> | faults |
| <i>Il fait cela de lui-même</i> | He does it from his own im- |
| | pulse. |

(4.) *Même*, adjective, is sometimes used to express emphasis, and is then placed after the noun:—

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Cette femme est la franchise</i> | This woman is frankness |
| <i>même (Académie)</i> | itself |
| <i>Les Romains ne vainquirent</i> | The Romans only conquered |
| <i>les Grecs que par les Grecs</i> | the Greeks by the Greeks |
| <i>mêmes (Académie)</i> | themselves. |

§ 115. *Même* is an adverb when not preceded by an article and placed after the verb, when used after several nouns, or when modifying an adjective or superlative relative:—

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>Ils travaillent même la nuit</i> | They even work at night. |
| <i>Les riches, les princes, les rois</i> | Rich men, princes, kings |
| <i>même ont des peines</i> | even have troubles |
| <i>Tout citoyen doit obéir aux</i> | Every citizen ought to obey |
| <i>lois même injustes</i> | even unjust laws |
| <i>Il est aisé de tromper même les</i> | It is easy to deceive even the |
| <i>plus habiles</i> | cleverest. |

§ 116. *Plusieurs*, several, sometimes used without a noun, has no singular, and is of both genders:—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Il s'est donné plusieurs com-</i> | Several battles have been |
| <i>bats (Académie)</i> | fought |
| <i>Plusieurs d'entre elles ver-</i> | Several of them shed tears. |
| <i>saient des larmes (Florian)</i> | |

§ 117. *Quelconque*, whatever, generally employed with a

* Compare the Latin *ipse*, as: *Tute ipse praecepisti*, You yourself ordered it.

negative, means nobody, no . . . whatever. It is always placed after the noun. Without *ne* it is used in the sense of whatever, whatsoever, any, some, etc. :—

Il n'y a raison quelconque qui There is no reason 'whatever
puisse l'y obliger which can oblige him to do it
Donnez en une raison quel- Give some reason for it.
conque

§ 118. (1.) *Quelque*, followed immediately by a noun, or an adjective and noun, takes the sign of the plural. If the noun is followed by *que*, it also governs the subjunctive :—

Quelques écrivains ont traité Some writers have spoken
de ce sujet (Académie) about this
Adressez-vous à quelques au- Address yourself to some
tres personnes other persons
Quelque sujet qu'on traite Whatever subject one may
 treat of.

(2.) But when *quelque* modifies an adjective alone, or an adverb, it remains invariable :—

Quelque puissants qu'ils soient However powerful they may
je ne les crains point (Aca- be, I do not fear them
démie)
Quelque heureusement doués However happily gifted we
que nous soyons nous ne may be, we ought not to
devons pas en tirer vanité be proud of it.
 (Boniface)

Observe.—The *e* of *quelque* is never elided, as: *quelque écuyer*, *quelque aimable*, except in *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, some one, of which the plural is *quelques uns*, *quelques unes* (see § 186).

(3.) Before a verb *quelque* is written as two words, and *quel* agrees then with the subject of the verb :—

Quel qu'il soit nul rempart ne Whoever he may be, no bul-
le peut protéger (Anceclot) wark can protect him
Quelles que soient vos vues Whatever may be your
 (Académie) views.

§ 119. *Tel*, such, is used as an adjective and substantive, and has, as an adjective, always the article before it :—

Un homme tel que lui (Académie) A man such as he

Tel est pris qui croyait prendre Such a one is caught who.
(La Fontaine) thought to catch others.

Observe.—*Tel . . . tel* (the Latin *talis-qualis*) is also used, as: *tel maître tel valet*, like master like man; it is sometimes even used with *quel*, as: *des gens tels quels*, people only so and so. **Observe**, that when *such a* is immediately followed by a qualificative adjective it has to be translated by *si*, as: *un si grand homme*, such a great man.

§ 120. (1.) *Tout*, any, is used in the sense of every, each, and is immediately followed by the noun *:—

En toute chose il faut considérer la fin (La Fontaine) In every thing we must consider the end

Tout homme est sujet à la mort Every man must die.

(2.) It also means whole, universal,† and then has for the plural masculine *tous*, for the feminine singular *toute*, feminine plural *toutes*;—

On perd tous ses amis en perdant tout son bien (Des- touches) A man loses all his friends in losing his wealth

Toute la famille se porte bien All the family are well.

(3.) As an adjective in a distributive sense always used in the plural ‡:—

Tous les matins je me lève à cinq heures Every morning I get up at five o'clock

Il passe toutes ses soirées à lire He passes all his evenings reading.

Observe.—*Tout*, adjective (except in the sense of *quisque*), is always followed by the article or the possessive or demonstrative adjectives. *Tout* before the name of a town (see § 66, Remark 2) is always masculine, because *peuple* is understood as: *Tout Rome*.

* Compare the Latin *quisque*, as: *Pro se quisque*, Every man for himself.

† Compare the Latin *totus*, *omnis*, as: *Totum oppidum cingit*, He surrounds the whole town; *Tota mente*, With his whole mind.

‡ Compare the Latin *mnēs*, as: *Omnibus mensibus*, Every month.

§ 121. *Tout* is also used as a noun, and keeps the *t* in the plural* :—

Le tout^{se} monte à tant The whole comes to so much
Les mots sont des tous syllabiques Words are syllabical unities.

Observe there is some difference in the pronunciation of *tous* with the final *s* sounded, and *tous* without the final *s* sounded. For example *vous êtes tous mes amis*, means, if sounded with the final *s*, you are all my friends, but without that letter sounded, you are all the friends I have.

§ 122. *Tout* as an adverb means quite, entirely † :—

• *On l'a trouvée tout en pleurs* They found her all in tears,
 (Boniface)
Elle était tout à vous She was wholly yours.

It takes an *e* when immediately followed by a feminine adjective beginning, with a consonant, or *h* aspirated :—

Elle est toute malade She is quite ill
La Grèce, toute polie et toute sage qu'elle était Greece, though wholly civilized and wise.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 123. Numeral adjectives are of both genders, and numbers, except *un*, *premier*, and *second*, which take an *e* in the feminine :—

Un fils, une fille One son, one daughter
 • *Le premier roi, la première reine* The first king, the first queen
La second enfant, la seconde chambre The second child, the second room.

§ 124. *Vingt* and *cent* take an *s* when not followed, but preceded by any other number, but they are invariable, when used

* Compare the Latin *totum*, as; *Totum in eo est*, All depends on that.

† Compare the Latin *totus*, as; *Tota sum misera*, I am wholly miserable.

in the sense of *vingtième*, *centième*, and when speaking of dates. *Mille*, a thousand, never takes an *s* (see ACCIDENCE, § 70):—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Le royaume a duré deux cent quarante ans, mais la république environ cinq cents ans</i> | The kingdom lasted two hundred and forty years, but the republic about five hundred years |
| <i>La flotte était composée de quatre-vingts voiles.</i> | The fleet consisted of eighty ships. |
| <i>Charlemagne fut proclamé empereur en huit cent</i> | Charlemagne was proclaimed emperor in the year 800. |
| <i>Page cinq cent</i> | Page five hundred. |

§ 125. The cardinal numbers, except the *first* and sometimes the *second*, are used in French instead of the English ordinal, with the names of sovereigns, and also in dates, when speaking of the days of the month (see § 33). The dates always precede the noun in French:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>François premier, Charles neuf, et Henri quatre étaient rois de France</i> | Francis the First, Charles the Ninth, and Henry the Fourth were kings of France |
| <i>Le dix-huit Juin le général Brunet tomba en soldat (de Bazancourt)</i> | On the eighteenth of June General Brunet died on the battle-field. |

§ 126. REMARK 1.—The English word *on* is never translated when speaking of days; *of* may be translated or not; therefore: *le 18 de Juin*, or *le 18 Juin*.

REMARK 2.—*Deux* or *second*, may be used indifferently when speaking of kings.

REMARK 3.—In speaking of books we may use either cardinals or ordinals, but *le second tome* means simply the second volume of any book; *le deuxième tome* implies that the work has more than two volumes.

REMARK 4.—Before *huit*, *onze*, etc., the vowel is not dropped in *le* or *la*, as: *le huit de Janvier*, the eighth of January.

REMARK 5.—*Un* is sometimes used as a qualificative adjective, as: *la ville en effet était aussi moins une* (V. Hugo), in reality the town was also less compact.

CHAPTER IV.

THE PRONOUN.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

IN the ACCIDENCE we have already given a table of the conjunctive and disjunctive personal pronouns (see § 75 and § 80). We will now give some peculiarities of these pronouns. Let it, however, be observed that there is a great dissimilarity in the French and English languages in the use of the pronouns—a dissimilarity not only in respect to place and order, but also with regard to case.

We cannot therefore too strongly recommend to the English student the following rules:—

We will consider—

- I. The place of the Personal Pronouns.
- II. Their order.
- III. Their repetition.

I.—THEIR PLACE.

A. *Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.*

§ 127. The conjunctive personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, always precede the verb of which they are the subject:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Je vous donnerai un conseil salutaire; et pour récompense je ne vous demande que le secret.</i> | I will give you wholesome advice, and as a reward I only ask you to keep it secret. |
|--|--|

Except—

§ 128. (1) In interrogative sentences:—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Trouverai-je partout un rival</i> | Shall I everywhere 'find a |
| <i>que j'abhorre</i> (Racine) | rival whom I detest? |
| <i>Où suis-je, malheureux?</i> | Where am I, unfortunate |
| | man? |

§ 129. (2) In elliptic phrases, chiefly in the subjunctive mood, where no conjunction is used:—

| | |
|--|------------------------------|
| <i>Puissé-je de mes yeux y voir</i> | May my eyes behold a |
| <i>tomber la foudre!</i> (Cor- | thunderbolt fall thereon! |
| <i>neille)</i> | |
| <i>Dût-il oublier tout ce que j'ai</i> | Even if he should forget all |
| <i>fait pour lui!</i> | that I did for him. |

§ 130. (3) When the verb forms a kind of parenthesis, showing that we repeat the words said by ourselves or by some other person:—

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>C'est simple comme bonjour,</i> | It is as simple as anything, |
| <i>a-t-il continué</i> (Souvestre) | he continued. |

§ 131. (4) Often when the verb is preceded by *aussi*, thus; *au moins*, at least; *peut-être*, perhaps; *toujours*, always; *encore*, still; *enfin*, at last; *à peine*, scarcely; *du moins*, at least, etc.:—

| | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>À peine la saison est-elle passée</i> | Scarcely is the season over |
| <i>Peut-être ai-je eu tort de le dire</i> | Perhaps I was wrong to say it. |

Observe that the *e* of *je* is never cut off when used interrogatively.

§ 132. The personal pronouns in the genitive *en*, and in the dative *y*, are seldom conjunctive in speaking of persons; they are, however, conjunctive in speaking of persons whenever we wish to avoid the repetition of *de lui*, *de nous*, *à lui*, *à nous*, etc., or in answer to a question;—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Les Troglodytes aimaient leurs</i> | The Troglodytes loved their |
| <i>parents et en étaient aimés</i> | parents and were beloved |
| <i>(Montesquieu).</i> | by them |

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Avez-vous peur de lui? Oui j'en ai peur</i> | Are you afraid of him? Yes, I am |
| <i>Quoique je parle beaucoup de vous ma fille, j'y pense en- core davantage jour et nuit (M^{ad}. de Sévigné)</i> | Though I speak much of you, my daughter, I still think more of you by night and by day. |

§ 133. But in speaking of things the personal pronouns in the genitive and dative are always conjunctive, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Rien n'est plus dangereux que l'autorité en des mains qui ne savent pas en faire usage</i> | Nothing is more dangerous than authority in hands which do not know how to use it |
| <i>Quant à vos raisons je m'y rends</i> | As for your reasons I give in to them. |

§ 134. REMARK 1.—*En* is sometimes used in the meaning of *some of it, some of them, thence, from that*, etc., as: *vous avez de l'argent, donnez-en à votre ami*, you have money, give some of it to your friend. It is also used in several idiomatical phrases, as: *en vouloir à quelqu'un*, to bear a grudge against some one (see ACCID. § 170); *en imposer*, to deceive; *s'en aller*, to go away; *en venir aux coups*, to come to blows.

REMARK 2.—*Y* is also used for *in it, there, thither, here*, etc., whether expressed or understood in English, as: *j'y vais*, I am going thither.

§ 135. Personal conjunctive pronouns used as objects, either direct or indirect, are generally placed before the verb:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Je te le dis du fond de mon cœur (J. J. Rousseau)</i> | I tell you so from the bottom of my heart. |
| <i>Ils'ont quelques défauts, je les leur passe</i> | They have some faults, I forgive them to them. |

Except—

§ 136. In the imperative mood used affirmatively the pronoun, object to the verb, is placed after it:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Rends-moi Chrétienne et libre</i> (Voltaire) | Make me a Christian and set me free |
| <i>Reposez-vous sur moi</i> (Molière) | Rely upon me. |

§ 137. But if the imperative mood is used negatively, the pronoun comes first:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Ne me trouble pas par tes indignes pleurs</i> (Boileau) | Do not disturb me by your unworthy tears. |
|--|--|

§ 138. REMARK 1.—When there are two imperatives affirmatively joined by one of the conjunctions *et* or *ou*, the second pronoun generally precedes the verb to which it belongs:—

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Pôlissez-le sans cesse et le repolissez</i> (Boileau) | Polish it continually and repolish it |
| <i>Battez-moi et me laissez rire</i> (Molière) | Beat me but let me laugh. |

§ 139. REMARK 2.—When a verb in the imperative affirmative governs two pronouns, the one in the accusative comes first, except *y-moi*, *y-toi*, *y-le*, *y-la*:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Si vos amis commettent des fautes</i> <i>reprochez les leur</i> | If your friends commit faults re- proach them with them |
| <i>Reste dans le jardin et promènes-y-</i> <i>toi un moment</i> | Remain in the garden and walk there for a minute. |

Observe.—It is better for the sake of euphony to avoid such phrases as *y-moi*, *y-toi*; but when used, an euphonic *s* is added in verbs of the first conjugation, as: *promènes-y-toi*.

B. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ 140. The disjunctive personal pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, are always used when there is no verb in a personal mood immediately following, as:—

(1.) In answering a question or asking one:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Qui sera chargé de le lui annoncer?</i> <i>Toi</i> (Académie) | Who will be entrusted with announcing it to him? You |
| <i>Nous, aller en ville?</i> | We, go to town? |

§ 141. (2.) After the verb *être*:—

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Oui, c'est moi, s'écria-t-il</i> | Yes, it is I, he cried . |
| <i>C'est lui, c'est mon frère</i> | It is he, it is my brother. |

§ 142. (3.) In exclamations, in addressing a person, or when used for emphasis:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Moi, faire une lâcheté !</i> (Aca- • démie) | I, commit a cowardly action ! |
| <i>Toi, Antigone, fille courageuse et magnanime</i> (Ballanche) | You, Antigone, courageous, and lofty-minded daughter. |

§ 143. (4.) In comparisons after *que*, than; after and before *et*, and; *ou*, or; *comme*, as; *ni*, nor:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>On la favorise plus que moi</i> | They favour her more than they do me . |
| <i>Vous valez mieux que lui, ou qn'eux</i> | You are worth more than he is, or they are. . |

§ 144. (5.) When they are followed by *même* * or *seul* (see ACCIDENCE, § 84):—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Va, mais nous-mêmes, allons</i> (Racine) | Go, but we ourselves, let us go |
| <i>Vous seul pouvez parler digne- ment de vous-mêmes</i> (Vol- taire) . | You alone can worthily speak of yourselves. |

§ 145. (6.) When followed by a relative pronoun, or participle:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Moi, qui vous parle, monsieur</i> (Courier) | I, who am speaking to you, sir |
| <i>Eux, regardant attentivement cet homme</i> | They, looking attentively at this man. |

* Compose in Latin— *egomet*
I myself .

memet ipsum
me myself

vobismet ipsis, etc.
to you, yourselves.

§ 146. (7.) When the verb has several subjects expressed by personal pronouns, that verb is put in the plural and the resuming pronouns, *nous*, *vous*, or *ils* are usually placed before it (see SYNTAX, § 193):—

Narbal et moi, nous admirions Narbal and I were admiring
la bonté des dieux (Fénelon) the goodness of the gods.

§ 147. (8.) After a preposition, and also when they are joined to a noun or pronoun by a conjunction:—

Il est fort irrité contre toi He is very angry with you
 (Académie)

La fortune nous a persécutés, Fortune has persecuted both
lui et moi (Fénelon) him and me.

Observe.—A preposition is always used in French when the verb governs several pronouns in the same case, as: *il parle à vous et à eux*, he speaks to you and to them; or when the personal pronoun is the indirect object of a reflexive verb, as: *il s'est adressé à moi*, he has spoken to me; or when the pronoun is used with verbs requiring the preposition *à* after them, as: *aller à*, to go; *venir à*, to come; *voler à*, to fly, etc.

§ 148. (9.) In the imperative affirmatively, the pronoun used is always disjunctive (see SYNTAX, § 136), except in the third persons singular and plural:—

Suivez-moi, mes amis Follow me, my friends
Portez leur ceci Take this to them.

II.—ORDER OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 149. When two or more conjunctive personal pronouns are governed by the same verb, those of the first person precede the second, and the second those of the third:—

Voulez-vous me la montrer ? Will you show her to me?
Je vous le donnerai I will give it to you.

§ 150. But when the third person singular or plural is used in the dative and accusative, the accusative comes first, and if *y*, *there*, *thither*, *in it*, is used conjointly with the pronoun, it comes last:—

Je le leur prêterai I will lend it to them .
Nous les y porterons We will bring them there.

§ 151. When two conjunctive personal pronouns, one in the genitive, the other in the dative or accusative, are governed by the same verb, the genitive comes last, and if *y* is used (which is very seldom), it precedes *en*, as :—

Ils m'en ont parlé They have spoken to me
 about it
Nous t'y en enverrons We will send you some of it
 there.

Observe.—That whether the sentence be interrogative, negative, or affirmative, the personal conjunctive pronouns always precede the verb or its auxiliary, except when the pronoun is the *subject* of an interrogation, or in the imperative affirmatively.

§ 152. Table showing the order in which the personal pronouns appear when there are two or three governed by the same verb, and given to show not only the relative position of the personal conjunctive pronouns with regard to each other, but also with regard to the verb and other words connected with them in a sentence :—

| | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------|---------|-------------|
| <i>Je</i> | <i>ne</i> | <i>me</i> | <i>le</i> | <i>lui</i> | <i>y</i> | <i>en</i> | auxiliary | <i>pas</i> | adverb. | participle. |
| <i>Tu</i> | — | <i>te</i> | <i>la</i> | <i>leur</i> | — | — | or verb. | — | — | — |
| <i>Il</i> | — | <i>se</i> | <i>les</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Elle</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Nous</i> | — | <i>nous</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Vous</i> | — | <i>vous</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Ils</i> | — | <i>se</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Elles</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |

III.—REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 153. The personal pronouns in the nominative are repeated in French :—

(1.) Before every verb, if those verbs are in different tenses, but if the verbs are in the same tense, the pronouns may be repeated or not :—

Il s'écoute, il se plaît, il s'admire, il s'aime (J. B. Rousseau) .
 He indulges himself, he is pleased with himself, he admires himself, he likes himself

Nous entendons bien, mais nous We hear well, but we will
entendrons encore mieux hear still better.

§ 154. (2.) When two members of a sentence are joined by any conjunction except *et*, and; *mais*, but; *ni*, nor, neither, and *ou*, or :—

Il est humble parce qu'il est He is humble because he is
pauvre poor
Vous serez estimé si vous êtes You will be esteemed if you
sage are wise.

§ 155. (3.) When we pass from a negative to an affirmative sentence, and often from an affirmative to a negative :—

Tu n'as point d'aile et tu veux You have no wings and you
voler ? rampe (Voltaire) wish to fly ? creep
Vous le dites et vous ne le You say so and do not think
pensez pas so.

§ 156. Personal pronouns used as the government of verbs are always repeated in French before every verb :—

Nous l'aimons et nous le ven- We love and will avengo him
gerons
Voilà un homme, qui me gêne There is a man who hinders
et me vole and robs me.

Observe.—Taste will more than any given rules tell when the pronoun has to be repeated or not. The pronoun is very often not repeated in compound tenses, except if the verbs require different complements, when it has to be repeated.

§ 157. The pronoun is often doubled to repeat an idea already expressed :—

Voudriez-vous me perdre, moi, Would you ruin me, me, who
votre allié ? (Académie) am your ally ?

§ 158. Often the pronoun is used as an indirect complement, sometimes showing that an action is done, having

some remote reference to the person represented by the pronoun* :—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>On lui lia les pieds, on vous</i> | They tied his feet, they hung |
| <i>le suspendit</i> (La Fontaine) | him up |
| <i>Glisse moi sur la superficie</i> | Skim the surface. |
| (Voltaire) | |

REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS *le, la, les*.

§ 159. When the pronouns *le, la, les*, have reference to a substantive, or to an adjective used substantively, they agree with it in gender and number :—

| | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Êtes vous la maîtresse du logis ?</i> | Are you the mistress of the |
| <i>Oui, je la suis</i> | house? Yes I am |
| <i>Sont ce-là vos gants ? Oui ce</i> | Are these your gloves? Yes |
| <i>les sont</i> | they are. |

§ 160. But when the pronouns *le, la, les*, have reference either to an adjective or to a substantive used adjectively, to a verb, or to a sentence, they are invariable :—

| | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| <i>Cette femme est belle et le sera</i> | This woman is beautiful, and |
| <i>longtemps</i> (Académie) | will be so a long time |
| <i>Il est de grands hommes qui</i> | There are great men who are |
| <i>ne se sont que par des vertus</i> | only so through their virtues |
| <i>Il faut travailler autant qu'on</i> | We must work as much as |
| <i>le peut.</i> | we can. |

REMARKS ON *se, soi*.

§ 161. *Se*, called the reflexive pronoun, is of both genders and numbers, and is used as direct or indirect complement, as :—

| | |
|--|------------------------------|
| <i>L'état doit se charger de ce</i> | The state ought to undertake |
| <i>soin</i> (Rollin) | this charge |
| <i>Il se fit une loi d'écrire tous</i> | He made a law for himself to |
| <i>les jours</i> | write every day. |

* This dative corresponds to the so-called ethical dative in Latin, as : *Quid mihi Celsus agit ?* How is my Celsus ? *Hæc vobis ipsorum per biduum militia fuit*, Here was their two days' campaign for you. It is also not unknown in English, as : " Villain, I say, knock me at this gate and rap me well " (Shakspeare).

Observe.—The passive voice in French is not so generally used as in English, and is commonly translated by *se* or by *on*, as: *on dit que le roi vient de mourir*, it is said that the king has just died; or, *cela se dit*, it is said. (See SYNTAX, § 182.)

§ 182. *Soi* (except in *être soi*, to be one's self) is always used with a preposition, and comes after the verb. It is chiefly employed when referring to persons, in relation to some indefinite pronoun, as: *on, chacun, personne, quiconque, aucun*, etc. It is also used in referring to things or indefinite sentences:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Chacun travaille pour soi</i> (Académie) | Each one labours for himself |
| <i>La poésie porte son excuse avec soi</i> (Boileau) | Poetry carries its excuse with it |
| <i>Il est beau de triompher de soi</i> (Corneille) | It is beautiful to triumph over one's self |
| <i>Quand on était assis on avait devant soi la cour verte</i> (Chateaubriand) | When one was sitting down, one had a view of the green court. |

Observe.—*Soi* never loses the final vowel, *se* follows the ordinary rule of elision.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 183. The possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours*, and *theirs*, are expressed in French by *le mien, le tien, le sien*, etc. (See ACCIDENCE, § 85.) But used with the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, *mine* is generally expressed by *à moi*, *thine* by *à toi*, and so on*:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Il n'a rien à lui, tout est à ses amis</i> (Lamennais) | Nothing is his, everything is his friends' |
| <i>Ces chevaux sont-ils à moi</i> | Are these horses mine? |

* In Latin there is also a dative of possession: *Dives est, cui tanta possessio est, ut nihil optet amplius*, He is a rich man, to whom such a possession belongs, that he desires nothing more.

§ 164. Employed in an absolute sense they become nouns, and express *relations, family, friends, tribe, partisans*, etc.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>On n'est jamais trahi que par</i> | One is never betrayed except |
| <i>les siens</i> (Académie) | by one's own people |
| <i>Les vôtres se sont bien battus</i> | Your friends have fought |
| | well. |

There are some peculiar ways of using the possessive pronoun in English, which cannot be literally translated in French.

§ 165. (1) When the substantive is preceded by *this, that, these, or those*, and is followed by *of* and the possessive pronoun, we must translate it thus:—

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Where is that book of mine? | <i>Où est mon livre?</i> |
| Take that watch of his | <i>Prenez sa montre.</i> |

§ 166. (2) When the substantive is followed by *of* and the possessive pronoun we have to turn it thus:—

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| There is a friend of mine and a | <i>Voilà un de mes amis et une de ses</i> |
| cousin of hers | <i>cousines.</i> |

§ 167. (3) Sometimes *le mien, le tien, le sien*, etc., are used for *my own, thy own, his own*, etc., as:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Il n'y a rien mis du sien</i> | He has contributed nothing of his |
| | own |
| <i>J'ai perdu du mien</i> | I have lost of my own. |

§ 168. (4) When *my own, thy own*, etc., means *belonging to me, to thee*, etc., it has to be translated by *à moi, à toi*, etc., when it is followed by a noun by the adjective *propre*,* as:—

| | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| <i>J'ai une terre à moi</i> | I have an estate of my own |
| <i>Jè l'aime comme mon propre frère</i> | I love him as my own brother. |

* In this sense *propre* is also used in Latin, as: *Sua propria facultate*, by his own faculty.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 169. *Ce* is always used before the verb *être*, when followed by a substantive, an adjective, or one of the personal pronouns, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, etc. (See ACCIDENCE, § 88.)

C'est folie à eux de croire It is madness in them to be-
(Académie) lieve
C'est indiscret à moi (Scribe) It is indiscreet of me.

§ 170. REMARK 1.—When *il* is followed by an adjective used with a complement, that is with something describing the sentence, *il* must be used, as: *il est impossible d'être heureux sans pratiquer la vertu*, it is impossible to be happy without practising virtue.

REMARK 2.—If *être* is only followed by an infinitive we may use either *ce* or *il*, though *il* is more generally employed. *Ce* must be followed by *à*, *il* by *de*, as: *c'est ridicule à voir*, it is ridiculous to see; but *il est ridicule de voir*.

REMARK 3.—There is often a difference in the use of *ce* and *il*; *ce* points out more distinctly. For example, in the phrases, *quelle heure est-il?* and *quelle heure est-ce?* the first question refers simply to the time in general, the second to an hour just struck.

§ 171. *Ce* is used with the relative pronoun *que* for *what* in the sense of *that which*, if used as an object, or if standing before a noun or pronoun with *être*; and *that which* has to be translated by *ce qui* when used as the subject of a sentence.

Je sais ce que je suis, je sais ce I know what I am, I know
que vous êtes (Corneille) what you are
C'est tout ce qui t'entoure, It is all that surrounds you,
tout ce que tu as aimé all that you have loved.
(Souvestre)

§ 172. REMARK.—In the second part of a sentence *ce* is generally repeated before *être*, when this verb is followed by another verb, a plural noun or a personal pronoun, as: *ce qui me fait plaisir c'est de n'avoir rien à faire*, what pleases me is that I have nothing to do; *ce que j'aime le plus, ce sont les cerises*, what I love most are cherries. But if followed by an

adjective or past participle, the second *ce* is not used, as: *ce que nous avons fait, était nécessaire pour l'effrayer*, what we have done was necessary to frighten him.

§ 173. The demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, are generally used with *qui* or *que* when *he, she, they*, are followed in English by *who* or *whom* (See ACCIDENCE, § 90), as:—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Heureux celui qui craint le</i> | Happy he who fears the |
| <i>Seigneur (Académie)</i> | Lord |
| <i>Celui de vous qui sera le plus</i> | He who will be the most |
| <i>diligent sera récompensé</i> | diligent shall be rewarded |
| (N. Landais) | |

Observe.—*Celui, celle*, etc., in reference to things, correspond to *the one which, that which, those which*, etc., as: *Prêtez-moi un canif, celui que j'ai ne vaut rien*, lend me a penknife, the one which I have is worth nothing.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

We have already given in the ACCIDENCE (see § 93—§ 104) all the rules about the relative pronouns; we will now give the rules when relative pronouns are used in an absolute manner, and without an antecedent; or in other words, when they are used as interrogative pronouns.

§ 174. *Qui* is used in the nominative for persons and things as a relative pronoun, but is used both as subject and object, and only for persons when employed in an absolute manner, i.e., as an interrogative pronoun. In speaking of persons or things in the sense of *what*, the indefinite adjective *quel, quelle*, must be used, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Qui sont ces gens en robe?</i> | Who are these lawyers? |
| (Racine) | |
| <i>À qui pensez-vous parler?</i> | Whom do you think you are speaking to? |
| <i>Quel est son âge? quelle est votre intention?</i> | What is his age? what is your intention? |

§ 175. REMARK.—*Qui* absolute, when repeated more than ~~once~~ in a phrase, means *some, some other*, as : *chacun alléguait qui une origine, qui une autre, qui la ressemblance du nom, qui des armes* (Montaigne), all of them had something to bring forward, some one origin, some another, some the resemblance of the name, some their arms.

§ 176. *Que*, what, which as a relative pronoun is used of persons and things and as the object of the verb, is used in interrogative sentences only for things :—

Que vous en semble ? What do you think about it?

Qu'est-ce donc qui vous trouble ? (Fénelon) What is it that disturbs you?

Observe.—In interrogative sentences, particularly to express surprise, instead of *que* we use *qu'est-ce qui* as subject, and *qu'est-ce que* as object of the verb, as : *Qu'est-ce qui vous trouble ? Qu'est-ce que vous dites ?* What do you say ? *Qui est-ce qui ?* is often used instead of *qui*, who, in interrogations, and must not be mistaken for *qu'est-ce qui*, what ? For *que* used for *pourquoi* see SYNTAX, § 323.

§ 177. *Quoi*, without antecedent, has the same meaning as *que* absolute. It relates to things only, and is always followed or preceded by a preposition :—

À quoi pensez-vous ? (Aca- What are you thinking of?
démie)

De quoi se plaint-il ? What does he complain of?

§ 178. REMARK 1.—*Quoi* followed by *de*, is also used in exclamations when before adjectives; *que de* when employed before nouns, as : *Quoi de plus hargneux qu'un critique édenté !* What more snappish than a toothless critic ! *Que de bonheur il a eu sur la terre !* What happiness has he enjoyed on earth ! If *how* is used in English and a verb be expressed, *que* is used, as . *Que les élèves sont paresseux !* How idle the pupils are !

REMARK 2.—The phrase, *je ne sais quoi*, always denotes an indefinable quality, as : *un certain je ne sais quoi distingue les hommes comme il faut*, an indescribable something distinguishes gentlemen.

§ 179. *Lequel laquelle*, etc., without antecedent, serve in interrogative sentences, to mark a distinction between two or more persons or things :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Lequel des deux est le fripon ?</i> | Who is the rogue of the two ? |
| <i>Par lequel des deux chemins</i> <i>irons-nous ? (Académie)</i> | Which of the two roads shall we take ? |

§ 180. REMARK.—When things are spoken of, *où* (see ACCIDENCE, § 104) may be used instead of *lequel*, etc., preceded by *en*, *dans*, *vers*, etc., as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>L'état de violence où (for dans lequel)</i> <i>était alors la société (Guizot)</i> | The state of violence in which society was at that time. |
|--|---|

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns, as we have already said, are : *on*, *quiconque*, *quelqu'un*, *chacun*, *autrui*, *personne*, *l'un l'autre*, *l'un et l'autre*. (See ACCIDENCE, § 105.)

§ 181. *On*, they, one, people, requires always the verb in French in the third person singular, though it is generally used in English in the plural. It can only be the subject, and has to be repeated before each verb of a sentence :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>On peut étudier à tout âge,</i> <i>mais on ne peut à tout âge</i> <i>être étudiant</i> | We can study at every age, but we cannot be students at every age. |
|---|--|

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Si l'on se convenait, on se</i> <i>touchait la main et l'on</i> <i>était amis pour toujours</i> | If they suited each other, they shook hands and were friends for ever. |
|--|--|

§ 182. REMARK.—*On* is also often used to turn an English passive verb not followed by a substantive and the preposition *by*, into an active verb, as : *on vient de recevoir des nouvelles*, news has just been received. (See OBSERVATION, SYNTAX, § 161.)

§ 183. Though generally followed by a masculine singular, it may be followed also by a masculine plural, or by a feminine singular or plural, as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>On n'est pas toujours jeune et</i> <i>belle (Académie)</i> | One is not always young and beautiful |
| <i>Aujourd'hui on est amis et</i> <i>demain rivaux</i> | To-day we are friends and to- morrow rivals. |

§ 184. REMARK.—For the sake of euphony, *l'on* is used instead of *on* after the words, *et, si, où, que, qui, quoi*, except when *le, la, les, lui, leur*, follow *on* in the sentence, as: *ceux à qui l'on donne*, those to whom one gives; *si on les laisse seuls*, if they are left alone, not *si l'on les*, etc., because this would sound disagreeable to the ear.

§ 185. *Quiconque*, whoever, has no plural, and relates only to persons. In speaking distinctly of a woman, it is feminine:—

Le grand jour sert mal quiconque veut mal faire Daylight serves badly whoever wishes to do evil
(Boufflers)

Quiconque est bonne et belle est chérie Whoever is good and handsome is beloved.

Observe.—When *whoever* is followed by a personal pronoun and the verb *to be*, it must be expressed by *qui que*, as: *whoever thou art, qui que tu sois*.

§ 186. *Quelqu'un*, any one, some one, takes the gender and number of the noun, in the place of which it stands, thus: *quelqu'un*, m. s.; *quelqu'une*, f. s.; *quelques uns*, m. p.; *quelques unes*, f. p. Followed by an adjective it requires *de* for its complement, as: *est-il quelqu'un d'assez lâche pour insulter une femme?* Is there any one cowardly enough to insult a woman?

§ 187. *Chacun* (m.), *chacun* (f.), each, every one, has no plural. It takes *son, sa, ses* after it, when placed after the direct object, or when there is no object of that nature; it takes *leur, leurs*, when it is before the direct, as:—

Ils apportèrent des offrandes au temple, chacun selon ses moyens. (Académie) They brought offerings to the temple, each according to his means

Les langues ont chacune leurs bizarreries. (Boileau) Languages have each their eccentricities.

Observe.—When “every one” means “each in particular,” we use in French *chacun*; if it means “all,” *tous, toutes*.

§ 188. *Autrui* (m. s.); others, is generally used with a preposition, or else as the object of a verb:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Il ne faut pas désirer le bien d'autrui (Académie)</i> | We must not covet other's goods |
| <i>Pour consumer autrui le monstre se consume (Boi- leau)</i> | The monster ruins itself in order to ruin others. |

§ 189. *Personne*, nobody, is used as a noun* and pronoun. As a noun it is feminine, as a pronoun masculine. In this latter sense it is always accompanied by *ne*, which precedes the verb :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Je ne connais personne d'aussi heureux que cette femme (Académie)</i> | I know nobody so happy as this woman |
| <i>Je n'y suis pour personne (Académie)</i> | I am at home for nobody. |

§ 190. *Personne* without *ne* means anybody, and is chiefly used in sentences expressing doubt, or in interrogations. In answer to a question, *personne* by itself is used without *ne* :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Je doute que personne ait mieux peint la nature (Restaut)</i> | I doubt if anybody has ever depicted nature better |
| <i>Y-a-t-il quelqu'un ici?— Personne</i> | Is there any one here?— Nobody. |

§ 191. *L'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre*, refer to persons and things, and take both genders and numbers. The first relates not only to plural, but also to reciprocal ideas, the second suggests only plurality; they are thus declined :—

L'UN L'AUTRE.

| MAS. SING. | MAS. PLUR. |
|---|---------------------------|
| <i>l'un l'autre</i> , one another | <i>les uns les autres</i> |
| <i>l'un de l'autre</i> , of one another | <i>les uns des autres</i> |
| <i>l'un à l'autre</i> , to one another | <i>les uns aux autres</i> |

* As a noun it means in Latin, *nemo*, as : *Nemo me impune lacessit*, None provokes me with impunity.

| FEM. SING. | FEM. PLUR. |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>l'une l'autre</i> , one another | <i>les unes les autres</i> |
| <i>l'une de l'autre</i> , of one another | <i>les unes des autres</i> |
| <i>l'une à l'autre</i> , to one another | <i>les unes aux autres.</i> |
| <i>Ils se haïssent les uns les autres</i> | They hate one another |
| <i>Ils médisent l'un de l'autre</i> | They speak ill of one another. |

L'UN ET L'AUTRE.

| MAS. SING. | MAS. PLUR. |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>l'un et l'autre</i> , both | <i>les uns et les autres</i> |
| <i>de l'un et de l'autre</i> , of both | <i>des uns et des autres</i> |
| <i>à l'un et à l'autre</i> , to both | <i>aux uns et aux autres.</i> |
| FEM. SING. | FEM. PLUR. |
| <i>l'une et l'autre</i> , both | <i>les unes et les autres</i> |
| <i>de l'une et de l'autre</i> , of both | <i>des unes et des autres</i> |
| <i>à l'une et à l'autre</i> , to both | <i>aux unes et aux autres.</i> |

This pronoun takes the verb in the plural.

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <i>L'un et l'autre sont morts</i> | Both are dead |
| <i>L'un et l'autre consul suivaient ses étendards (Corneille)</i> | Both consuls followed his standards. |

Observe.—*Ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither, takes *ne* before the verb, which may be used in the singular or plural, though the latter is considered more grammatical, as: *ni l'un ni l'autre ne l'a fait*, or *ne l'ont fait*, neither has done it.

CHAPTER V.

THE VERB.

IN no part of the syntax has the French language more analogy with the Latin than in that which relates to the verbs. We have therefore given under this head several points of comparison to which we beg to draw the particular attention of the student.

THE SUBJECT OR NOMINATIVE OF THE VERB.

§ 192. GENERAL RULE.—The verb agrees in number and person with its subject,* as:—

| | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Il revient, les peuples accourent</i> | He returns, the nation has- |
| <i>sur son passage; il rentre</i> | tens to meet him; he re- |
| <i>en triomphe dans sa ville</i> | enters in triumph his epis- |
| <i>épiscopale</i> (Chateaubriand) | copal town |
| <i>On parle sans cesse du bon-</i> | People speak continually of |
| <i>heur; tous les hommes le</i> | happiness; all men look |
| <i>cherchent; aucun ne le</i> | for it; none find it; few |
| <i>trouve; peu le connaissent</i> | are acquainted with it. |

§ 193. The verb is put in the plural when there is more than one subject, and agrees with personal pronouns, with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third.† But in this case one of

* This is also the case in Latin: *Omnia vitia pugnant contra naturam*, All vices fight against nature.

† The same in Latin, as: *Pater et mater mortui sunt*, The father and mother are dead; *Tu et Tullia valetis; ego et Cicero valemus*, Thou and Tullia are well; I and Cicero are well.

the resuming pronouns, *nous, vous*, generally precedes the verb, according to the priority of the subject (see SYNTAX, § 147):—

Vous et moi, nous sommes contents de notre sort (Académie) You and I, we are satisfied with our fate

Vous et lui, vous savez la chose You and he, you know the thing.

§ 194. But when two or more subjects are joined by *ou*, or, or *ni*, nor, or when the verb is preceded by *qui*, no resuming pronoun can be used. In this case the verb is in the singular when the agent is spoken of as singular, in the plural when there are several agents,* as:—

Mon frère ou moi ferons la réponse à cette lettre (Académie) My brother or I, we will answer this letter

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux (La Fontaine) Neither gold nor greatness make us happy

C'est vous ou lui qui irez You or he will go.

§ 195. The verb is also used in the singular when the subjects are synonymous,† as:—

Soit courage, son intrépidité étonne les plus braves (Domergue) His courage, his intrepidity astonish the bravest

* In Latin the verb can also be put in the singular or plural, according to the idea predominant in the mind of the writer, as: *Hæc si neque ego neque tu fecimus*, If neither you nor I have done these things. *Sine imperio nec domus ulla, nec civitas, nec gens, nec hominum universum genus stare, nec rerum natura omnis, nec ipse mundus potest*; Without government, neither any house, nor state, nor nation, nor mankind at large, nor the whole nature of things, nor the world itself, can stand. Observe the repetition of the negation in Latin as well as in French.

† Compare in Latin: *Societas hominum et communitas evertatur necesse est*, It is necessary that the society and community of men should be destroyed.

Le noir venin, le fiel de leurs écrits, n'excite en moi que le plus froid mépris (Colardeau) The black venom, the maliciousness of their writings only produce within me the greatest contempt.

§ 196. The verb is in the singular when the subjects form a climax,* as :

Louis, son fils, l'état, l'Europe est dans ses mains (Voltaire) Lewis, his son, the state, Europe is in his hands.

§ 197. It is also employed in the singular when the subjects are either followed or preceded by such words as *chacun, nul, aucun, personne, rien, tout*, etc., as :—

Vous n'êtes point à vous, le temps, les biens, la vie, rien ne vous appartient, tout est à la patrie (Gresset) You do not belong to yourself, your time, your wealth, your life, nothing belongs to you, everything belongs to your native country.

§ 198. REMARK.—Sometimes when the verb precedes the subjects, it agrees only with one of them, as : *Tombe Argos et ses murs*, May Argos and its walls fall,† though the plural can also be used : *Vivent la Champagne et la Bourgogne pour les bons vins* (Académie); Champagne and Burgundy for ever for their good wines.

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT.

§ 199. As a general rule, we may say that the subject is always placed before the verb, as :—

Un Dieu suffit, la nature l'atteste (Chénier) We need a God, nature-bears witness to it
Les tiens (see SYNTAX, § 164) Thy race will cease to reign.
cesseront de régner (Fénelon)

* Compare in Latin : *Ætas et forma et super omnia Romanum nomen te ferociorem facit*, Your age and your handsomeness, and above all your being a Roman, make you more ferocious.

† Compare in Latin : *Convicta est Messalina et Silius*, Messalina and Silius were proved guilty.

§ 200. But in interrogations, when the subject is a pronoun; in exclamations; in the subjunctive mood, no conjunction being used, and in quotations (see SYNTAX, §. 128—§ 131) the subject is generally placed after the verb, as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Que deviendrai-je ?</i> | What will become of me ? |
| <i>Tombe sur moi le ciel, pourvu que je me venge (Corneille)</i> | Let heaven fall upon me provided I have my re- venge. |
| <i>Juste, Jérôme, continua le vieux soldat (Souvestre),</i> | You are right, Jerome, con- tinued the old soldier. |

§ 201. REMARK 1.—If in an interrogation the subject is a noun, it must, as a general rule, be placed before the verb, and then repeated after it by means of a pronoun, as : *par où Napoléon avait-il péri ?* (L. Blanc), through what did Napoleon perish ?

§ 202. REMARK 2.—If the subject is preceded by the interrogation *est-ce, est-ce que*, it is placed before the verb : *Est-ce que le roi est mort ?* Is the king dead ?

§ 203. The subject is also generally placed after the verb in a sentence beginning with *aussi, encore, en vain, toujours, peut-être, au moins, à peine*, etc., (see SYNTAX, § 131) as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Peut-être, Sophie, vous entre- tiendrais-je de l'astronomie (Aimé-Martin)</i> | Perhaps, Sophia, I will speak to you about astronomy |
| <i>Ces étoffes sont belles, aussi elles sont chères (Académie)</i> | These goods are beautiful, therefore they are dear. |

§ 204. REMARK.—Sometimes in poetry the subject is left out altogether, as : *si ne l'ai plus, dit-il, qui m'aimera ?* (Lebrun) ; if I have it no more, he said, who'll love me ? The *il* of unipersonal verbs is also sometimes left out, as : *je m'en vais, messieurs, quand bon me semblera* (Courcier), I will go, gentlemen, when I choose.

THE OBJECT OR GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 205. Some active verbs can have two objects, the one direct, the other indirect, as :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <p><i>Le dernier degré de la perversité est de faire servir les lois à l'injustice (Voltaire)</i></p> | <p>The last degree of corruption is to make the laws subservient to injustice.</p> |
|---|--|

. **Observe.**—Here *les lois*, the direct, is placed before *à l'injustice* the indirect complement; this is nearly always the case unless the sense requires the contrary.

§ 206. But one verb cannot govern two genitives, two datives, or two accusatives, as :—

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>C'est à vous mon esprit que</i> | It is to you, my mind, that |
| (not à qui), je veux parler | I wish to speak |
| (Boileau) | |

S'informe-t-il de ce que (not Does he inform himself what
ce que) je fais ? I am doing?

§ 207. When two verbs do not govern the same case, each has its distinct object, as:—

Je vais à Londres, et j'en reviens en quatre heures I am going to and coming back from London in four hours

Observe.—We could not say here: *je vais et reviens de Londres en quatre heures*, because *aller* requires *d* after it, whilst *revenir* governs the genitive.

§ 208. The object of passive verbs is expressed by *de* when we want to express a feeling, a passion, or an operation of the soul, and by *per* when we want to express some action having exclusive reference to the mind or body, as :—

*L'honnête homme est estimé
même de ceux qui n'ont pas
de probité* The honest man is esteemed
even by those who are not
honest

Les Gaules furent conquises Gaul was conquered by
par César . Caesar.

Observe.—Passive verbs are seldom used in French with inanimate objects. We prefer using an active verb with *on* (see SYNTAX, § 182) or a pronominal verb (see REMARK, SYNTAX, § 161), as : *ils se sont proménés*, they have been taking a walk ; *on avait appris beaucoup de leçons*, they have been learning many lessons.

§ 209. A preposition is used in French in the complement of neuter verbs transitive, because such verbs have of course no direct government, as :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>Ce travail nuit à sa santé</i> | This labour is injurious to his health |
| <i>J'ai dîné d'un poulet</i> | I have dined off a fowl. |

THE DIFFERENT PREPOSITIONS WHICH VERBS REQUIRE.

As a general rule, nothing is more difficult than to know what prepositions to place in French after verbs having as their object another verb in the present infinitive, or a noun or pronoun. Lists of the principal verbs are given here below.

I.—GOVERNMENT OF VERBS WITH OTHER VERBS.

§ 210. VERBS REQUIRING NO PREPOSITIONS BEFORE THE FOLLOWING VERB.

N.B.—Some observations are made on page 67 on all verbs in this list marked thus *.

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>aimer mieux,</i> | { to like better, to prefer, etc. | * <i>espérer,</i> | to hope |
| <i>aller,</i> | to go | * <i>faire,</i> | to make, to cause |
| <i>apercevoir,</i> | to perceive | <i> falloir,</i> | to be necessary |
| <i>assurer,</i> | to assure | * <i>s'imaginer,</i> | to fancy |
| <i>compter,</i> | { to expect, to intend | * <i>se laisser,</i> | to allow one's self |
| <i>croire,</i> | to believe | <i>laisser,</i> | to let, to allow |
| <i>daigner,</i> | to deign | <i>nier,</i> | to deny |
| <i>déclarer,</i> | to declare | <i>oser,</i> | to dare |
| <i>déposer,</i> | to depose | <i>paraître,</i> | to appear |
| * <i>désirer,</i> | to wish | <i>penser,</i> | to think |
| <i>devoir,</i> | { to owe, to be obliged | <i>préférer,</i> | to prefer |
| <i>entendre,</i> | to hear | * <i>prétendre,</i> | to intend, to pretend |
| <i>envoyer,</i> | to send | <i>pouvoir,</i> | to be able |
| | | <i>reconnaître,</i> | to recognise |
| | | <i>regarder,</i> | to look |
| | | <i>retourner,</i> | to go back |

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| <i>savoir</i> , | to know | <i>valoir mieux</i> , | to be worth more |
| <i>sembler</i> , | to seem | <i>*venir</i> , | to come |
| <i>sentir</i> , | to feel | <i>voir</i> , | to see |
| <i>*souhaiter</i> , | to wish for | <i>vouloir</i> , | to be willing. |
| <i>soutenir</i> , | to maintain | | |

Observations on some of the Verbs given above.

§ 211. *Désirer*, to wish; *espérer*, to hope; and *souhaiter*, to wish for, sometimes take the preposition *de*. *Désirer* takes *de* when the wish expressed is not certain to be realised, as: *il désire de gagner son procès*, he wishes to gain his law-suit; *espérer*, in the infinitive, takes always *de* before another infinitive, as: *peut-on espérer de vous revoir aujourd'hui?* may we hope to see you again to-day? The best French grammarians maintain that *souhaiter* takes *de* before an infinitive; the Académie uses it however without a preposition.

§ 212. *S'imaginer* and *se laisser* are the two only pronominal verbs which require no preposition before an infinitive. *Prétendre*, meaning to aim at, to aspire, takes *à*, as: *ne prétendez jamais à être mon ami*, never aspire to be my friend. (For *venir* taking *à* and *de*, see ACCIDENCE, Observations, page 81.)

§ 213. *Faire*, followed by an infinitive with an accusative, requires the person in the dative, as: *je lui ai fait raconter son histoire*, I have made him tell his history. But if there be no accusative after the infinitive, the pronoun stands in the accusative, as: *mon père les a fait partir*, my father made them depart.

§ 214. VERBS REQUIRING *à* BEFORE THE FOLLOWING VERB.

N.B. — Some observations are made at the bottom of this list on all verbs marked thus *.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>s'abaisser à</i> , | to stoop to | <i>s'acharner à</i> , | { to be cruelly bent against |
| <i>s'abandonner à</i> , | { to abandon one's self | <i>admettre à</i> , | to admit |
| <i>aboutir à</i> , | to end to | <i>s'adonner à</i> , | to addict one's self |
| <i>s'abuser à</i> , | to mistake | <i>*aider à</i> , | *to help |
| <i>s'accorder à</i> , | to agree | <i>aimer à</i> , | to like |
| <i>accoutûmer à</i> , | to accustom | <i>s'aguerrir à</i> , | to inure one's self |
| <i>s'accoutûmer à</i> , | { to accustom one's self | <i>s'amuser à</i> , | to delight in |
| | | <i>amûner à</i> , | to excite |

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>s'animer à,</i> | to excite one's self | <i>se dévouer à,</i> | to devote one's self |
| <i>s'appliquer à,</i> | to apply one's self | <i>disposer à</i> | to dispose |
| <i>apprendre à,</i> | to learn how | <i>se disposer à,</i> | to prepare one's self |
| <i>apprêter à,</i> | to afford matter | <i>se divertir à,</i> | to amuse one's self |
| <i>s'apprêter à,</i> | to dispose one's self | <i>donner à,</i> | to give |
| <i>s'arrêter à,</i> | to stop | <i>employer à,</i> | to employ |
| <i>aspirer à,</i> | to aspire | <i>s'employer à,</i> | to employ one's self |
| <i>assigner à,</i> | to summon | <i>encourager à,</i> | to encourage |
| <i>s'assujettir à,</i> | to submit one's self | <i>enhardir à,</i> | to embolden |
| <i>s'attacher à,</i> | to stick to | <i>enseigner à,</i> | to teach |
| <i>attendre à,</i> | to wait | <i>s'entendre à,</i> | to understand how |
| <i>s'attendre à,</i> | to expect | <i>s'étudier à,</i> | to study how |
| <i>s'augmenter à,</i> | to increase | <i>s'évertuer à,</i> | to strive |
| <i>autoriser à,</i> | to authorise | <i>exceller à,</i> | to excel in |
| <i>s'avilir à,</i> | to degrade one's self | <i>exciter à,</i> | to excite |
| <i>avoir à,</i> | to have | <i>s'exciter à,</i> | to excite one's self |
| <i>balancer à,</i> | to hesitate | <i>exercer à,</i> | to exercise |
| <i>borner à,</i> | to confine | <i>exhorter à,</i> | to exhort |
| <i>se borner à,</i> | to confine one's self | <i>exposer à,</i> | to expose one's self |
| <i>chercher à,</i> | to endeavour | <i>se fatiguer à,</i> | to tire one's self in |
| <i>se complaire à,</i> | to take pleasure in | <i>gagner à,</i> | to gain by |
| <i>concourir à,</i> | to concur | <i>habituer à,</i> | to accustom |
| <i>condamner à,</i> | to condemn | <i>s'habituer à,</i> | { to accustom one's |
| <i>se condamner à,</i> | { to condemn one's | <i>hàir à,</i> | { self |
| | self | | to hate |
| <i>condescendre à,</i> | to condescend | <i>se hasarder à,</i> | to hazard |
| <i>consister à,</i> | to consist | <i>hésiter à,</i> | to hesitate |
| <i>conspirer à,</i> | to conspire | <i>incliner à,</i> | to incline |
| <i>consumer à,</i> | to consume | <i>instruire à,</i> | to teach how |
| <i>se consumer à,</i> | to decay | <i>intéresser à,</i> | to interest |
| <i>contribuer à,</i> | to contribute | <i>s'intéresser à,</i> | { to interest one's self |
| <i>convier à,</i> | to invite | | { in |
| <i>*coûter à,</i> | to cost | <i>être intéressé à,</i> | to be interested |
| <i>décider à,</i> | to decide | <i>inviter à,</i> | to invite |
| <i>se décider à,</i> | to decide | <i>être invité à,</i> | to be invited |
| <i>démourer à,</i> | to stay | <i>jouer à,</i> | to play |
| <i>dépenser à,</i> | to spend | <i>se laisser à ou de,</i> | to tire one's self in |
| <i>désapprendre à</i> | to forget | <i>mettre à,</i> | to put |
| <i>destiner à,</i> | to design for | <i>se mettre à,</i> | to set about |
| <i>déterminer à,</i> | to determine | <i>montrer à,</i> | to show |
| <i>se déterminer à,</i> | to resolve upon | <i>s'obstiner à,</i> | to be obstinate in |

| | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>occuper à,</i> | to employ | <i>provoquer à,</i> | to provoke |
| <i>s'occuper à,</i> | to employ one's self | <i>réduire à,</i> | to reduce |
| <i>s'offrir à,</i> | to offer one's self | <i>se réduire à,</i> | to reduce to |
| <i>s'opiniâtrer à,</i> | to be obstinate in | <i>renoncer à,</i> | to renounce |
| <i>s'opposer à,</i> | to oppose one's self | <i>*répugner à,</i> | to have a reluctance |
| <i>passer à,</i> | to spend | <i>se résigner à,</i> | to submit to |
| <i>avoir peine à,</i> | to find difficulty in | <i>rester à,</i> | to stay |
| <i>pencher à,</i> | to be inclined to | <i>réussir à,</i> | to succeed |
| <i>*penser à,</i> | to think of | <i>*risquer à,</i> | to run the risk |
| <i>perdre à,</i> | to lose | <i>*servir à,</i> | to serve |
| <i>persévérer à,</i> | to persevere | <i>songer à,</i> | to think |
| <i>persister à,</i> | to persist | <i>se soumettre à,</i> | to submit to |
| <i>*se plaire à,</i> | to take delight in | <i>*suffire à,</i> | to suffice |
| <i>se plier à,</i> | to conform one's self | <i>*tarder à,</i> | to delay, to be long |
| <i>porter à,</i> | to induce | <i>tendre à,</i> | to aim |
| <i>pousser à,</i> | to excite | <i>tenir à,</i> | to aim at, to wish |
| <i>prendre plaisir à,</i> | to delight in | <i>travailler à,</i> | to work |
| <i>se préparer à,</i> | to prepare one's self | <i>trouver à,</i> | to find |
| <i>être prêt à,</i> | to be disposed | <i>viser à,</i> | to aim |
| <i>prétendre à,</i> | to aspire | | |

Observations on some of the Verbs mentioned above.

§ 215. *Aider à*, is to give personal assistance to another by labour, etc. *Aider une personne*, is to assist any one without sharing personally in his work, as: *je lui ai aidé à porter ce fardeau et je l'ai aidé de mon argent*, I assisted him to carry this burden, and with my money. *Penser*; a neuter verb, in the sense of to think of, to intend, requires *à*, as: *je pense à m'y trainer* (Voltaire), I intend to drag myself there.

§ 216. *Coûter*, to cost; *se plaire*, to take delight in; *répugner*, to have a reluctance; *servir*, to serve; *suffire*, to suffice; and *tarder*, to delay, to be long, take *de* when used unpersonally, as: *il me coûte, il me plaît, il me répugne, il me sert, il me suffit, il me tarde de venir*. *Risquer*, to run the risk, when only followed by an infinitive, takes *de*, as: *il risque de se noyer*, he runs the risk of being drowned.

§ 217. With the exception of *s'imaginer* and *se laisser* (see SYNTAX, § 212) and the pronominal verbs mentioned above, all other pronominal verbs require *de* before another infinitive. *S'occuper* takes *à* before verbs, *de* before nouns.

§ 218. VERBS REQUIRING *de* BEFORE THE FOLLOWING VERB.

N.B.—Some observations are made at the bottom of this list on all verbs marked thus *.

| | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>s'abstenir</i> de, | to abstain | <i>avoir permission</i> | } to have permission |
| <i>accuser</i> de, | to accuse | de, | |
| <i>s'accuser</i> de, | to accuse one's self | <i>avoir peur</i> de, | to be afraid |
| <i>achever</i> de, | { to complete, to | <i>avoir raison</i> de, | to be in the right |
| | finish | <i>avoir soin</i> de, | to take care |
| <i>affecter</i> de, | to affect | <i>avoir tort</i> de, | to be in the wrong |
| <i>affliger</i> de, | to afflict | <i>blâmer</i> de, | to hurt |
| <i>s'affliger</i> de, | to grieve | <i>briguer</i> de, | to be ambitious |
| <i>s'agir</i> de (unip.), | to be questioned of | <i>brûler</i> de, | to burn, to be anxious |
| <i>ambitionner</i> de, | to have the ambition | <i>censurer</i> de, | to censure |
| <i>appartenir</i> de | } to belong | <i>cesser</i> de, | to cease |
| (unip.), | | <i>chagriner</i> de, | to grieve |
| <i>s'apercevoir</i> de, | to be aware | <i>charger</i> de, | to charge, etc. |
| <i>appréhender</i> de, | to apprehend, to fear | <i>se charger</i> de, | { to take upon one's |
| <i>arrêter</i> de, | to stop, to fix | | self |
| <i>attendrir</i> de, | to move | <i>choisir</i> de, | to select |
| <i>attrister</i> de, | to sadden | * <i>commander</i> de, | to command |
| <i>avertir</i> de, | to warn | <i>conjuré</i> de, | to beseech |
| <i>s'aviser</i> de, | to think of | <i>conseiller</i> de, | to advise |
| <i>avoir l'ambition</i> | to have the ambition | <i>se consoler</i> de, | to console one's self |
| de, | { to | <i>se contenter</i> de, | to be satisfied |
| <i>avoir l'art</i> de, | to have the art | <i>convaincre</i> de, | to convince |
| <i>avoir l'avantage</i> | to have the advantage | <i>convenir</i> de, | to agree |
| de, | { tage | <i>conclure</i> de, | to conclude |
| <i>avoir l'audace</i> | to have the audacity | <i>craindre</i> de, | to fear |
| de, | { city | <i>décourager</i> de, | to dishearten |
| <i>avoir le bonheur</i> | to have the good | <i>dédaigner</i> de, | to disdain |
| de, | { luck | <i>se dédire</i> de, | to retract |
| <i>avoir le malheur</i> | to have the mis- | * <i>défendre</i> de, | to forbid |
| de, | { fortune | <i>se défier</i> de, | to distrust |
| <i>avoir coutume</i> de | to be in the habit | <i>dégouter</i> de, | to give a dislike |
| <i>avoir garde</i> de, | to mind lest | <i>délibérer</i> de, | to deliberate |
| <i>avoir honte</i> de, | to be ashamed of | <i>demander en</i> | } to beg as a favour |
| <i>avoir occasion</i> | to have an opportunity | <i>grâce</i> de, | |
| * de, | | | |

| | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>se dépêcher de,</i> | to make haste | <i>finir de,</i> | to finish |
| <i>désaccoutumer de,</i> | to disaccustom ^s | <i>se flatter de,</i> | to flatter one's self |
| <i>désespérer de,</i> | to despair | <i>frémir de,</i> | to shudder |
| <i>désahâituer de,</i> | to disaccustom | <i>*gager de,</i> | to wager |
| <i>se désister de,</i> | to give over | <i>se garder de,</i> | to forbear |
| <i>déterminer de,</i> | to determine | <i>gémir de,</i> | to groan |
| <i>détester de,</i> | to detest | <i>gêner de,</i> | to incommode |
| <i>détourner de,</i> | to turn from | <i>se glorifier de,</i> | to glory |
| <i>différer de,</i> | to put off | <i>gronder de,</i> | to scold |
| <i>dire de,</i> | to say, to tell | <i>se hâter de,</i> | to hasten |
| <i>discontinuer de,</i> | to leave off | <i>*hériter de,</i> | to inherit |
| <i>disconvenir de,</i> | to disown | <i>hésiter de,</i> | to hesitate |
| <i>se disculper de,</i> | { to exculpate one's self | <i>s'impatienter de,</i> | to grow impatient |
| <i>dispenser de,</i> | to dispense | <i>importer de(unip.),</i> | to matter •• |
| <i>dissuader de,</i> | to dissuade | <i>imputer de,</i> | to impute |
| <i>se douter de,</i> | { to surmise, to sus- pect | <i>s'indigner de,</i> | to feel indignant |
| <i>écrire de,</i> | to write | <i>s'ingérer de,</i> | to interfere • |
| <i>s'effrayer de,</i> | to be afraid | <i>inspirer de,</i> | to inspire |
| <i>empêcher de,</i> | to prevent | <i>interdire de,</i> | to interdict |
| <i>enjoindre de,</i> | to enjoin | <i>juger à propos de,</i> | to judge proper |
| <i>s'enorgueillir de,</i> | to be proud of | <i>jurer de,</i> | to swear |
| <i>enrager de,</i> | to be in a rage | <i>justifier de,</i> | to justify |
| <i>entreprendre de,</i> | to undertake | <i>se laisser de,</i> | to grow tired |
| <i>épargner de,</i> | to spare | <i>louer de,</i> | to praise |
| <i>essayer de,</i> | to try | <i>mander de,</i> | to inform |
| <i>s'étonner de,</i> | to be astonished | <i>méditer de,</i> | to meditate |
| <i>être accusé de,</i> | to be accused | <i>se mêler de,</i> | to meddle with • |
| <i>être bien-aise de,</i> | to be glad | <i>menacer de,</i> | to threaten |
| <i>être étonné de,</i> | to be astonished | <i>mériter de,</i> | to deserve |
| <i>être rassasié de,</i> | to be satiated | <i>mourir de,</i> | to die |
| <i>être ravi de,</i> | to be delighted | <i>négliger de,</i> | to neglect |
| <i>être rebuté de,</i> | to be discouraged | <i>nier de,</i> | to deny |
| <i>être tenté de,</i> | to be tempted | <i>notifier de,</i> | to notify ^s |
| <i>éviter de,</i> | to avoid | <i>obliger de,</i> | { to oblige, doing a service |
| <i>excuser de,</i> | to excuse | <i>obtenir de,</i> | to obtain • |
| <i>exempter de,</i> | to free | <i>*offrir de,</i> | to offer |
| <i>s'empresser de,</i> | to hasten | <i>omettre de,</i> | to omit |
| <i>seindre de,</i> | to feign | <i>ordonner de,</i> | to order |
| <i>féliciter de,</i> | to congratulate | <i>oublier de,</i> | to forget |
| | | <i>pardonner de,</i> | to forgive |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| * <i>parier</i> de, | to bet | <i>se réjouir</i> de, | to rejoice |
| <i>parler</i> de, | to speak | <i>remercier</i> de, | to thank |
| <i>permettre</i> de, | to allow | <i>se repentir</i> de, | to repent |
| * <i>persuader</i> de, | to persuade | <i>reprendre</i> de, | to reprove |
| <i>pétiller</i> de, | to be full, to boil | <i>reprimer</i> de, | to reprimand |
| <i>se piquer</i> de, | to pride | <i>reprocher</i> de, | to reproach |
| <i>plaindre</i> de, | to pity | <i>se souvenir</i> de, | to remember |
| <i>se plaindre</i> de, | to complain | <i>rire</i> de, | to laugh |
| * <i>prendre garde</i> de, | to take care | <i>rougir</i> de, | to blush |
| <i>prescrire</i> de, | to prescribe | <i>scandaliser</i> de, | to scandalize |
| * <i>préférer</i> de, | to prefer | <i>scoir</i> de (unip.), | to suit |
| <i>presser</i> de, | to urge | <i>se servir</i> de, | to use |
| <i>présumer</i> de, | to presume | <i>sommer</i> de, | to summons |
| <i>priver</i> de, | to deprive | <i>se soucier</i> de, | to care |
| <i>projeter</i> de, | to intend | <i>souffrir</i> de, | to allow |
| <i>promettre</i> de, | to promise | <i>soupçonner</i> de, | to suspect |
| <i>proposer</i> de, | to propose | <i>sourire</i> de, | to smile |
| <i>se proposer</i> de, | to intend | <i>se souvenir</i> de, | to remember |
| <i>protester</i> de, | to protest | <i>suggérer</i> de, | to suggest |
| <i>punir</i> de, | to punish | <i>supplier</i> de, | to beseech |
| * <i>se rappeler</i> de, | to remember | <i>tenter</i> de, | to attempt |
| <i>recommander</i> de, | to recommend | <i>trembler</i> de, | to tremble |
| * <i>refuser</i> de, | to refuse | <i>se vanter</i> de, | to boast |
| <i>regretter</i> de, | to regret | | |

Observations on some of the Verbs mentioned above.

§ 219. *Défendre*, to forbid, takes *que* and the subjunctive when it is not followed by a noun or pronoun, as: *je défends qu'on prenne les armes*, I forbid them to take up arms. *Gager* and *parier* both mean to bet, but when we use the first we attach to our bet a greater amount of probability in gaining it, than when we use the second. *Offrir*, to offer; and *refuser*, to refuse, take *à* when used reflectively. *Prendre garde*, to take care, takes *à* when followed by an infinitive and a negation, as: *prenez garde à ne pas danser*, take care not to dance; but: *prenez garde de danser*. (See SYNTAX, § 329.) *Persuader* and *commander* take *de* before verbs; *à* before nouns.

§ 220. *Hériter*, to inherit, when having two governments, one of persons, another of things, takes only *de* before the person, as: *vous avez hérité ce nom de vos aïeux* (Corneille), you have inherited this name from your ancestors. *Préférer*, to prefer, is used without a preposition when only followed by an infinitive, as: *je préfère mourir*. *Se rappeler*, to remember, takes no preposition before a noun, as: *je me rappelle cet*

homme. Refuser takes *d* when used with a noun, *il a refusé d son père*, he refused his father; we may also say, *il lui a refusé d dîner*, etc., because *dîner* is used here substantively.

§ 221. VERBS REQUIRING SOMETIMES *de* AND SOMETIMES *d* BEFORE THE FOLLOWING VERB.

Commencer à, to begin, when the action continues, as: *cet enfant commence à marcher*

Commencer de, when speaking of an action without regard to its duration, as: *cet orateur commença de parler à quatre heures et finit à dix*

Consentir may take *d* or *de*

Continuer à, to go on without interruption, as: *continuez à bien vivre*

Continuer de, to go on with interruption, as: *continuez d'agir*

Contraindre à, to compel when there is a purpose, as: *on le contraignit à marcher*

Contraindre de, in the passive voice, as: *il a été contraint de venir*

Demander à, to ask, when the same person performs the two actions, as: *je demande à parler au roi*

Demander de, when not performed by the same, as: *je vous demande de m'écouter*

S'efforcer à, to exert our strength, as: *ne vous efforcez point d parler*

S'efforcer de, or *à*, to exert our mind, as: *on s'efforce en vain de me faire taire*

S'empresser, to hasten, may take *d* or *de*

Engager, to advise, may take *d* or *de*

S'ennuyer, to be tired of, takes *d* or *de*

Essayer, or *tâcher*, to try, when wishing to show purpose, takes *d*, as: *essayez d le faire parler*

Essayer de, or *tâcher de*, in the sense of to endeavour, when wishing to show the action, as: *cet homme a essayé de marcher*

Forcer, to compel, takes *d* or *de*

Manquer, to fail, takes *d* or *de* when affirmatively; *de* when negatively, as: *qui cherche Dieu de bonne foi ne manque jamais de le trouver*. This verb, in the sense of to fail in one's duties or one's word, takes *d*, as: *il a manqué d ses obligations*

Manquer, in the sense of to be near, takes *de*, as: *il a manqué de tomber*

Obliger à, to force, to compel, supposes some outward cause, as: *les soldats nous obligeaient à fuir*; it takes also *à* as a pronominal verb, as: *il s'oblige à nous servir*

Oublier à, to forget how to do a thing, as: *on oublie à danser* (rather antiquated)

Prier à, to invite formally, as: *je vous prie à dîner Mardi prochain*; also always with *à* in the passive voice, as: *nous sommes priés à dîner*

Résoudre, to resolve, takes *à* or *de* in the passive; *à* only as a pronominal verb, as: *je suis résolu*, or *je me suis résolu à écrire*

Se tuer, to kill one's self, takes *à*, as: *mon père se tue à voyager*. Meaning to be tired of, it takes *à* or *de*.

Obliger de, to force, to compel, when the obligation exists within ourselves, as: *m'étant cassé le bras, je fus obligé de m'arrêter*. *Obliger*, in the sense of to render a service, to do a favour, takes *de*, as: *vous m'obligerez beaucoup de me recommander*; in the passive voice this verb takes also *de*, as: *ils sont obligés de vivre*

Oublier de, to forget to do a thing, as: *on oublie d'aller dans un endroit*

Prier de, when there is no formal invitation, as: *il est venu me voir à l'heure de dîner, et je l'ai prié de dîner*

Résoudre de, as an active verb, as: *J'ai résolu d'écrire*.

II.—GOVERNMENT OF VERBS WITH NOUNS OR PRONOUNS.

§ 222. VERBS GOVERNING A DIRECT OBJECT IN FRENCH THOUGH NOT IN ENGLISH.

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>accepter</i> , | to accept of | <i>désirer</i> , | to wish for |
| <i>admettre</i> , | to admit of | <i>écouter</i> , | to listen to |
| <i>approuver</i> , | to approve of | <i>envoyer chercher</i> , | to send for |
| <i>attendre</i> , | to wait for | <i>*espérer</i> , | to hope for |
| <i>chercher</i> , | to look for | <i>expier</i> , | to atone for |
| <i>connaître</i> , | { to be acquainted | <i>fournir</i> , | to supply with |
| | { with | <i>payer</i> , | to pay for |
| <i>considérer</i> , | to look upon | <i>posséder</i> , | to be possessed of |
| <i>démander</i> , | to ask for | <i>prier Dieu</i> , | to pray to God |

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| * <i>regarder</i> , | to look at or upon | * <i>résoudre</i> , | to resolve upon |
| <i>remettre</i> , | to put off | * <i>souhaiter</i> , | to wish for. |
| <i>rencontrer</i> , | to meet with | | |

Observe.—*Regarder* takes no preposition before a verb; *espérer* and *souhaiter* require a preposition before a verb in the infinitive. (See SYNTAX, § 210 and § 211.) For *résoudre* followed by a verb see SYNTAX, § 221.

§ 223. VERBS REQUIRING IN FRENCH THE PREPOSITION *de* BEFORE
A NOUN OR PRONOUN.

N.B.—All the verbs marked thus * take also *de* before another verb following them. (See SYNTAX, § 218.)

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>accabler de</i> , | to overwhelm | * <i>disconvenir de</i> , | to disown |
| <i>s'acquitter de</i> , | to discharge | <i>douter de</i> , | to doubt |
| * <i>s'affliger de</i> , | to grieve at | <i>envelopper de</i> , | to wrap up in |
| * <i>s'apercevoir de</i> ,† | to be aware of | <i>faire de</i> , | to make use of |
| <i>approcher de</i> ,† | to approach | <i>faire cadeau de</i> , | to present with |
| <i>s'approcher de</i> , | to draw near | * <i>féliciter de</i> | } to congratulate on |
| <i>s'armer de</i> , | { to arm one's self with | (with things) <i>fourmiller de</i> , | |
| <i>avoir besoin de</i> , | to want, to require | * <i>gémir de</i> , | to groan |
| <i>avoir pitié de</i> , | to pity | <i>honorer de</i> , | to honour with |
| * <i>avoir, or pren-</i> | } to take care of | <i>jouir de</i> , | to enjoy |
| <i>dre soin de</i> , | | <i>médire de</i> , | { to traduce, to slan- der |
| * <i>brûler de</i> , | to burn with | * <i>se mêler de</i> , | to meddle with |
| <i>changer de</i> , | to change | <i>se moquer de</i> , | to laugh at |
| * <i>charger de</i> , | } to load with | * <i>mourir de</i> , | to die |
| <i>combler de</i> , | | <i>munir de</i> , | { to furnish, to pro- vide with |
| * <i>se contenter de</i> , | to be satisfied with | <i>s'occuper de</i> , | to employ one's self |
| <i>couvrir de</i> , | to cover with | <i>se passer de</i> , | to do without |
| * <i>se défier de</i> , | } to distrust | <i>périr de</i> , | to perish with |
| <i>se méfier de</i> , | | <i>profiter de</i> , | to profit by |
| <i>dépendre de</i> , | { to be dependent upon | <i>pourvoir de</i> , | to provide with* |
| <i>se démettre de</i> , | to give up | | |

† *Apercevoir*, not used as a pronominal verb, governs the accusative and applies to visible objects, as: *j'aperçus l'arc-en-ciel*, I perceived the rainbow. *Approcher*, as an active verb, can also be used without *de*, above all in the sense of to advance, to push near.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| *punir de (with things) | } to punish for | *s repentir de, | to repent |
| récompenser de, | to reward for | *rire de, | to laugh at |
| regarder de. | to regard with | rougir de, | to blush |
| *se réjouir de, | to rejoice at | *se souvenir de, | to remember |
| *remercier de | } to thank for | *sourire de, | to smile at |
| with things) | | triompher de, | to triumph over |
| remplir de, | to fill with | se tromper de, | to mistake |
| | | vivre de, | to live on |

Observe.—Besides the above list nearly all verbs which in English require the preposition *of* or *from* take *de* before a noun.

§ 224. VERBS REQUIRING IN FRENCH THE PRÉPOSITION *d* BEFORE A NOUN OR PRONOUN, AND HAVING THE DIRECT OBJECT IN ENGLISH.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| *apprendre à, | to learn how | persuader à, | to persuade |
| attenter à, | to attempt | plaie à, | to pretend |
| commander à, | to command | prétendre à, | to listen to |
| conseiller à, | to advise | prêter l'oreille à, | to please |
| convenir à, | to suit | remédier à, | to remedy |
| défendre à, | to forbid | *renoncer à, | } to renounce something |
| déplaire à, | to displease | | |
| désobéir à, | to disobey | reprocher à, | to reproach |
| dire à, | to tell | résigner à, | to resign something |
| faire tort à, | to do wrong | résister à, | to resist |
| se fier à, | to trust | ressembler à, | to resemble |
| importer à, | to concern | succéder à, | to relieve |
| nuire à, | to hurt, to injure | succéder à, | to succeed |
| obéir à, | to obey | se soustraire à, | } to keep out of the way |
| ordonner à, | to order | | |
| pardonner à, | to forgive | survivre à, | to outlive |
| parvenir à, | to attain | toucher à, | to touch something |
| permettre à, | to allow | | |

Observe.—*Apprendre* and *renoncer* take also the preposition *d* before another verb following them. (See SYNTAX, § 214.)

§ 225. VERBS REQUIRING IN FRENCH THE PRÉPOSITION *d* BEFORE A NOUN OR PRONOUN AND REQUIRING ALSO A PREPOSITION IN ENGLISH.

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| *emprunter à, | to borrow of or from | pouvoir à, | to provide for |
| frapper à, | to knock at | présider à, | to preside over |
| *penser à, | } to think of | reprocher à | } to reproach some one with |
| songer à, | | quelqu'un, | |

Observe.—*Emprunter*, when used with a personal pronoun, requires *à*, or rather governs the dative, as: *je lui emprunte cet argent*, I borrow this money from him. But when used with a noun *à* or *de* can be employed, as: *il emprunte à*, or *de mon frère*. *Penser à* and *songer à* can also be followed by a verb. (See SYNTAX, § 214 and § 215.)

§ 226. VERBS WHICH GOVERN A NOUN OR PRONOUN WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION, ACCORDING TO THEIR DIFFERENT MEANINGS.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>abuser quelqu'un,</i> | to deceive some one |
| <i>abuser de quelque chose,</i> | to abuse something |
| <i>applaudir quelque chose,</i> | to applaud something |
| <i>applaudir à quelqu'un,</i> | to applaud some one |
| <i>assister quelqu'un,</i> | to assist some one |
| <i>assister à quelque chose,</i> | to be present at |
| <i>changer quelque chose,</i> | to change, to alter |
| <i>changer de quelque chose,</i> | to choose one thing for another |
| <i>changer en quelque chose,</i> | to turn into |
| <i>convenir de quelque chose,</i> | to agree (with <i>être</i>) |
| <i>convenir à quelqu'un,</i> | to suit |
| <i>croire quelqu'un ou quelque chose,</i> | to believe some one or something |
| <i>croire à quelque chose,</i> | to believe in something |
| <i>croire en quelqu'un,</i> | to believe in some one |
| <i>demander quelqu'un ou quelque chose,</i> | to ask for some one or something |
| <i>demander à quelqu'un,</i> | to ask a person |
| <i>échapper and s'échapper de,</i> | to escape from |
| <i>échapper à,</i> | to avoid, to be preserved from |
| <i>insulter quelqu'un ou quelque chose,</i> | to insult some one or something |
| <i>insulter à quelqu'un,</i> | to deride, to scorn |
| <i>jouer à quelque jeu,</i> | to play at a game |
| <i>jouer de l'argent,</i> | to play for money |
| <i>jouer d'un instrument,</i> | to play on an instrument |
| <i>se jouer de quelqu'un,</i> | to laugh at, to deceive |
| <i>persuader quelqu'un de quelque chose,</i> | to convince a person of the truth of a thing |
| <i>persuader quelque chose à quelqu'un,</i> | to persuade one to something |
| <i>répondre à quelqu'un,</i> | to answer |
| <i>répondre de quelqu'un,</i> | to answer for |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>satisfaire quelqu'un,</i> | to satisfy |
| <i>satisfaire à quelque chose,</i> | to fulfil duties to |
| <i>servir quelqu'un,</i> | to serve some one |
| <i>servir de quelque chose,</i> | to serve as something |
| <i>souscrire quelque chose,</i> | to subscribe, to sign |
| <i>souscrire à quelque chose,</i> | to approve of, to subscribe to |
| <i>user quelque chose;</i> | to use, to wear out |
| <i>user de quelque chose,</i> | to make use of |

THE USE OF TENSES, SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

§ 227. This tense expresses generally an actual state,* as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Notre siècle est fécond en sots admirateurs</i> (Boileau) | Our age is fertile in foolish admirers |
| <i>La superstition cause mille accidents</i> (La Fontaine) | Superstition causes a thousand accidents. |

§ 228. REMARK 1.—Sometimes the present is used for an action not yet finished, as: *Tout, fiefs, châteaux, vassallages, pour ce coup à frapper je te les donne, ami* (V. Hugo); Everything, fiefs, castles, vassalage, I'll give them to you, friend, if you strike this blow.

REMARK 2.—The present is also used when speaking of past events connected with present action.† as: *Depuis que tu es avec moi, je ne suis plus reine* (Scribe); Since you have been with me I am no longer queen.

§ 229. It is also used, in French as well as in English, in mentioning events which are past. This is chiefly done to give more animation to the narrative; this tense is then called the *Historical present*.‡

* Compare in Latin: *Omne animal sensus habet*, Every animal has senses.

† Compare in Latin: *Veniunt, ut dico, ad Chelidonem*, They come, as I say, to Chelidon.

‡ Compare in Latin: *Tum discedunt; postidie revertuntur*, Then they depart; the next day they return.

César s'écrie, scélérat, que fais-tu? Casca appelle son frère à son secours. Dès que César voit Brutus lever le poignard sur lui il quitte la main de Casca (Michelet)

Cæsar cries out, Villain, what are you doing? Casca calls his brother to his assistance. As soon as Cæsar sees Brutus raise his dagger against him, he lets go Casca's hand.

§ 230. REMARK.—The present can be followed or preceded by an imperfect or preterite,* as: *Phaon arrête. Néron et lui offre un asile; il l'accepte et fuit. L'infâme Sporus et trois esclaves composaient sa seule escorte* (Ségur), Phaon stops Nero, and offers to give him shelter; he accepts it, and flees. The infamous Sporus and three slaves formed his only escort.

§ 231. The present is also sometimes used instead of the future, when the period of time referred to is short, as:—

Demain l'Europe entière attend cette poursuite (Ponsard)

To-morrow the whole of Europe will await this pursuit

Dans un moment je reviens sur mes traces

In a moment I will retrace my steps.

Observe.—After such expressions as *as soon as*, *when*, etc., the French use the future, the English the present. (See SYNTAX, § 246.)

IMPERFECT.

§ 232. This tense is used when two actions are taking place at the same time,† as:—

Lorsqu'il était laquais, il n'était pas si sage (Quinault)

When he was a lackey he was not so wise

* This alteration of tenses takes place also in Latin, as: *Quum diu anceps fuisset certamen hostem expellunt*, After the contest had been a long time doubtful, they expel the enemy.

† Compare in Latin: *Catilina erat unus timendus tam diu, dum manibus urbis continebatur*, Catilina was alone to be feared as long as he was restricted to the walls of the city.

Les vaisseaux restaient à sec The ships remained ashore
tant que durait l'hiver as long as the winter
(Le Bas.) lasted.

§ 233. This tense is also used to describe two actions, one of which may or may not be finished. But in the latter case, the verb expressing the action going on must be in the imperfect, whilst the second verb is generally in the preterite definite or indefinite. **Observe**, that the imperfect can never be used in describing an action which is ended at the moment we are speaking, as:—

Je dormais lorsqu'il entra I was asleep when he came in
Je le surpris pendant qu'il I surprised him whilst he
écrivait was writing.

§ 234. The imperfect is employed when actions are performed, habitually or frequently. In this case it can always be translated by the English words *used to*, or *was in the habit of*:—

Roland avait des manières Roland had very simple man-
simples, il aimait la liberté ners, he loved liberty
(Mignet)
Augustin disait à ceux qui Augustine said to those who
allaient pieds-nus (Château- were going bare-footed.
briand)

§ 235. It is also used in describing the qualities or the character of persons and things, as:—

Charles avait le titre d'invincible Charles had the name of in-
(Voltaire) vincible
Jérusalem était entourée d'une Jerusalem was surrounded by
triple muraille (Capefigue) a triple wall.

§ 236. The imperfect is also used in the descriptive style, as:—

* Compare in Latin: *Maiores nostri libertis non multo secus, ac servis imperabant*
 Our ancestors used to command their freedmen very much the same as they did their slaves.

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Ils se quittaient, ils revenaient, s'embrasser encore. Gonzalve demandait à Lara de ne point chercher les périls ; Lara suppliait Gonzalve de modérer sa fierté naturelle</i> (Florian) | They left each other, they returned to embrace each other once more. Gonzalvo begged of Lara not to run into dangers ; Lara entreated Gonzalvo to moderate his inborn haughtiness. |
|---|--|

§ 237. After the conjunction *si*, when meaning *if*, the French, employ the present or imperfect indicative ; after *si*, when meaning *whether*, the conditional, as :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Si sa santé le lui permet il sortira</i> | He shall go out if his health will allow it |
| <i>S'il revenait vous seriez fort embarrassé</i> (Académie) | If he came back you would be much embarrassed. |
| <i>J'ignore si mon frère viendra cette année à Paris</i> | I do not know whether my brother will come this year to Paris. |

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

§ 238. This tense is generally used in the historical style, and expresses actions or past facts completely finished, which have happened but once, or very seldom, but the day in which we speak cannot form a part of the time in which the action took place, as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Il vint ici l'an dernier</i> | He came here last year |
| <i>Il se rendit le soir à la société populaire, il lut son discours</i> (Mignet) | He went in the evening to the club and read his speech |
| <i>Je le priai de me prendre sur son cheval, il y consentit</i> (Florian) | I begged of him to take me on his horse, he consented to do it. |

Observe.—The imperfect is used when speaking of persons or things as they were, the preterite definite in speaking of actions or facts

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

§ 239. This tense refers to a past action, without specifying the time when it happened, and which generally is not far distant, as :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>J'ai eu une longue conversation avec Firmin. J'ai commencé par l'assurer que son mariage était certain; il s'est obstiné à me dire que non</i> (Florian) | I have had a long conversation with Firmin. I began by assuring him that his marriage was certain; he persisted in denying it. |
|---|--|

§ 240. The preterite indefinite must also be used when speaking of an action that happened at a time extending up to or beyond the moment of speaking. In such a case the expressions *ce matin*, *aujourd'hui*, *cette semaine*, etc., are generally used,* as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Le roi m'a nommé aujourd'hui archevêque</i> (Fénelon) | The king has to-day appointed me archbishop |
| <i>J'ai tenu hier ma seconde séance, j'ai été comblé d'applaudissements</i> (B. de St. Pierre) | I gave yesterday my second lecture, and was much applauded. |

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

§ 241. This tense is generally preceded by a conjunction or an adverb of time, such as *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, as soon as, *lorsque*, etc. :—

* "The limitation of particular past or future inflections, or even auxiliary combinations, to specific portions of time, is a source of constant embarrassment in the use of words without any corresponding logical or rhetorical benefit. Thus the French rule, strict conformity to which requires us to say : *elle chanta hier au lever du soleil*, she sang yesterday at sunrise, but *elle a chanté ce matin, au lever du soleil*, she has sung this morning at sunrise, is a blemish in the syntax, not an advantage. In these, and other like phrases, the time is really fixed, not by the form of the verb, but by the words *yesterday* and *this morning*; and the distinction between the tenses has, in their present use, no solid foundation; whereas in English the difference between the preterite and the compound, *he sang* and *he has sung*, is a logical one. The consequence is, that in French practice the grammatical *has*, been found too subtle to be observed, and the compound is very frequently employed where the preterite should be."—GEORGE P. MARSH, *The Origin and History of the English Language*.

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Lorsqu'il eut fini il s'en alla</i> | When he had done he went away |
| <i>Dès que le parlement se fut assemblé l'émeute cessa</i> | As soon as the parliament was assembled the riot ceased |

PLUPERFECT.

§ 242. The pluperfect is used like the imperfect for descriptions, for a continuation of events, and for frequently repeated actions,* as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Malesherbes avait hérité des ver- tus parlementaires (Mignet)</i> | Malesherbes had inherited parliamentary virtues. |
|--|---|

§ 243. This tense is also used after the conjunction *si*, if, instead of the conditional past, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Si vous étiez venu plus tôt vous m'auriez trouvé à la maison</i> | If you had come sooner you would have found me at home. |
|---|---|

FUTURE.

§ 244. This tense denotes, in general, future events,† as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Je le dis et je le soutiendrai</i> (Regnard) | I say so and will maintain it. |
| <i>Vous serez mon ami quand vous me quitterez (Voltaire)</i> | You will be my friend when (see SYNTAX, § 246) you leave me. |

§ 245. It is sometimes used as a softened form of the imperative, implying the expectation of fulfilment,‡ as:

* Compare in Latin: *Si modum orationi posuisset, misericordia sui animos audientium impleverat*, If he had been moderate in his speech he would have (i.e. had) filled the minds of his hearers with pity for himself.

+ Compare in Latin: *Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus*, If we follow (i.e. shall follow) nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.

‡ Compare in Latin: *Ibi tribunos plebis orabitur*, You will appoint (or appoint) tribunes of the plebs.

Ces demoiselles voudront bien m'excuser (Berquin) These young ladies, will they be kind enough to excuse me.

§ 246. In English the present tense is generally used after *when, as soon as, do as, it, will be as*, but in French the future is required, as:—

Vous pouvez venir quand vous voudrez You can come when you like

Ce sera comme bon vous semblera It will be as you like.

{ 247. REMARK 1.—When *shall* and *will* denote determination, they are to be translated by *vouloir*, as: *Je veux le faire*, I will do it; *Je veux que vous le fassiez*, You shall do it.

§ 248. REMARK 2.—When we can use in English, instead of the future, the verb *to be going to*, we have to render that tense in French by *aller*, as: *Napoléon dit à ses soldats: nous allons entreprendre la conquête de l'Égypte. Les peuples avec lesquels nous allons vivre sont Mahométans*, Napoleon said to his soldiers: We (shall) are going to undertake the conquest of Egypt. The people amongst whom we (shall) are going to live are Mahometans.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

§ 249. This tense corresponds to the English,* but the preterite indefinite or present indicative is sometimes used after *when, as soon as*, etc. (see SYNTAX, § 231); this cannot be done in French, as: *Quand vous aurez dit vos leçons vous pourrez vous en aller*, When you have said your lessons you may go.

§ 250. REMARK.—Sometimes this tense is replaced by the preterite subjunctive, as: *J'attends pour l'épouser que j'aie fait fortune*, I wait to marry her until I have made my fortune.

* Compare in Latin: *In una urbe universam cepertis Hispaniam*, In one city you will have taken the whole of Spain.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

§ 251. This tense is employed in the same way as in English, as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Eugène resterait avec ce monarque ; son âge, son rang inférieur répondraient de sa soumission. Il en donnerait l'exemple aux autres maréchaux (Ségur)</i> | Eugène would remain with this king ; his age, his inferior rank would answer for his submission. He would give the example of it to the other marshals. |
|--|---|

§ 252. The conditional is generally used in dependent clauses, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Les Janissaires jurèrent sur leurs barbes qu'ils n'attaqueraient point le roi (Voltaire)</i> | The Janissaries swore by their beards that they would not attack the king |
| <i>Nous convînmes que nous partirions le lendemain (Chateaubriand)</i> | We agreed that we should set out the next day. |

§ 253. REMARK.—The English *I wish*, when it does not relate to something past, must be translated by the conditional of *vouloir*, to be willing, as: *je voudrais qu'il vînt bientôt*, I wish he would come soon.

§ 254. In elegant style the pluperfect subjunctive is often used for the conditional past,* and this in simple as well as in dependent clauses, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Il n'eût point de son livre illustré l'Italie</i> | He would not have illustrated Italy by his book |
| <i>Je me serais consolé si monsieur le comte eût succombé (Bouilly)</i> | I should have consoled myself, if the count had fallen. |

* Compare the Latin, as: *Si Neptunus, quod Theseo promiserat, non fecisset, Theseus filio non esset orbatus*, If Neptune had not done what he had promised Theseus, Theseus would not have been deprived of his son.

§ 255. REMARK.—The auxiliaries *should*, *ought*, *could*, and *might*, when used in a past conditional, are followed in English by a compound infinitive, in French by the infinitive present only, as: *vous auriez dû écrire une lettre*, you ought to have written a letter; *j'aurais pu lui donner de l'argent*, I could have given him some money.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 256. In most cases the subjunctive is dependent, and is chiefly used in subordinate sentences. Therefore, wherever in French a subordinate sentence depends on another which contains the idea of something not yet having *actual existence* for the speaker, consequently of something *possible* or *uncertain*, the verb of the subordinate clause must be in the subjunctive mood. This unreality can apply to *external* actions and events, as well as to *internal* conceptions and emotions. This is the general ground of distinction in the application of the subjunctive.

Observe.—There is a great difference between the use of the subjunctive mood in French and in English. In English many verbs are placed in the future, conditional, and present indicative, which, in French, must be used in the subjunctive: *il ne pense pas que je sois si malade*, he does not think I am so ill; *je ne suis pas sûr qu'il le fasse*, I am not certain that he will do it.

§ 257. The verbs which govern the verb of the subordinate clause in the subjunctive mood can be divided into five classes:—

I. Verbs that express a wish, a will, a command, or a permission.

II. Verbs of thinking, believing, when used negatively, interrogatively, or preceded by *si*.

III. Verbs expressing fear, doubt, sorrow, astonishment, denial, joy, or delight.

IV. Unipersonal verbs which do not express certainty or probability.

V. Particular cases.

I.—VERBS THAT EXPRESS A WISH, A WILL, A COMMAND, OR
A PERMISSION.

§ 258. Such as *aimer*, to like; *aimer mieux*, to prefer; *défendre*, to forbid; *demande*r, to ask, to beg; *désirer*, to wish for; *exiger*, to demand; *ordonner*, to order; *permettre*, to allow; *prier*, to entreat; *recommander*, to recommend; *souhaiter*, to wish; *souffrir*, to suffer; *supplier*, to request; *vouloir*, to be willing, etc., govern the subjunctive, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Il exige que ce monarque n'entretienne que cinquante invalides</i> (Ségur) | He demands that this king should only keep fifty invalided soldiers |
| <i>Souffrez que Bajazet voie enfin la lumière</i> (Voltaire) | Suffer Bajazet at last to see light |
| <i>Que voulez-vous que je sache?</i> (Dumas) | What do you wish me to know? |

Observe.—When such verbs do not express a wish, a will, etc., the dependent verb is placed in the indicative mood, as: *Oedipe ordonne que chacun régnerait son année* (Racine), Oedipus ordered that each should reign his year.

II.—VERBS OF THINKING, BELIEVING, ETC.

§ 259. In general such verbs and all those which express the intellectual faculties of the mind, only govern the subjunctive when they are used negatively, interrogatively, or are preceded by the conjunction *si* (see SYNTAX, § 237). But if used affirmatively, they usually govern the indicative, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Ne vous rappelez-vous plus qu'il vous ait offensé?</i> | Do you no longer remember that he has offended you? |
| <i>Crois-tu que dans son cœur il ait juré sa mort?</i> (Racine) | Do you believe that he has sworn in his heart to kill him? |

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Si tu t'aperçois que quelque parent de Don Gonzalve ait de grandes assiduités auprès de lui (Le Sage)</i> | If you perceive that some relation of Don Gonzales is very attentive to him. |
|--|--|

III.—VERBS OF FEAR, DOUBT, SORROW, ASTONISHMENT,
DENIAL, JOY, OR DELIGHT.

§ 260. Such verbs as *avoir peur*, *craindre*, to fear; *douter*, to doubt; *s'étonner*, to wonder; *empêcher*, to hinder; *nier*, to deny; *se réjouir*, to rejoice; *trembler*, to tremble; *regretter*, to regret; *se plaindre*, to complain, etc., govern the subjunctive:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est (Académie)</i> | I am astonished he does not see the danger he is in |
| <i>J'ai peur qu'il n'en ait trop dit (Bourienne)</i> | I am afraid he has said too much. |

§ 261. The following verbs, formed with *être*, take also the subjunctive after them: *être bien aise*, to be glad; *être charmé*, *être enchanté*, to be delighted; *être content*, to be satisfied; *être affligé*, to be afflicted; *être fâché*, to be sorry; *être étonné*, to be astonished; *être surpris*, to be surprised; *être heureux*, to be happy, etc.:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Je suis charmé que vous ayez dormi cette idée (Berquin)</i> | I am delighted you have this opinion of me |
| <i>Nous sommes heureux qu'il n'en ait rien su (Académie)</i> | We are glad he has known nothing about it. |

§ 262. REMARK 1.—The verbs *avoir peur*, *craindre*, and *trembler*, take *ne* after them only when used affirmatively or interrogative-negatively, as: *je crains qu'il ne vienne*, I fear he will come; *ne tremblez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne*, don't you fear he will come. But when these verbs are used negatively or simply interrogatively, *ne* is not required. (See SYNTAX, § 326). About *douter* see SYNTAX, § 328.

§ 263. REMARK 2.—When after the verbs mentioned in §§ 260 and

261, we wish to express ourselves more definitely, we use the indicative,* generally preceded by *de* or *de ce que*, as: *Clara se plaignait de ce qu'on l'avait appelée par son nom* (Florian), Clara complained that they had called her by her name.

IV.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 264. After the following unipersonal verbs, the verb in the subordinate sentence is always put in the subjunctive, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>il convient</i> , it is proper | <i>il est fâcheux</i> , it is sad |
| <i>il faut</i> , it must | <i>il est juste</i> , it is just, right |
| <i>il importe</i> , it is important, it matters, it concerns | <i>il est difficile</i> , it is difficult |
| <i>il suffit</i> , it is sufficient | <i>il est possible</i> , it is possible |
| <i>il vaut mieux</i> , it is better | <i>il est naturel</i> , it is a matter of fact |
| | <i>il se peut</i> , it may be, etc. |

And likewise after: *c'est un malheur*, it is a misfortune; *il est temps*, it is time; *c'est dommage*, it is a pity, etc., as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Il suffit qu'on me craigne</i> (Racine) | It is sufficient that they fear me |
| <i>Il faut que justement je fasse une méprise</i> (Regnard) | I must precisely commit a mistake |
| <i>Il était naturel que le pouvoir se concentrât</i> (Mignet) | It was natural that the government should concentrate itself. |

§ 265. The subjunctive is used after *il y a* and all unipersonal verbs with an adjective, denoting *evidence*, *certainty*, or *probability*, when they are used in a negative, interrogative, or conditional manner:—

* Compare in Latin: *Quod spiratis . . . indignantur*, They are indignant that you breathe.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Il ne me parut point qu'elle</i> | It did not appear to me that |
| <i>me remît (Le Sage)</i> | she remembered me |
| <i>Est-il vrai que nous débutons</i> | Is it true that we begin with |
| <i>par une négation ? (Cousin)</i> | a negation ? |

§ 266. REMARK 1.—*Il y a* or *il est* takes also the subjunctive mood after expressions like these—*pas un, aucun, nul, personne, guère, rien*, etc., as : *parmi ces cent mille hommes il n'en était pas un qui ne doutât de vaincre*, among these hundred thousand men there was not one who was not sure of conquering.

§ 267. REMARK 2.—After *il semble* the indicative mood is used when employed affirmatively and with a person for its indirect object, as : *il me semble que j'ai dîné quand je le vois* (Molière), it seems to me that I have dined when I see him ; but the subjunctive, when there is doubt or uncertainty, as : *il sembla que ma vue excitât son audace* (Racine), it seemed that the sight of me excited his boldness.

V.—PARTICULAR CASES.

§ 268. After *qui, que, dont*, and *où*, the subjunctive mood is used, to express that which is uncertain, the indicative that which is certain, as :—

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>Je m'étonne (see SYNTAX, § 260)</i> | I am astonished he does not |
| <i>qu'il ne voie pas le danger</i> | see the danger he is in |
| <i>où il est (Académie)</i> | |
| <i>Elle ne prendra jamais pour</i> | She will never take any other |
| <i>époux qu'un homme qui</i> | husband but a man who |
| <i>craigne les dieux (Fénelon)</i> | fears the gods |
| <i>Nous ne pouvons jouer que des</i> | We can only play pieces in |
| <i>pièces où il y a peu d'ac-</i> | which there are but few |
| <i>teurs (Voltaire)</i> | actors. |

§ 269. After the superlative relative and such expressions as, *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier, le plus, le moins, le peu, le meilleur*, when used in connection with relative pronouns, and when the idea is not positive, the subjunctive is used, as :—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>l'homme est le seul animal qui</i> | Man is the only animal who |
| <i>sache qu'il doit mourir (B.</i> | knows that he must die. |
| <i>de St. Pierre)</i> | |
| <i>Le meilleur usage que l'on</i> | The best use we can make of |
| <i>puisse faire de son esprit</i> | our wit is to mistrust it. |
| <i>c'est de s'en défier (Fénelon)</i> | |

§ 270. REMARK 1.—But if a fact is represented as certain, the indicative follows the above-mentioned words, as: *Néron est le premier empereur qui a persécuté l'église*, Nero is the first emperor who persecuted the church.

§ 271. REMARK 2.—*Qui* and *que* never govern the subjunctive when preceded by a genitive case to which they refer, as: *ne dites rien de ce que je vous ai confié*, say nothing about what I have entrusted to you.

§ 272. The subjunctive is used after ordinal numbers and after *quelque*, *quel que*, *qui que*, *qui que ce soit* *qui*, *quoique*, *quoi que ce soit* *que*, *à quoi que*, *de quoi que*, *si . . . que*, etc.,

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Ce maître nous comble de ses</i> | This master heaps kindnesses |
| <i>biens quoique nous l'offen-</i> | on us though we offend |
| <i>sions tous les jours (Cha-</i> | him every day |
| <i>téaubriand)</i> | |
| <i>Quelque péril qui me puisse</i> | Whatever danger may over- |
| <i>accabler (Racine)</i> | whelm me. |

§ 273. After the conjunctions mentioned in the ACCIDENCE, § 239, the subjunctive is used, and also when *que* is used in place of one of these conjunctions, as:—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Reviens que je te revoie (Du-</i> | Return that I may see you |
| <i>mas)</i> | again |
| <i>Son esprit est toujours actif,</i> | His mind is always active, |
| <i>quoiqu'il soit malade et qu'il</i> | though he is ill and cannot |
| <i>ne puisse travailler</i> | work. |

§ 274. REMARK.—The indicative is sometimes used after *comme si*, *si ce n'est que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *sinon que*, *de sorte que*, and *de manière que*, when no doubt or uncertainty is expressed, as :—

Il s'est occupé de cette affaire de manière qu'on n'a pu le blâmer He has busied himself with this affair, so that they could not blame him.

Je gardai mon sang-froid jusqu'à ce que je l'entendis calomnier son frère I kept my temper till I heard him slander his brother.

§ 275. The subjunctive is also used when the conjunction *que* is employed to avoid the repetition of *si*, as :—

Si je ne suis pas rentré d quatre heures et qu'on vienne me demander If I have not returned at four o'clock, and if some one comes and asks for me.

§ 276. REMARK.—The subjunctive is often used after *attendre*, to wait; and observe that *till* is translated by *que*, and not by *jusqu'à ce que*, as : *attendez qu'il revienne*, wait till he comes back.

§ 277. The subjunctive mood occurs also sometimes in principal sentences, chiefly in exclamations or expressions of a wish, as :—

Puissiez-vous réussir dans vos projets ! (Académie) May you succeed in your projects !

Dieu garde leurs états ! May heaven preserve their states !

Vive le roi ! Long live the king !

Vienne qui voudra ! Come who will !

§ 278. REMARK.—*Je ne sache* is the only true subjunctive expression at the beginning of a sentence, as : *je ne sache pas qu'il y ait eu d'hommes blancs devenus noirs* (Buffon), I do not know that white men have ever become black.

CONCORD OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH
THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE *AND CONDITIONAL.

§ 279. The *Present Subjunctive* corresponds to the—

| | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>je désire</i> | } <i>que tu chantes.</i> |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>je désirerai</i> | |
| Fut. Ant. | <i>j'aurai désiré</i> | |

§ 280. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* corresponds to the—

| | | |
|----------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Imperf. Indic. | <i>je désirais</i> | } <i>que tu chantasses.</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>je désirai</i> | |
| Pret. Indef. | <i>j'ai désiré</i> | |
| Pluperf. | <i>j'avais désiré</i> | |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>je désirerais</i> | |
| Past Cond. | <i>j'aurais désiré</i> | |

§ 281. The *Preterite Subjunctive* corresponds to the—

| | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Pres. Indic. | <i>je désire</i> | } <i>que tu aies chanté.</i> |
| Pret. Indef. | <i>j'ai désiré</i> | |
| Fut. Abs. | <i>je désirerai</i> | |
| Fut. Ant. | <i>j'aurai désiré</i> | |

§ 282. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* corresponds to the—

| | | |
|----------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Imperf. Indic. | <i>je désirais</i> | } <i>que tu eusses chanté.</i> |
| Pret. Def. | <i>je désirai</i> | |
| Pret. Indef. | <i>j'ai désiré</i> | |
| Pluperf. | <i>j'avais désiré</i> | |
| Pret. Ant. | <i>j'eus désiré</i> | |
| Pres. Cond. | <i>je désirerais</i> | |
| Past Cond. | <i>j'aurais désiré</i> | |

§ 283. After the present indicative, or future, the present subjunctive is used to express a thing present or future; but the preterite subjunctive to express a thing past, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Je défends qu'on prenne les armes</i> (Voltaire) | I forbid them to take up arms |
| <i>Ils croiront en effet mériter qu'on les craigne</i> (Racine) | In reality they will think they deserve to be feared |
| <i>Il se plaint qu'on l'ait calomnié</i> (Académie) | He complains they have slandered him |
| <i>Nous sommes heureux qu'il n'en ait rien su</i> (Académie) | We are glad that he has known nothing at all about it. |

§ 284. But after the present and future of the indicative the imperfect subjunctive is used instead of the present subjunctive, and the pluperfect subjunctive instead of the preterite subjunctive when some conditional expression qualifies the sentence:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Je ne puis croire que cette terre ne produisît davantage</i> | I cannot believe that this land could not produce more |
| <i>Je ne pense pas que cette affaire eût réussi sans votre intervention</i> (Poitevin) | I do not think this affair would have succeeded if you had not interfered. |

§ 285. After a past tense or a conditional mood, it depends on the idea predominant in the mind of the writer what tense of the subjunctive has to be used, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Mieux vaudrait que le soleil perdît ses rayons que Bouche-d'or ses paroles</i> (Chateaubriand) | Better that the sun should lose its rays than Golden-mouth (Chrysostomus) his words |
| <i>Ils auraient résisté n'eût été le canon</i> (Ponsard) | They would have resisted, had not the cannon been there. |

PECULIAR LAWS OF THE PARTICIPLE.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

As there are two classes of verbs in French ending in *ant*—namely, the present participle and the verbal adjective, the following rules are given to distinguish the one from the other :

§ 286. The present participle is always invariable, expresses an action, and can be replaced by the present or imperfect indicative with *qui*, *comme*, *parce que*, *puisque*, or *quand*, before it, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Mais étant sans pilote et ne pouvant voir les bancs (Ségur)</i> | But being without a pilot and not being able to see the banks |
| <i>Les animaux vivant d'une ma- nière plus conforme à leur nature (J. J. Rousseau)</i> | The animals living in a man- ner more conformable to their nature. |

§ 287. REMARK 1.—The present participle when preceded by the preposition *en*, is called the gerund, as: *il riait en me regardant* (Fénelon), he laughed whilst looking at me; *on se forme l'esprit en lisant de bons livres*, we form our mind by reading good books.

§ 288. REMARK 2.—When the English participle present is preceded by any preposition but *by* and *on*, such as *from*, *of*, *before*, *after*, *for*, etc., it must be rendered in French by the infinitive, with *de*, *d'*, *avant*, *après*, *pour*, etc.:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Je l'ai rencontré avant de partir</i> | I met him before setting out |
| <i>Il a été chassé pour avoir trop parlé (Académie)</i> | He has been sent away for having spoken too much. |

§ 289. REMARK 3.—Preceded by a possessive pronoun, the present participle is translated by the conjunctions *que*, *de ce que*, *d'où que*, *par où que*, followed by the indicative or subjunctive mood, as: *nous avons appris qu'il s'est fait soldat*, we have heard of his becoming a soldier.

§ 290. REMARK 4.—The English preposition *by*, followed by the present participle, is translated in French by *par*, and the infinitive mood, only when preceded by *commencer* or *finir*, as: *je veux commencer par réciter ma leçon*, I will begin by saying my lesson; *il finit par me demander pardon*, he ended by asking my pardon.

§ 291. The verbal adjective expresses a quality of a noun, a state or manner of being, and may be construed by one of the tenses of *être* preceded by *qui*, as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Des muses la troupe dansante</i> | The dancing troop of the muses |
| <i>Il m'offrait une main fumante de sang</i> (Voltaire) | He offered me a hand reeking with blood |
| <i>Laissez-là ces mousquets trop pesants pour vos bras</i> (Vol- taire) | Leave alone those muskets, too heavy for your arm. |

§ 292. REMARK 1.—Though as a general rule the verbal adjective precedes the substantive in English, they are separated in both languages when used with *être* or *paraître*, as: *la preuve est convainquante*, the proof is convincing; *nos paroles étaient fort consolantes*, our words were very consoling.

§ 293. REMARK 2.—Some present participles, as *fatigant*, *intrigant*, *extravagant*, when used as adjectives lose the *u* and become *fatigant*, *intrigant*, etc. Some lose the *u* and change the *q* into *c*, as, *convainquant*, *fabriquant*, etc., which become *convaincant*, *fabricant*, etc. Several change *a* into *e*, as, *affluent*, *excellent*, etc., which alter into *affluent*, *excellent*, etc.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE WITH AVOIR.

§ 294. The past participle with *avoir* agrees with its direct object or accusative, if that direct object precedes the verb; but if it follows it, or if there is no direct object, it remains unaltered:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Quelle guerre intestine</i> (acc. preceding) <i>avons-nous allumée!</i> (Corneille) | What a domestic war we have kindled! |
| <i>Que de miracles</i> (acc. preceding) <i>les historiens ont prodigés!</i> (Voltaire) | What miracles historians have lavished! |

Le bruit de nos trésors les (acc. preceding) a tous attirés The report of our treasures has attracted them all
(Racine)

Vous riez ? écrivez qu'elle a ri You laugh ? write that she has laughed.

Observe.—The past participle of all neuter verbs conjugated with *avoir*, is always invariable, because such verbs have no direct object, as : *les sept heures que nous avons dormi*, the seven hours we have been sleeping.

§ 295. The past participle used with *en* does not change whenever *en* is not preceded by a direct object, as : *Ces cerises sont-elles bonnes ? Je n'en ai pas mangé*, Are these cherries good ? I have not eaten any. But when *en* is preceded by an adverb of quantity, the past participle becomes variable when it relates to a noun in the plural previously mentioned ; it remains unaltered when relating to a noun in the singular, or to a noun with no plural idea, as :—

Son supplice fit plus de prosélytes que les prédications n'en avaient faits (Voltaire) His punishment made more proselytes than preaching had done

Autant ses parents lui ont laissé de fortune, autant il en a dissipé (Poitevin) As much money as his parents have left him, so much he has spent.

§ 296. The verbs *aider*, *applaudir*, *commander*, *fuir*, *insulter*, *manquer*, and *servir*, require sometimes a direct, sometimes an indirect object ; the past participle of these verbs is therefore only variable when the direct object precedes, as :—

Il nous a aidés de sa bourse He has assisted us with his money
(see SYNTAX, § 215)

Il nous a aidé à descendre He has assisted us in coming down

Votre valet nous a bien servis Your servant has served us well

Vos notes nous ont bien servi Your notes have been of great use to us.

§ 297. The past participle of unipersonal verbs, and of all verbs used unipersonally, is invariable, as :—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Toutes les humiliations qu'il vous en a coûté</i> (Voltaire) | All the humiliations you have suffered |
| <i>Une des idées les plus utiles à la morale qu'il y ait jamais eu</i> (Thomas) | One of the most useful ideas for morality which has ever existed. |

§ 298. The past participle of a verb coming between *que* used twice, is also invariable, as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Les affaires que j'ai prévu que vous auriez</i> | The business which I have foreseen you should have. |
|--|---|

§ 299. The past participle preceded by a direct object and followed by an infinitive, is only variable when the noun which precedes it, is the object of the verb *avoir*. This is the case whenever the infinitive may be turned into a present participle or into an imperfect with *qui*:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Oh Julie, si le destin t'eût laissée vivre !</i> (J. J. Rousseau) | Oh Julia, if fate had allowed you to live ! |
| <i>À peine l'avons nous entendue parler</i> (Voltaire) | Scarcely have we heard her speak. |

§ 300. The past participle used with *avoir*, followed by another verb in the infinitive, remains invariable, when the accusative which precedes, is not the direct object of the past participle but of the infinitive following, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>L'alliance que Judas avait envoyée demander</i> (Bossuet) | The alliance which Judas had sent to ask for |
| <i>Asservie à des lois que j'ai su respecter</i> (Racine) | Subjected to laws which I have known how to respect. |

Observe.—In the first sentence *que* is the accusative of *demande* not of *envoyé*; in the second sentence *que* is the accusative of *respecter* and not of *su*.

§ 301. The past participles of the verbs *pouvoir*, *vouloir*, *devoir*, and *faire*, remain unaltered before an infinitive expressed or understood, as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Les poires que j'ai voulu acheter</i> | The pears I have wished to buy |
| <i>D'où viennent ces fleurs ? Je les ai fait planter</i> | Whence come these flowers ? I have ordered them to be planted |
| <i>Il a fait les excuses qu'il a dû (faire understood)</i> | He made the excuses he should have made. |

§ 302. If there is an ellipsis of the sentence, which forms the complement of the past participle, it remains unaltered, as :—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Je lui aurais fait tous les vers qu'il aurait désiré (que je lui fisse understood)</i> | I should have made for him all the verses he would have desired me to make for him. |
|---|--|

§ 303. The past participle is variable when it has for its direct complement the pronoun *l'* standing in the place of a noun or pronoun. If *l'* stands for a whole sentence it is invariable, as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Cette chose est telle que vous l'avez annoncée (Poitevin)</i> | This affair is just as you said |
| <i>Cette femme est plus instruite que je ne l'avais cru (l' stands here for qu'elle était instruite)</i> | This woman is better in- formed than I thought her to be. |

§ 304. When a noun, preceded by an adverb of quantity, as: *combien de, peu de, plus de, moins de*, is used before a past participle, the participle remains invariable if the substantive is singular, but it agrees when that substantive is in the plural, as :—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Le peu d'instruction qu'il a eu</i> | The little instruction he has had |
| <i>Le trop de noix que j'ai mangées</i> | The great quantity of nuts I have eaten. |

THE PAST PARTICIPLE WITH ÊTRE.

§ 305. The past participle with *être* is a verbal adjective, and therefore agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates, as:—

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Le fer est émoussé, les bûchers</i> | The sword is blunted, the |
| <i>sont éteints</i> (Voltaire) | funeral piles are extin- |
| | guished. |
| <i>Nos arts semblent bornés</i> (De- | Our arts seem limited. |
| <i>lille)</i> | |

§ 306. A pronominal verb, with a noun in the accusative after it, remains invariable, as:—

| | |
|---|---------------------------|
| <i>Cléopâtre s'est donné</i> (not <i>don-</i> | Cleopatra has killed her- |
| <i>née</i>) <i>la mort</i> | self. |

§ 307. A few pronominal verbs formed from neuter verbs remain invariable; they are: *se plaire*, *se complaire*, *se déplaître*, *se rire*, *se sourire*, *se parler*, *se succéder*, *se nuire*, *se convenir* (to suit one another), and *se ressembler*:—

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Elles se sont déplu</i> (not <i>dé-</i> | They have displeased each |
| <i>plues</i>) | other. |
| <i>Nous nous sommes nu</i> (not | We have hurt each other, |
| <i>nuis</i>) | |

Observe.—The past participles of pronominal verbs agree with the subject when any of the words, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, is used as a direct object, as:—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>La haine s'est emparée de son</i> | Hatred has got hold of his |
| <i>âme</i> | mind |
| <i>Ces dames se sont rencontrées</i> | These ladies have met, |

CHAPTER VI.

THE ADVERB.

PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

§ 308. An adverb, whether simple or compound, is generally placed after a verb in simple tenses, but *never* between the subject and the verb :—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Il réussira probablement dans</i> | He will probably succeed in |
| <i>son entreprise (Académie)</i> | his undertaking |
| <i>Nous viendrons souvent</i> | We will often come. |

Observe.—When *bien*, *jamais*, *trop*, *mal*, and *mieux* are used with a verb in the present infinitive, they generally precede it, as : *se bien porter*, *trop boire*, *mal parler*.

§ 309. In compound tenses the adverb may be placed either before or after the past participle, according as taste directs :—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Peut-être est il venu</i> | Perhaps he has come |
| <i>Cela est arrivé effectivement</i> | That has really happened. |
| (Académie) | |

§ 310. This is also the case with many adverbs of order or place, and those denoting time :—

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Il a été partout</i> | He has been everywhere |
| <i>Aujourd'hui il fait chaud, il</i> | To-day it is warm, it will |
| <i>geler peut-être demain</i> | freeze perhaps to-morrow. |

§ 311. Adverbs relating to a phrase, following or preceding, and also adverbs of interrogation, affirmation, or denial, often begin the sentence:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Certainement les hommes sont bien aveugles !</i> (Académie) | Certainly men are very blind ! |
| <i>Non, jamais les vertus ne sont assez nombreuses</i> (Chénier) | No, never are virtues nume- rous enough |
| <i>D'où vient-il ?</i> | Whence comes he ? |

ON THE NEGATIVE.

§ 312. A negative is generally composed of two words, *ne* always precedes the verb, but the place of the second word is variable. *Ne . . . pas*, or *ne . . . point* are the negatives most commonly used, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Il n'est pas toujours bon d'être trop politique</i> (Rotrou) | It is not always good to be too cunning |
| <i>Non, non, le consulat n'est point fait pour son âge</i> (Voltaire) | No, no, the consulship is not made for his age. |

§ 313. *Ne . . . point* is a stronger negative than *ne . . . pas*; therefore, *je n'ai pas d'argent*, means, I have no money about me just now; but, *je n'ai point d'argent*, I have no money at all. *Point* is generally used in a question; above all, when there is a doubt about the answer, as: *n'avez-vous point pris ma montre ?* have you not taken my watch? *Point* may also be used alone in answer to an interrogation; *pas*, never, as: *êtes-vous fâché ? Point* (Académie), Are you angry? Not at all.

§ 314. REMARK.—Sometimes *pas* or *point* are used without *ne*, either in poetry or in very familiar phraseology, as: *Ilé bien ! n'ai-je pas dit ?* (Racine), Well ! have I not said so? *C'est pas toi qui me fais peur, en'nds-tu ?* (Dumas) You won't frighten me, do you hear?

§ 315. *Ne . . . pas* or *ne . . . point*, usually precede a verb in the present infinitive :—

Ne pas apprendre ses leçons Not to learn your lessons is
c'est être paresseux to be idle.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME NEGATIONS.

§ 316. *Not*, used with other words in answer to a question, is translated by *pas* (see SYNTAX, § 314); when coming in the second part of a sentence by *non*. *No* is always translated by *non* in answer to interrogations :—

Vous étiez au concert lorsque You were at the concert
le prince y était, l'avez-vous when the prince was there,
vu ? Pas très-bien have you seen him? Not
 very well

Saluez la loi, non les individus Bow before the law, not
 (Ponsard) before individuals

Avez-vous fait votre thème ? Have you written your exer-
Non, monsieur cise? No, sir.

§ 317. *Not that*, in the sense of *not because that*, is translated in French by *non que*, *non pas que*, or *ce n'est pas que*, as :—

Je m'avançais vers Athènes I went towards Athens with
avec une espèce de plaisir a kind of pleasure, not
. . . non pas que j'éprou- that I felt anything like
vasse quelque chose de sem- what I had felt at the
blable à ce que j'avais senti sight of Lacedæmon.
à la vue de Larédémone
 (Chateaubriand)

§ 318. *No more, not any more*, is translated by *non . . . plus* or *ne . . . plus*, as :—

Il ne dort non plus que votre He does not sleep any more
père (Racine) than your father

Il n'a plus d'argent He has not any more money.

§ 319. *Neither, nor*, is expressed by *ne . . . ni*,* except at the end of a sentence, when *neither* is translated by *non plus*:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Je ne veux, ni ne dois, ni ne puis vous obéir</i> | I neither will, nor ought to, nor can obey you |
| <i>Ni vous ni moi ne le pouvons (Académie)</i> | Neither you nor I can do so |
| <i>Vous ne saurez le dire ni moi non plus</i> | You cannot say so, no more can I. |

§ 320. *Nothing* in French is *rien . . . ne*, as:—

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Les animaux n'inventent et ne perfectionnent rien (Buffon)</i> | Animals invent and finish nothing. |
|---|---------------------------------------|

Observe.—Sometimes *rien* is also used without *ne*, and always preceded by a preposition, as: *Dieu a créé le monde de rien*, God has created the world out of nothing.

§ 321. But *rien* used without *ne*, and employed as a noun, that is with an article, means a *trifling thing*,† used without the negation and without the article, it means *anything*,‡ as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Il vaut mieux faire cela que de faire des riens</i> | It is better to do that than do trifling things |
| <i>Y a-t-il rien de si beau que la vertu ?</i> | Is there anything so beautiful as virtue ? |

CASES IN WHICH *ne* STANDS ALONE.

§ 322. *Pas* or *point* are generally not used after the verbs *savoir* (when used for *pouvoir*), *pouvoir*, *oser*, *cesser*, *bouger*, and *avoir garde*, as:—

* Compare the Latin: *Themistocles non vidit nec quomodo Lacedæmoniorum nec quomodo suorum civium invidiam effugeret*, Themistocles did not see (either) how he should escape the envy of the Lacedæmonians or that of his own citizens.

† It is here the accusative *rem* of the Latin *res*, a thing.

‡ The Latin *quicquam*.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Je ne saurais me taire</i> (Gram- maire Nationale) | I cannot be silent |
| <i>La liberté ne cesse d'être aimable</i> (Corneille) | Liberty does not cease to be loveable |
| <i>Je ne bougerai de là</i> (Académie) | I will not stir from thence |
| <i>Je n'aurai garde d'y manquer</i> (Delavigne) | I shall take very good care not to fail in it. |

§ 323. After *il y a* and *depuis que* we omit *pas* or *point* if a compound tense follows (see SYNTAX, § 330); also when *que* is used in the sense of *pourquoi*, and when *ne* is used after *si*, as :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Il y a un an que je ne l'ai vu</i> | I have not seen him for a year |
| <i>Jusqu'au bout que ne m'écoute- t-elle ?</i> (Racine) | Why does not she listen to me till I have done ? |
| <i>Mais si vous ne réglez, vous vous plaignez toujours</i> (Ra- cine) | But if you do not reign you always complain. |

§ 324. *Ne* is also employed alone in such phrases as : *je n'ai que faire à cela*, I have nothing to do with that; *n'importe*, no matter; *à Dieu ne plaise*, heaven forbid; *ne vous en déplaît*, if it does not displease you; *qu'à cela ne tienne*, let that not prevent you, etc.

CASES IN WHICH *ne* IS OMITTED.

§ 325. In exclamations, commands, answers, and sentences where no verb is expressed, *ne* is nearly always omitted, as :—

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>Est-ce que cela s'est jamais vu ?</i> | Has that ever been seen ? |
| <i>Jamais !</i> | Never ! |
| <i>Eh, pas si près, mon honnête Asturien</i> (Dumas) | Not so near, my honest Asturian |
| <i>Point d'argent point de Suisse</i> | No money, no soldiers |
| <i>Point de travail qui le repulse</i> | No labour repels him. |

T

CASES IN WHICH *ne* IS USED IN FRENCH AND NO CORRESPONDING
NEGATIVE IN ENGLISH.

§ 326. After *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *appréhender*, *redouter*, *trembler*, * etc. ; after substantives like *peur*, *crainte*, *appréhension*, *inquiétude*, or after such adjectives as *il est dangereux*, *ne* is placed before the verb in the dependent clause, if an affirmation takes place, and the speaker wishes the action spoken of not to happen. But in case the speaker desires that action to take place, *ne . . . pas* must be used. If these verbs are used interrogatively or negatively, they follow the general rules:—

Il doit appréhender que cette occasion ne lui échappe (La Bruyère) He must fear lest this opportunity escapes him

J'ai bien peur qu'ils ne réussissent à le cloîtrer (Vitet). I am afraid they will not succeed in getting hold of him

Il est dangereux que la vanité n'étouffe une partie de la reconnaissance (Fléchier) It is dangerous that vanity should partly stifle gratitude.

Observe, therefore, the great difference between *je crains qu'il ne lise pas*, I fear he will not read; *je ne crains pas qu'il lise*, I do not fear he will read; *craignez-vous qu'il lise*, do you fear he will read? *craignez-vous qu'il ne lise pas?* do you fear he will not read?

§ 327. REMARK.—*Ne* is not used when any of the above-mentioned verbs is followed by an infinitive, as: *il craint d'être importun*, he fears to be troublesome.†

§ 328. After *nier*, *douter*, *contester*, *désespérer*, *disconvenir*, *tenir* (used unipersonally), and *s'en falloir*, the verb of the

* In Latin *ne* is also used after *timere*, *metuere*, *est periculum*, etc., as: *Timeo ne veniat*, I fear lest he come. This *ne* is not a negation, but the dubitative *ne*.

† Compare in Latin: *Sylla timens posse accidere*, Sylla fearing that it might happen.

dependent clause takes *ne*, if the governing verb is used interrogatively or negatively * :—

Ne désespérez pas que ce moyen ne vous réussisse (N. Landais) Do not despair that this way should succeed

Point de doute que cela ne soit (Académie) No doubt it is so

Il ne s'en faut pas de beaucoup que la somme n'y soit (Grammaire Nationale) There is little wanting to make the whole sum good

À quoi tient-il que cela ne se fasse ? (Académie) On what does it depend that it should happen ?

Observe.—If *nier* and *douter* state an undoubted fact, the *ne* of the dependent clause can be left out, as : *personne ne nie qu'il y ait un Dieu* ; there is also a difference between *s'en falloir* and *s'en falloir de* ; the first relates to quality, the second to quantity (see ACCIDENCE, § 147).

§ 329. *Ne* is always used before a verb, after *empêcher*, *éviter*, *prendre garde* (in the sense of taking care) (see SYNTAX, § 219), and *se garder*,† when followed by *que*, as :—

Prends garde qu'on ne te voie (Académie) Take care lest they should see you

Évitez qu'il ne vous parle (Académie) Do not let him speak to you.

Observe.—*Défendre* though synonymous with *empêcher*, never takes *ne* ; *prendre garde*, meaning to notice, governs the indicative, as *prenez garde que cet acteur ne chante pas bien*, notice that this actor does not sing well.

§ 330. *Ne* is also used after *à moins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que* (see ACCIDENCE, § 239) ; and generally after *depuis que* or *il y a . . . que*, followed by a preterite indefinite (see SYNTAX, § 323), and after *que* used instead of *avant que* or *sans que* :—

* Compare in Latin : *Negari non potest quin rectius sit*, It cannot be denied but that it is better ; *Non dubitabamus quin ei crederemus*, We did not doubt but that we should believe him.

† *Ne* is also used in Latin after such verbs as *cavere*, *considerare*, *videre*, *defendere*, *prohibere*, *impedire*, *obstare*, *recusare*, etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>À moins qu'il ne soit malade</i> | Unless he is ill |
| <i>Il s'est passé de bien grandes choses depuis que je ne vous ai vu (Académie)</i> | Many great things have happened since I have seen you |
| <i>Il y a longtemps que tu ne t'es occupé de dessin (Dumas)</i> | It is a long time since you have occupied yourself with drawing. |
| <i>Elle ne voyait aucun être souffrant, que son visage n'exprimât la peine</i> | She saw no suffering being, without her face showing her emotion. |

Observe.—That after *avant que* and *sans que* the negation *ne* is generally not used.

§ 331. *Ne* is used after a comparative of superiority or inferiority, if the sentence is affirmative (see SYNTAX, § 97); but the *ne* is dropped when there is a comparison of equality, when the verb is not used affirmatively, or when *quand* or *lorsque* precede the second verb :—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Je le souhaite plus que je ne l'espère (Corneille)</i> | I wish it more than I hope it |
| <i>On se voit d'un autre œil qu'on ne voit son prochain (Racine)</i> | We look on ourselves with another eye from that with which we look on our neighbours. |
| But— | |
| <i>Il est aussi aveugle que son frère (comp. of equality)</i> | He is as blind as his brother |
| <i>Nous n'étions pas plus avancés qu'il l'était</i> | We were not more advanced than he was |
| <i>Il est meilleur que lorsque vous l'avez acheté</i> | It is better than when you bought it. |

REMARKS ON SOME ADVERBS.

§ 332. *Plus* and *davantage* both mean *more*, but *plus* is used before adjectives and verbs, *davantage* at the end of a sentence; still *plus* is used when there is an antithesis or when it is modified by one of the adverbs *encore*, *bien*, *beaucoup*, etc. :—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Il faut aimer sa patrie plus que sa famille</i> | We must love our country more than our family |
| <i>La vanité est dangereuse, la paresse l'est davantage</i> | Vanity is dangerous, idleness is more so. |
| <i>Ses vers me plaisent mais sa prose me charme encore plus</i> | His verses please me, but his prose delights me still more |
| <i>N'ai-je pas fait plus que je ne devais, et bien plus ?</i> | Have I not done more than I ought, and much more ? |

§ 333. *Si* and *aussi* are used in comparisons before adjectives, participles, and adverbs, *tant* and *autant* before nouns and verbs, but *si* and *tant* are used in a negative, *aussi* and *autant* in an affirmative or negative sense, as :—

| | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Il n'est pas si brave que César</i> | He is not so brave as Cæsar |
| <i>Il est aussi brave que César</i> | He is as brave as Cæsar |
| (Poitevin) | |

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>J'aime Horace autant que je l'admire (Buffon)</i> | I like Horace as much as I admire him. |
|--|---|

In answer to a negative question we use *si* instead of *oui*, as :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Né l'avez-vous pas vu ? Si</i> | Have you not seen him ? |
| | Yes. |

§ 334. In English we can say *very much*, but in French the adverb *beaucoup*, much, cannot be modified by any adverb. *Bien*, used before another adverb, means *very*, *much*, *quite*, as : *bien bon*, very good ; *bien moins*, much less ; *bien assez*, quite enough. Used after another adverb it means *well*, as : *assez bien*, pretty well, etc. (See EXERCISES, Note, page 24.)

§ 335. There are several adverbs which only differ slightly between themselves, and to which we wish therefore to draw the attention of the student, as : *plus tôt* (written in two words) signifies sooner, *plutôt* (written in one word) rather ; *tout à coup* means suddenly, *tout d'un coup* all at once ; *au moins* is, at least, *du moins* however ; *de suite* is, in succession, *tout de suite* means immediately.

CHAPTER VII.

THE PREPOSITION.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

§ 336. *À travers*, through, is used in a literal and figurative sense, and is equivalent to *au milieu de*, *parmi*; *au travers*, always followed by *de*, is employed to give the idea of an obstacle to be overcome, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Aller à travers le bois</i> | To go through the wood |
| <i>Un roi ne voit le peuple qu'à travers le prisme brillant de la cour</i> (Malesherbes) | A king only sees the nation through the brilliant prism of the court |
| <i>Nous passâmes au travers des écueils</i> (Fénelon) | We went through rocky cliffs. |

§ 337. *Avant* and *devant* are both translated by *before*; the first is opposed to *après*, after, the second to *derrière*, behind; the first relates to time and order,* the second to place:—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Il faudrait mettre les histoires générales avant les histoires particulières</i> (Académie) | We ought to place general histories before private ones |
| <i>Avant le canon, s'était une ville de guerre</i> (Picard) | It was a fortified town before cannon was used |
| <i>Placez cela devant le feu</i> | Place that before the fire. |

§ 338. *Chez* is used in the sense of *at*[†] *the house of*, *amongst*[‡], &c.:—

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>* ai été chez vous</i> | I have been at your house |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|

* Compare in Latin: *Ante Christum*, Before Christ; *Dulces ante omnia musæ*, The muses sweet before all things.

† Compare in Latin: *Neoptolemus apud Lycomedem erat educatus*, Neoptolemus had been educated at the house of Lycomedes; *Apud patres nostros*, Amongst our fathers.

Le théâtre respecté chez les Grecs, avili chez les Romains (Chamfort) The theatre respected amongst the Greeks, debased among the Romans.

Observe.—Sometimes *chez* is used with another preposition, as: *je viens de chez vous*, I come from your house; sometimes it is united by a hyphen to a personal pronoun and forms a compound noun, as: *un chez-moi*, a home (see SYNTAX, OBSERVATION, § 54).

§ 339. *Dans* means *in, into*, and is used with nouns preceded by an article, a possessive, demonstrative, or indefinite adjective, as: *il est dans ma chambre; il était dans la ville; en* is used generally before personal pronouns, dates, or nouns, used indeterminately:—

La nouvelle se répandit bientôt dans le château et dans la ville (de Barante) The news soon spread in the castle and in the town.

La vertu des humains n'est pas dans leur croyance (Chénier) The virtue of human beings does not consist in their belief

Il n'est pas en moi de le faire (Académie) It is not in me to do it

Son père fut nommé en 1745, jardinier en chef (Cuvier) His father was named in 1745 chief-gardener

Il est tourneur en bois (Académie) He is a wood-turner.

Dans and *en*, relating to time, are differently used. *Dans* denotes the point of time, and means “at the end of,” *en* the duration:—

Mon père arrivera dans deux mois My father will arrive in two months

J'ai appris le français en dix mois I have learnt French in ten months.

§ 340. *Envers*, towards, to, is used in a moral sense, whilst *vers*, towards, expresses motion, and is put before names of places and persons:—

La royauté est un ministère de religion envers Dieu, de justice envers les peuples (Fléchier)
 Royalty is a ministry of religion towards God, of justice towards the people

Levez les yeux vers le ciel (Académie)
 Lift up your eyes to heaven.

§ 341. *Près* and *proche* both mean *near*; the second only relates to space:—

Il est bien près de midi It is very near midday
Il s'est allé loger proche du palais He has gone to live near the palace.

§ 342. *Entre*, between; *parmi*, among; the first is generally only used of two objects, the latter (a contraction of *par le milieu*) is said of several:—

Il y a procès entre ces deux hommes There is a lawsuit between these two men
Il se mêla parmi eux He mixed among them.

Observe.—Still *entre* is very often used with nouns in the plural in the sense of *among*, as: *entre toutes les merveilles de la nature il n'en est pas de plus admirables* (Académie), among all the wonders of nature there are none more admirable.

§ 343. *Selon*, *suivant*, according to; the first is generally said of opinion, the second of practice:—

Chacun sera récompensé selon ses œuvres Each one shall be rewarded according to his works
Il juge suivant les lois He judges according to law.

§ 344. *Sur*, on, has a great many meanings in French (see SYNTAX, § 126, REMARK 1), as:—

Passer la main sur une étoffe To pass the hand over a certain stuff.
Écrire sur du papier To write on paper
Avoir une arme sur soi To have arms about you or upon you

Je m'en repose sur vous I trust to you
Il a un grand avantage sur vous He has a great advantage over you
*J'interrogeais le prophète sur l'avenir** I asked the prophet about the future.

§ 345. *From*, preceding the name of a person or possessive adjective, or a personal or interrogative pronoun, is generally rendered by *de la part de*, or *de ma part*, *de ta part*, *de sa part*, *de notre part*, *de votre part*, *de leur part*, as:—

Bien des compliments de la part de notre médecin Many compliments from our physician
J'arrive de leur part I come in their name (from them).

§ 346. *To* is not expressed where an infinitive is the subject, as: *manger trop nuit à la santé*, to eat too much is injurious to health. But if, instead of the present infinitive, we can use the English *of* with the present participle, we must employ *de* in French: *il a refusé de faire cela*, he has refused to do (of doing) this (see SYNTAX, § 228). When *to* shows aim or purpose, and can generally be rendered by *in order to*, it must be translated by *pour*, as: *il étudie bien pour passer ses examens*, he studies hard to pass his examinations.

§ 347. Nearly all prepositions are placed before nouns, but *à*, *après*, *de*, *entre*, *par*, and *pour* can be used before an infinitive; *en* is the only one which takes the present participle after it (see SYNTAX, § 287).

Observe.—There is sometimes a great difference between the use of *à* and *par* before an infinitive, for example: *tomber à terre* means to fall from a height; *tomber par terre* is to fall on the ground, when touching it, therefore: *un arbre tombe par terre*; *son fruit tombe à terre*; *à* and *de* used before an infinitive give also a different meaning to the sentence, as: *c'est à vous à jouer*, it is your turn to play: but *c'est à vous de donner l'exemple*, it is your duty to give the example.

§ 348. Prepositions in French are placed before the words they govern; in English they are sometimes placed after, as:—

* Compare in Latin: *Multa super Priamo rogans*, asking many things about Priam.

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>De quoi parlez-vous ?</i> | What are you speaking of? |
| <i>L'homme pour qui vous vous intéressez</i> | The man whom you interest yourself for. |

§ 349. As a general rule prepositions have to be repeated before each noun in a sentence,* as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Quand ceux-ci les virent sans chefs, sans ordre, presque sans armes, gravir des rochers à pic</i> (V. Hugo) | When these saw them without chiefs, without order, almost without arms, climb steep rocks. |
|--|--|

§ 350. Two prepositions may have one complement, but then they must both govern the same case, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Il s'agissait d'être pour ou contre le pape</i> (V. Hugo) | The matter at issue was the being for or against the Pope |
| <i>Dans ce siècle, où l'on respecte le mérite avec ou sans nom</i> (Scribe) | In this century, when merit with or without a name is respected. |

* Compare in Latin: *Convenit dimicare pro legibus, pro libertate, pro patria* It is meet to fight for our laws, for our liberty, for our country; *Videte quantum intervallum sit interjectum inter majorem nostrorum consilia, et inter istorum hominum dementia*, See what a difference there is between the counsels of our ancestors and (between) the madness of those men.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE CONJUNCTION.

§ 351. The conjunction *et* is in general only used before the last noun of a sentence, though it is sometimes repeated before every noun, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>L'airain, le marbre, et l'or;</i> <i>frappaient Rome éblouie</i> (Delille) | Brass, marble, and gold were meeting the eyes of the dazzled Romans |
| <i>Le beau temps et la pluie, et le</i> <i>froid et le chaud</i> (Molière) | The fine weather and rain, and cold and heat. |

§ 352. The conjunction *ni* (see SYNTAX, § 319) is used in negative phrases to connect one or more dependent clauses, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, ni</i> <i>même qu'il pense à venir</i> (Académie) | I do not think he will come, nor even that he thinks of coming |
| <i>L'Évangile ne connaît ni</i> <i>pauvre, ni riche, ni noble,</i> <i>ni roturier, ni maître, ni</i> <i>esclave</i> (Massillon) | The gospel knows neither poor nor rich, nor noble, nor plebeian, nor master, nor slave. |

Observe.—*Ni* is sometimes used affirmatively, as: *Je serais bien fâché que ce fût à refaire, ni (for et) qu'elle m'envoyât assigner la première* (Racine).

§ 353. The conjunction *que* is used to connect two parts of a sentence or of a comparison, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>C'est dommage que vous n'ayez</i> <i>point appris cela plus tôt</i> (Académie) | It is a pity that you did not learn that sooner |
|---|--|

Il y a plus de voitures à Londres qu'à Venise There are more carriages in London than in Venice.

§ 354. *Que* is also used to avoid the repetition of a conjunction in a sentence:—

Lorsqu'une grande nation est assemblée et qu'elle examine une question (Mirabeau) When a great nation is assembled and examines a question
Quoiqu'un peuple l'adore et qu'un roi le caresse (Corneille) Though a nation adore him and a king flatter him.

§ 355. In the middle of a sentence *que* is employed for great many other conjunctions:—

(1.) For *afin que*, in order that, as: *Reviens que je te revoie* (Dumas), Come back that I may see you again.

(2.) For *puisque*, since, as: *Puisqu'on plaide, qu'on meurt et qu'on devient malade* (La Fontaine), Since people go to law, since they die, and since they become ill.

(3.) For *aussitôt que*, as soon as, as: *Aussitôt que le Samien m'avait porté un faux coup et que son bras s'allongeait en vain* (Fénelon), As soon as the Samian had missed me and his arm was extended in vain.

(4.) For *parce que*, because, as: *Il agissait avec d'autant plus de chaleur qu'il était animé par la reconnaissance*, He acted with so much the more warmth because he was animated by gratitude.

(5.) For *quand, lorsque*, when, as: *Je n'étais pas sorti de Londres que j'ai entendu galoper sur mes traces* (Scribe), I had scarcely left London when I heard some one trotting behind me.

(6.) For *comme*, as: *Riches qu'il est*, Rich as he is.

(7.) For *avant que*, before, as: *Ne lui payez pas cette somme qu'il ne* (see SYNTAX, § 330) *parte*, Do not pay him this sum before he goes.

(8.) For *cependant*, yet, as: *On lui donnerait beaucoup d'argent qu'il en souhaiterait davantage*, They might give him much money, yet he would wish for more.

(9.) For *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, for fear that, lest: *Tremblez qu'ils ne réussissent*, Tremble lest they should succeed. *Il doit se hâter que cette occasion ne lui échappe*, He must make haste for fear this opportunity fail him.

(10.) For *jusqu'à ce que*, until, till: *Attendez que* (see SYNTAX § 276) *le concert soit fini*, Wait until the concert is over.

(11.) For *depuis que*, since, as: **Y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes plus avec votre frère?* Is it long since you were with your brother?

§ 358. *Que* is also used for other conjunctions in the beginning of a sentence in exclamations, interrogations, etc.:—

Que j'aille à son secours ou que je meure! (B. de St. Pierre) Let me go to his assistance or die!

Que n'ai-je interrogé les ministres de Dieu? (Delavigne) Why did I not ask the ministers of heaven?

APPENDIX.

MODEL OF GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS.

THERE are two ways of analyzing a sentence — namely, *logically* and *grammatically*. The first refers to the *meaning*, the second to the *words* and *form* of the sentence. We cannot enter into the logical analysis, which ought to be acquired elsewhere, but we give here below an example of grammatical analysis taken from POITEVIN'S *Cours Théorique et Pratique de Langue Française*.

L'onde approche, se brise, et vomit à nos yeux
Parmi des flots d'écume, un monstre furieux (Racine).

- L'* (pour *La*) Article simple, fém. sing., détermine *onde*.
- onde* Nom commun, fém. sing., sujet des verbes *approcher*, *se briser*, *vomir*.
- approche*, Verbe intransitif à l'ind. prés., 3^e pers. du sing., 1^{re} conjug.
Temps primitifs: *approcher*, *approchant*, *approché*, *j'approche*, *j'approchai*.
- se brise*, Verbe réfléchi accidentel à l'ind. prés., 3^e pers. du sing.
1^{re} conjug. Temps primitifs: *se briser*, *se brisant*, *s'étant brisé*, *je me brise*, *je me brisai*.
- et* Conjonction, qui unit ces deux propositions: *l'onde se brise* — *l'onde vomit*.
- vomit* Verbe transitif à l'ind. prés., 3^e pers. du sing., 2^e conjug.
Temps primitifs: *vomir*, *vomissant*, *vomi*, *je vomis*, *je vomis*.
- à* Préposition, qui établit un rapport entre le verbe *vomir* et le nom commun *yeux*.
- nos* Adjectif possessif, masc. plur., détermine *yeux*.
- yeux* Nom commun, masc. plur., complément indirect du verbe *vomir*.

| | |
|----------------|--|
| <i>Parmi</i> | Préposition, qui établit un rapport entre le verbe <i>vomir</i> et le nom commun <i>flots</i> . |
| <i>des</i> | (pour <i>de les</i>) Article contracté, masc. plur., détermine <i>flots</i> . |
| <i>flots</i> | Nom commun, masc. plur., complément de la préposition <i>parmi</i> . |
| <i>d'</i> | (pour <i>de</i>) Préposition, qui établit un rapport entre le nom commun <i>flots</i> et le nom commun <i>écume</i> . |
| <i>écume</i> | Nom commun, fém. sing., complément de la préposition <i>de</i> . |
| <i>un</i> | Adj. numéral, masc. sing., détermine <i>monstre</i> . |
| <i>monstre</i> | Nom commun, masc. sing., complément direct du verbe <i>vomir</i> . |
| <i>furieux</i> | Adjectif qualificatif, masc. sing., qualifie le nom commun <i>monstre</i> . |

EDUCATIONAL WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

TRÜBNER & CO., 8 & 40, PATERNOSTER ROW.

FRENCH.

By HENRI VAN LAUN,

Formerly French Master at Cheltenham College, and now Master of the French Language and Literature at the Edinburgh Academy.

Grammar of the French Language. Parts I. and II. Accidence and Syntax. In 1 vol. crown 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Part III. Exercices. Crown 8vo. cloth. 3s. 6d.

Leçons Graduées de Traduction et de Lecture. With Biographical Sketches, Annotations on History, Geography, etc., and a Dictionary of Words and Idioms. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth. 5s.

Dr. F. Ahn's New Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. First Course and Second Course. 12mo. cloth. each 1s. 6d. The Two Courses in 1 vol. 12mo. cloth, price 3s.

Third Course, containing a French Reader, with Notes and Vocabulary, by H. W. ENRICH. 12mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

Dr. F. Ahn's Manual of French and English Conversations. For the Use of Schools and Travellers. 12mo. cloth. 2s. 6d.

The Beginner's Comprehensive French Book: containing Grammar, Exercises, Reading Book, and Vocabulary. By J. DELPACH, B.A., French Master at Christ's Hospital. Crown 8vo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

Materials for Translating from English into French: being a Short Essay on Translation, followed by a Graduated Selection in Prose and Verse from the best English Authors. By L. LE BRUN. Second Edition, revised and corrected, by HENRI VAN LAUN. 12mo. cloth. 4s.

Belisaire par Marmontel. New Edition, with Notes, by Professors BRETT, CASSAL, and KARCHER. Prepared for the Matriculation Examination, June, 1867.

English Prose and Poetry. Materials for Translating from English into French. By ANTONIN ROCHE. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

A French Grammar, for the Use of English Students, adopted for the Public Schools by the Imperial Council of Public Instruction. By ANTONIN ROCHE. Crown 8vo. cloth. 3s.

The Modern French Reader. Junior Course. Edited by the Rev. P. H. ERNEST BRETT, B.D.; Professor CH. CASSAL, LL.D.; and THEODORE KARCHER, LL.B. Crown 8vo. cloth. 2s. 6d.

The Modern French Reader. Senior Course. Edited by the same Editors. Crown 8vo. cloth. 3s. 6d.

The Little French Reader. Extracted from the above. By the same Editors. Crown 8vo. cloth. 2s.

Nagot's Improved French and English and English and French Pocket Dictionary. 24mo. cloth. 3s.

Weller.—An Improved Dictionary, English and French and French and English. Drawn from the best sources extant in both languages; in which are now first introduced many Technical, Legal, and Commercial Terms, etc., etc. By EDWARD WELLER. Third Edition. Royal 8vo. strongly bound in cloth. 7s. 6d.

Echo Français: a Practical Guide to French Conversation. By F. DE LA FRUSTON. With a Vocabulary. 12mo. cloth. 3s.

Questionnaire Français. Questions on French Grammar, Idiomatic Difficulties, and Military Expressions. By THEODORE KARCHER, LL.B., French Master, Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. Interleaved with writing paper, 5s. 6d.

Les Écrivains Militaires de la France. Par THEODORE KARCHER. 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d.

French Commercial Letter Writer: A complete Series of Letters, Circulars, and Forms, suited to all the requirements of Trade and Commerce. With a French, German, and English Glossary of all Technical Terms, and an Appendix consisting of suitable and business-like beginnings and endings. By Dr. F. AHN. 12mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

ITALIAN.

Dr. F. Ahn's New Practical and Easy Method of Learning the Italian Language. First and Second Course. 1 vol. 12mo. 3s. 6d. Key *ditto*. 12mo. 1s.

Millhouse (John). New English and Italian Pronouncing and Explanatory Dictionary. Vol. I. English-Italian. Vol. II. Italian-English. 2 vols. Square 8vo. cloth. 12s.

Millhouse (John). Manual of Italian Conversation. For the use of Schools. 18mo. cloth. 2s.

L'Eco Italiano: A Practical Guide to Italian Conversation. By E. CAMERIN. With a Vocabulary. 12mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

GERMAN.

Dr. F. Ahn's New Practical and Easy Method of Learning the German Language. First and Second Course. Bound in 1 vol. 12mo. cloth. 3s. Key, 12mo. 8d.

Dr. F. Ahn's Practical Grammar of the German Language (intended as a Sequel to the foregoing work), with a Grammatical Index and a Glossary of all the German words occurring in the work. New Edition, containing additions, alterations, and improvements. By DAWSON W. TURNER, D.C.L., and F. L. WEINMANN. Crown 8vo. cloth. 5s.

Graduated Exercises for Translation into German, consisting of Extracts from the best English Authors, arranged progressively with an Appendix, containing Idiomatic Notes. By FRIEDRICH OTTO FREEMBLING, Ph.D. Crown 8vo. cloth. 4s. 6d. Without Appendix, 4s.

A German Reading Book. By Friedrich Otto Frembling, Ph.D. Crown 8vo. cloth. With Vocabulary, 3s. 6d. Without Vocabulary, 3s.

Dr. F. Ahn's Manual of German Conversation, or Vade Mecum for English Travellers. 12mo. cloth. 2s. 6d.

Prose Specimens for Translation into German, with copious Vocabularies and Explanations. By H. AFEL. 12mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

Benedix (H.) Der Vetter. Comedy in three Acts. With Grammatical and Explanatory Notes by WEINMANN and G. ZIMMERMANN. 12mo. cloth. 2s. 6d.

Oehlschlager's German-English and English-German Pocket Dictionary. With a Pronunciation of the German Part in English Characters. 24mo. cloth. 4s.

German Commercial Letter Writer: A complete Series of Letters, Circulars, and Forms, suited to all the requirements of Trade and Commerce; with a German, French, and English Glossary of all Technical Terms; and an Appendix of suitable and business-like beginnings and endings. By Dr. F. Ahn. 12mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

SPANISH.

Velasquez and Simonne's New Method of learning to Read, Write, and Speak the Spanish Language. Adapted to OLLENDORF'S System. Post 8vo. cloth. 6s. Key, post 8vo. cloth. 4s.

A Dictionary of the Spanish and English Languages. For the use of Young Learners and Travellers. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. 1. Two Parts. I. Spanish-English. II. English-Spanish. 12mo. cloth. 12s.

A Pronouncing Dictionary of the Spanish and English Language. Composed from the Dictionaries of the Spanish Academy, Torrecos, and Salvá, and Webster, Worcester, and Walker. Two Parts in one thick volume. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. Royal 8vo. cloth. 25s.

An Easy Introduction to Spanish Conversation; containing all that is necessary to make a rapid progress in it. Particularly designed for persons who have little time to study, or are their own instructors. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. New Edition, revised and enlarged. 12mo. cloth. 2s. 6d.

New Spanish Reader: Passages from the most approved Authors in Prose and Verse. Arranged in progressive order. With Vocabulary. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. Post 8vo. cloth. 6s. 6d.

Eco de Madrid. A Practical Guide to Spanish Conversation. By J. EL HARTENBUSH and HENRY LEMING. With Vocabulary. 12mo. cloth. 5s.

Metodo para aprender á leer, escribir y hablar el Inglés segun el sistema de Ollendorf. Por Ramon Palenzuela y Juan de las Carrenas. 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d. Key *ditto*. 12mo. half-bound. 5s.

LONDON: TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

